

قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية  
الشرح والقاعدة والتمارين

# Grammar of English

*Explanation, Rule and Drills*

الدكتور / عبدالرحمن محمد يدي النور

Dr. Abdel Rahman Mohd Yeddi Elnoor

# **Grammar of English**

*Explanation, Rule and Drills*

**Dr. Abdelrahman M. Yeddi Elnoor**

**By the same author:****Books:**

1. Tayeb Salih's Season of Migration to the North: An Ideo-Literary Evaluation, (English Version)
2. Tayeb Salih's Season of Migration to the North: An Ideo-Literary Evaluation, (Arabic Version)
3. Sudanese Educational Issues: An Ideological Perspective (In English)
4. History of English Language in Sudan: A Critical Re-reading
5. Teaching English in Sudan: A Practical Approach (In English)
6. The New Muslim's Book of the Fundamentals of Islam: Their Significance (In English)
7. History of Educational Experiments in Sudan: A Brief Account (In English)
8. Basics of English Grammar for Sudanese Students
9. Intellectual, Scientific and Academic Miscellany
10. Value-based Stories
11. From Darkness of Saqeefa's Astray to the Guidance Light of the Ship (Arabic Version)
12. From Darkness of Saqeefa's Astray to the Guidance Light of the Ship (English Version)
13. The Reign of the So-called Islamists: The Reign of the Harmful Catastrophe (In Arabic)
14. Language Teaching: From Method to Postmethod: A Sourcebook (In English)
15. Mahmood Mohammed Taha: A Contemporary Falta (Sudden Recklessness) from Saqeefa Falta (In Arabic)
16. Hasan Abdullah Al Turabi: Hashawi and Salafi Understanding and Holami Compositions (In Arabic)

**Articles:**

1. "Aims of Education in Sudan: An Ideological Overview", in the *Journal of 'Educational Insight', Quarterly, Vol. 1, No. 2, Dec. 1997.*
2. "Sudan: A Model of Real Independence", in *Radiance Viewsweekly, 15-21 Feb., 1998.*
3. "Mother Tongue as Medium", in *Radiance Viewsweekly, 11-17 April, 1999*
4. "Foreign Transmission and the Allegiance of Human Intellect", in *Radiance Viewsweekly, 3-9 Jan., 1999.*
5. "Language Policy in Sudan", in *RELC Journal, Vol. 32, No. 2, Dec. 2001.*
6. A Story of Confrontation between Artistic Classification and Dr. Abdelrahman Mohammed Yeddi on Detaining the Literary Criticism Book Titled "Tayeb Salih's Season of Migration to the North: An Ideo-Literary Evaluation, El Rakooba, July, 2013. (In Arabic)
7. Marketing Academic Certificates in Sudanese Universities: A Testimony for Allah, El Rakooba, March, 2014, (In Arabic)
8. Basic School Books are Full of Lies, Falses and Misleading: Oh Parents, Pay Attention! Published through Internet 2020 (In Arabic)
9. Post- Fall: Pseudo-Islamist Brothers is a Zio-American Organization, (In Arabic) published in El Rakooba, 10 October, 2020.

Copyright © Dr. Abdelrahman M. Yeddi Elnoor: 2009

First edition:	2009
Second revised edition:	2015
Third revised edition:	2016
Fourth revised edition:	2017
Fifth revised edition:	2018
Sixth revised edition:	2019
Seventh revised edition:	2020
Eighth revised edition:	August 2020
Ninth revised edition:	2021
Tenth revised edition June:	2021
Eleventh revised edition Sept:	2021
Twelfth revised edition Oct.:	2021

ISBN: 978-81-901824-7-7

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any means, electronic, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of the copyright holder.

جميع الحقوق محفوظة. لا يسمح بإعادة إصدار هذا الكتاب أو أي جزء منه، بأي شكل من الأشكال، إلا بأذن مسبق من صاحب الحقوق الفكرية.

شهادة تسجيل مصنف رقم (2011/95) – ابوظبي- دولة الإمارات العربية المتحدة

The first edition was published by  
Star Publishers & Dist., New Delhi: 2009

## Content

تمهيد	ix
Preface	xi
A Guide to Correct Pronunciation	1
The Sentence/ Jumbled Words/The Phrase	3
Subject and Predicate	5
Kinds of Sentences	10
Parts of Speech	14
The Noun/Kinds of Nouns	15
Countable and Uncountable Nouns	18
The Pronouns	22
The Verb/Kinds of Verbs	35
Direct Object and Indirect Object	39
Finite and Non-Finite Verbs	42
The Infinitives	44
The Gerund	46
Present Participle	47
Past Participle	48
Auxiliary Verbs/ Uses of 'shall' and 'will'	53
Uses of 'Has/Have' and 'Had'	54
Uses of 'Am, Is, Are, Was, Were'	55
Uses of 'May'	56
Uses of 'Do, Does, Did'	57
Uses of 'Do and Make'	57
The Adjective/Kinds of Adjective	59
Use of Adjectives/Attributive Use of Adjectives /Indicative Use of Adjectives	64
Attributive use of adjectives (Epithet)	64
Predicative use of adjectives	64
Adjective Degrees of Comparison	67
Formation of the Degrees of Adjectives	69
The Correct Use of Some Adjectives	74
The Adverb/Kinds of Adverb	76
Position of Adverbs	87
Formation of Adverbs/ Formation of some Adverbs	91

The Preposition / Uses of the Prepositions: at, in, on	92
Preposition + Gerund	95
The Conjunction	102
The Interjections	114
Articles ‘A’, ‘An’, The/ Indefinite Articles (A, An)/Uses of ‘A’, ‘An’/ Definite Article (The)	115
Uses of ‘The’/ Omission of the Articles	116
Number of Nouns	119
Formation of Plurals	120
Gender of Nouns/Gender in Pronouns	124
Formation of the Feminine Gender	125
Case of Nouns/The Nominative Case	127
The Objective Case	128
The Possessive Case	129
Formation of Possessive Case	130
The Use of Possessive Case	130
The Vocative Case	131
Number, Gender and Case of Some Pronouns	133
Number, Gender and Case (Personal Pronouns)	133
Number, Gender and Case (Relative Pronouns)	135
Number, Gender and Case (Interrogative Pronouns)	139
Number, Gender and Case (Demonstrative and Indefinite Pronouns)	141
Verb- Subject Agreement	143
Punctuation	146
The Use of Capital Letter	147
Present Simple Tense	150
Past Simple Tense	158
Present Continuous Tense	164
Past Continuous Tense	170
Future Tense	176
Present Perfect Tense	181
Past Perfect Tense	186
Present/Past Perfect Continuous Tense/Present Perfect Continuous Tense	191
Past Perfect Continuous Tense	195

Future Continuous Tense	199
Future Perfect Tense	202
Future Perfect Continuous Tense	205
Since, For, Ago	207
Wh-How Question-Formation	209
Adverb Clause of Condition with [Conditional Clause - Type (0), (If (1) – Unless) (Parallel Comparison, If (2), If (3)] / Conditional Clause - Type (0)	213
Conditional Clause Type (1)	214
Conditional Clause Type (Unless)	218
Parallel Comparison	222
Conditional Clause Type (2)	225
Conditional Clause Type (3)	230
Active and Passive Voice	234
From Active to Passive (Present Simple Tense[am, is, are])	234
From Active to Passive (Past Simple Tense[was, were])	239
From Active to Passive (Present Continuous Tense [am, is, are] +being) /From Active to Passive (Past Continuous Tense [was, were] + being)	242
From Active to Passive (Future and the Modals) (be)	246
From Active to Passive (Present /Past Perfect) (been)	249
From Active to Passive (A Verb with a Preposition after it)	252
From Active to Passive (A Verb with two Objects)	254
From Active to Passive (Request/Order)	255
Mood/ Kinds of Mood	257
Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech (Assertive Sentences)	260
Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech (Change of Tenses)	262
Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech: Change of Pronouns /First Person Pronouns/Second Person Pronoun	266
Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech: Third Person Pronouns	267
Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech: Change of Words Showing Nearness	268
Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech (Interrogative	273

Sentences)	
Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech (Imperative Sentences)	278
Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech (Exclamatory Sentences)	284
Used to	286
Tag Question	289
So do I /Neither do I (Parallel Addition)	296
Adverb Clause of Time with (When, While, As)	301
Adverb Clause of Time with (When, After, Before) (Present Perfect)	307
Adverb Clause of Time with (When, After, Before) (Past Perfect)	308
Adverb Clause of Reason with (Because, As, Since)	312
Clause of Purpose with (to/in order to/so as to)/Adverb Clause of Purpose with (so that, in order that)	315
(1) Adverb Clause of Result with (so....that)(too....to)	320
Adverb Clause of Result with (such /such a /such an)	322
(2) Adverb Clause of Result with (enough to)	327
Some Irregular Verbs	330
Some Regular Verbs	335
Some Nouns, Adjectives and Adverbs Forms	340
Some Verbs Used as Nouns	341
Some Nouns Ending in –tion	342
Some Nouns Ending in – ment	343
Some Nouns Ending Irregularly	344
A Suggestion for Ordering the Learning of Some Grammar Lessons for <u>Advanced Learners</u>	346

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم  
والصلاة والسلام على الرسول محمد وعلى آله الطيبين الطاهرين

## تمهيد

ما شاء الله ولا قوة إلا بالله العلي القدير والصلاة والسلام على النبي محمد وعلى آله الطيبين الطاهرين.

نسبة للنجاح الكبير الذي لاقاه كتابي السابق بعنوان «أساسيات قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية للطلاب السودانيين» من جانب الأساتذة والطلاب والمختصين والقراء العاديين من كل الجنسيات، فإنني أقدم هذا الكتاب كإضافة للمكتبة العالمية المتخصصة في مجال قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية حتى تكون جزءاً من المناهج التعليمية أو خاصة تعلم ذاتي تساعد الطالب على تعلم قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية بمجهوداته الخاصة. وبالرغم من أن هذا الكتاب يشبه الكتاب السابق من حيث الشكل العام، إلا أنني وجدت أنه من الضروري إصدار كتاب يكون أكثر شمولاً من ناحية الكم ونوع الشرح والقاعدة العامة والتمارين ولكي يتناول التفاصيل بطريقة شاملة ويغطي العديد من الجوانب التي لم تتم تغطيتها في الكتاب السابق. لذلك، فقد تمت إضافة دروس جديدة ومراجعة ترتيب تسلسل بعض الدروس حتى تتناسب مع الدارس العالمي لقواعد اللغة الإنجليزية وهذا هو ما يجعل هذا الكتاب متميزاً عن الكتاب السابق.

إن هذا الكتاب أيضاً موجه للمرحلة المتوسطة والمتقدمة من تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية. ويتناسب مع واقع تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية كلغة أجنبية وثانية وأكاديمية. وبذلك يكون الكتاب نافعاً على نطاق عالمي. إذ استقى محتواه ومنهجيته من عقلية متخصصة ومهنية استطاعت استكشاف الاهتمام المشترك لدى الأساتذة والطلاب والباحثين في كل أنحاء العالم بأساسيات قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية وحبهم لتناول الجانب الميكانيكي للغة الإنجليزية وحصاد الكثير من المنافع منه في شكل مقدرات الكتابة الصحيحة والتحدث الواثق والقراءة المستوعبة. إذ يجب كل هؤلاء الانغماس في حل تمارين قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية لأنهم يجدوا فيها نوعاً من 'ساحات المواجهة' من أجل تعلم جانب من جوانب هذه اللغة التي تبدي مقاومة للذين يحاولون تعلمها في البيئة التي تكون فيها 'لغة أجنبية أو ثانية أو أكاديمية'، فيحاولوا ترويض وتعلم الجانب الميكانيكي لهذه اللغة. إن هذا هو الميل العام لمعظم هؤلاء الطلاب. وقد شعرت أن الأساتذة والطلاب والباحثين محرومون من التمارين اللغوية التي تشبع حبهم لتناول مثل هذه النشاطات العقلية وتعطيهم فرصة في زيادة إحساسهم بهذه اللغة وتساهم في تقوية تأسيسهم اللغوي.

إن هذا الكتاب مبني على قناعاتي التي كررتها في الكتب التي أصدرتها في السابق والتي تؤكد أن الطالب في البيئة التي تكون فيها اللغة الإنجليزية 'لغة أجنبية' لا يستطيع تحقيق تقدم ملموس في تعلمها ما لم يمتلك سيطرة على قواعدها. وهذه قناعة أكدتها في كتابي بعنوان:

### Teaching English in Sudan : A Practical Approach

في ذلك الكتاب فإنني أكدت، "إن معرفة القواعد هي التي تجعل من يتعلمها يفهم معنى ما يقرأه وتمكنه من الكتابة الصحيحة والمفهومة والتقريب بين الصحيح والخطأ." وقد كررت هذه القناعة في الكتب الأخرى بعنوان :

### Sudanese Educational Issues: An Ideological Perspective

### History of English in Sudan: A Critical Re-reading

وتشهد مستويات كسب الطلبة في تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية تدهوراً مستمراً في

الكثير من الدول لأنها تهافتت نحو تطبيق الافتراضات التي تصدر من الغرب، مثل 'كفاءة التواصل' و 'التحدث أولاً' الخ. هجرت الكثير من الدول المقررات الدراسية التقليدية ذات النمط الفطري في التدريس والتعلم والتي تميل بشكل تلقائي إلى تناول قواعد اللغة ومن ثم خامات القراءة المتدرجة والسلسلة والتي كانت توفر للدارس ذخيرة لغوية كامنة ونشطة. بهذه الطريقة المثلي كانت الإنجليزية مزدهرة في الماضي. إذ كان الطالب يركز على القواعد والخامات القرائية السلسلة. غير أن المقررات الحالية القائمة على الافتراضات لم تضع في حسابها أن الطالب لن يتعلم المهارات اللغوية في اللغة الإنجليزية ما يتعلم مهارة التعامل مع قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية. بكلمة أخرى، إن الطالب لن يتمكن من تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية إذا لم يتعلم كيف تعمل ميكانيكية اللغة نفسها.

لذلك فقد تم تصميم هذا الكتاب بشكل خاص ليعطي بطرق مختلفة كمية وفيرة من الخامات التي تشرح قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية وتصيغ القاعدة العامة وتوفر تمارين شاملة لترسيخ الفهم. وقد بذلت جهداً لجعل القاعدة والأمثلة ومنهجية التناول واضحة ومحبية لكل من يستخدم هذا الكتاب. بشكل عام يمكن القول إن هذا الكتاب سيساعد من يستخدمه على فهم أساسيات قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية لأنه يحتوي على الكثير من الأمثلة التي تجسد القاعدة العامة وتعيد تأكيدها أيضاً.

أعطى هذا الكتاب مرونة في تناول المادة الدراسية. إذ يستطيع المعلم ترتيب الأولويات حسب متطلبات المنهج. أما الطالب في المستوى المتوسط من تعلم قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية فيإمكانه الاستفادة من هذا الكتاب حسب ما تم تدريسه له أو تسريع تعلمه لقواعد اللغة الإنجليزية بالاعتماد على خامات التعلم الذاتي هذه. فيما يختص بهؤلاء الطلاب سريع التعلم أو هؤلاء الذين في مراحل تعليمية علياً فيإمكانهم إعادة ترتيب الدروس اللغوية حسب علاقات الدروس مع بعضها البعض أو معدلات سرعة استيعابهم وتشربهم للمادة اللغوية لهذا الكتاب وخلق كتاب في ذاكرتهم ذو ترتيب مستقل للمواد اللغوية وهذا هو هدف الكتاب. وسيكون هذا الكتاب قد حقق هدفه إذا نجح في الهام تفكير الأساتذة والطلاب والباحثين في قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية. إذ حرص الكاتب على خلق جيل خلاق ومبدع في مجال قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية. وأستطيع أن اجزم أنه وبعد أن ينتهي الطالب/الطالبة من ممارسة تمارين قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية وفهمها فإنه بكل تأكيد سيكون قادراً على ان يكتب بطريقة صحيحة ويتحدث بأسلوب واثق ويفهم الخامات المكتوبة بطريقة جيدة شريطة أن يمتلك رصيذاً كافياً من الكلمات. وقد اضاف المؤلف في نهاية الكتاب قائمة الدروس التي يمكن للمعلم اتباعها في تدريس طلاب الثانوية والجامعة وفقاً لترتيب منهجي يجعلهم يدركون العلاقة المتداخلة بين قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية واعتمادها على بعضها البعض. وقد قدم المؤلف لأستاذ الثانوي والجامعة في نهاية الكتاب اقتراحاً بالدروس مرتبة وفقاً لأسبقية التدريس ليدرك الطلاب العلاقة المتداخلة بين دروس قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية واعتمادها على بعضها البعض.

ونتمنى أن يكون هذا الكتاب مصدر فائدة دائمة للأساتذة والطلاب والباحثين. وبالرغم من الجهد الذي بذلته في كتابة وإصدار هذا الكتاب فإنني لا ادعي خلوه من العيوب. لذلك فإنني سأقبل، برحابة صدر وبكل امتنان، التعليقات والاقتراحات البناءة التي تساهم في إدخال تحسينات في الطباعات المنقحة القادمة للكتاب.

وصلى الله على حبيبنا محمد وعلى آله الطيبين الطاهرين.

الدكتور/ عبدالرحمن محمد يدي النور 2009

*In the name of Allah, the Most Gracious and the Most Merciful and peace be upon the Prophet and his Purged Progeny*

## **Preface**

Allah's will (be done)! There is no power But with Allah, the Almighty, Praise be to Allah, the Cherisher and the Sustainer of the Worlds, and PBU the Prophet Mohammed and his purged progeny.

Due to the great success received by my previous book titled "Basics of English Grammar for Sudanese Students" by teachers, students, specialists and ordinary readers from all nationalities, therefore, I present this book as an addition to the specialized international library in the field of the grammar of English so that it can be a part of the educational courses or a self-access material that helps the learner to learn the grammar of English on his own efforts. Though this book resembles the previous book in its general shape, but I found that it is necessary to publish a book that is more exhaustive as far as the quantum and quality of explanation, rule and drills are concerned and so as to handle the details in an inclusive manner and cover many aspects that have not been covered in the previous book. Therefore, new lessons were added and the order of some lessons has been reviewed so that they may be suitable with the international student of the grammar of English language; this is what makes this book distinct from the previous book.

This book is also directed to the intermediate and advanced level of learning English language. It suits the situation of learning English as a foreign, second and academic language. Thus, the book becomes, internationally, useful. It derived its content and methodology from a specialized and professional intellect that could discover the common interest of teachers, students and researchers all over the world in basics of the grammar of English language and their love to handle the mechanical side of English language and reap a lot of benefits from it in the form of the abilities of correct writing, confident speaking and comprehending reading. All those like to indulge in solving the drills of the grammar of English language because they find in it a kind of 'confrontation filed' for the sake of learning one of the sides of this language that shows a resistance to those who try to learn it in the environment in which it is 'foreign, second or academic language'. They try to tame and learn the mechanical side of this language. This is the common tendency of most of those students. I felt that

the teachers, students and searchers are deprived of the linguistic drills that satisfy their love to handle such intellectual activities, give them the chance of increasing their feeling of this language and contribute in strengthening their linguistic foundation.

This book is based on my conviction that I have repeated in the books which I have published in the past and which asserts that the student, in the situation in which English language is a foreign language, can't achieve a tangible progress in learning it unless he possesses a control over its grammar. This is a conviction which I asserted in my book titled:

**Teaching English in Sudan: A Practical Approach**

In that book I asserted, "*It is the knowledge of grammar that makes it possible for the learner to make a sense of what he is reading, create a coherent and sensible writing and distinguish between right and wrong forms.*" I have repeated this conviction in the other books titled:

**Sudanese Educational Issues: An Ideological Perspective  
and  
History of English in Sudan: A Critical Re-reading**

The levels of students' gain in English language are witnessing a continuous deterioration in many countries because they rushed to implement the presumptions which are issued in the West such as 'communicative competence', 'speaking first', etc. Many countries abandoned the traditional studying courses which have the innate norm of teaching and learning and which tend spontaneously to handle the grammar of the language and then the graded and authentic reading material which used to provide the learner a linguistic reserve that is potential and active. By this ideal way English was prosperous in the past. The student used to concentrate on grammar and authentic reading material. But the current courses which are based on presumptions have not put into consideration that the student, in foreign language teaching situation, would not learn English language unless he learns the skill of dealing with the grammar of English. In other words, the student will not learn English unless he learns how the mechanism of the language itself works. The author has added; in the latter editions,

This book has been designed in a particular way to give, in different manner, an abundant quantum of materials that explain the grammar of English language, phrase the general rule and provide exclusive drills in order to consolidate the understanding. I exerted an effort to make the rule and examples and the method of

handling clear and appealing to all those who use this book. Generally, it can be said that this book will help whoever uses it to understand the basics of the grammar of English language because it contains a lot of examples that embody the general rule and reinforce it as well.

This book gave flexibility in handling the studying item. The teacher can order the priority according the requirements of the course. As far as the student at the intermediate level of learning the grammar of English is concerned, he can make use of this book as per what has been taught to him or even accelerate the process of learning the grammar of English language by depending on this self-access material. As far as those fast-learning students or those who are at higher educational stage are concerned, they can reorder the lessons according to relation of lessons with each other or the rate of the speed of their understanding and imbibing of the linguistic material of this book and creating a book which has an independent order of the linguistic materials in their memory, this is the main aim of the author. This book will have achieved its aim if it succeeds in inspiring the thinking of teachers, students and researchers in the field of the grammar of English language. I can assert that after the student completes practicing the exercises of the grammar of English language and understanding them, he will, definitely, be able to write correctly and speak confidently and understand the reading material properly provided that he possesses a sufficient stock of vocabulary. At the end of the book, the author gave the secondary school and university teachers a suggestion of lessons arranged according to priority of teaching so as to make students realize the intertwined relationship between English grammar lessons and their dependency on each other.

We hope that this book becomes a source of continuous benefit for teachers, students and researchers. Despite the efforts I have put in to write and publish this book, I never claim that it is free of defects. Therefore, I will accept, wholeheartedly and with all gratitude, the constructive comments and suggestions that contribute to introducing improvements in the next revised editions of the book.

*Peace be upon the Prophet Mohammed and his purged Progeny*

**Dr. Abdelrahman M. Yeddi Elnoor, 2009**

## A Guide to Correct Pronunciation

The following symbols are the model phonetic notations to transcribe (1) pure vowels, (2) diphthongs, and (3) consonants. There are twenty vowels in English. They are divided into (1) pure vowels (monophthongs). They are twelve vowels. (2) diphthongs. They are eight. The following are the phonetic symbols for pure vowels (Monophthongs) of the English language:

No.	Symbol	Ordinary Spelling	Phonetic Transcription
1.	/i:/	see, me	/si:/ /mi:/
2.	/i /	hit, it	/hit/ /it/
3.	/e/	get, set	/get/ /set/
4.	/æ /	cat, mat	/cæt/ /mæt/
5.	/a:/	harm, farm	/ha:m/ /fa:m/
6.	/ɔ /	got, pot	/gɔt/ /pɔt/
7.	/ɔ:/	call, all	/kɔ:l/ /ɔ:l/
8.	/u /	put, full	/put/ /ful/
9.	/u:/	fool, food	/fu:l/ /fu:d/
10.	/ʌ /	cut, but	/kʌt/ /bʌt/
11.	/ə:/	girl, learn	/gɜ:l/ /lɜ:n/
12.	/ə /	admit, again	/ədmit/ /əgeɪn/

Diphthongs fall into three groups:

- (1) Diphthongs end in /u /                      (2) Diphthongs end in /i /  
 (3) Diphthongs end in / ə /

The following are the phonetic symbols for the diphthongs:

No.	Symbol	Ordinary Spelling	Phonetic Transcription
1.	/ei /	say, may	/sei/ /mei/
2.	/ou /	bow, low	/bou/ /lou/
3.	/ai /	fly, high	/flai/ /hai/
4.	/au /	how, now	/hau/ /nau/
5.	/ɔi /	toy, boy	/tɔi/ /bɔi/
6.	/iə /	near, dear	/niə / /diə/
7.	/eə /	fair, hair	/feə/ /heə /
8.	/uə /	poor sure	/puə / /ʃuə /

The following are the phonetic symbols for the twenty-four consonants of English:

No.	Symbol	Ordinary Spelling	Phonetic Transcription
1.	/p/	pin pen	/pin/ /pen/
2.	/b/	ball bet	/bɔ:l/ /bet/
3.	/t/	table tea	/teibl/ /ti:/
4.	/d/	desk did	/desk/ /did/
5.	/k/	kill kiss	/kil/ /kis/
6.	/g/	go get	/gəu/ /get/
7.	/f/	fin fell	/fin/ /fel/
8.	/v/	very vain	/veri/ /vein/
9.	/θ/	think thin	/θink/ /θin/
10.	/ð/	them this	/ðem/ /ðis/
11.	/s/	set sell	/set/ /sel/
12.	/z/	zoo zeal	/zu:/ /zi:l/
13.	/ʃ/	Sheep ship	/ʃi:p/ /ʃip/
14.	/z/	Measure pleasure	/meɜ(r)/ /pleɜ(r)/
15.	/tʃ/	chief much	/tʃi:f/ /mʌtʃ/
16.	/dʒ/	judge age	/dʒʌdʒ/ /eidʒ/
17.	/m/	met men	/met/ /men/
18.	/n/	net nil	/net/ /nil/
19.	/ŋ/	sing king	/sɪŋ/ /kɪŋ/
20.	/l/	lip live	/lip/ /liv/
21.	/r/	red reel	/red/ /ri:l/
22.	/h/	hill hell	/hil/ /hel/
23.	/j/	you yes	/ju:/ /jes/
24.	/w/	we weak	/wi:/ /wi:k/

## The Sentence الجملة

### Jumbled Words الكلمات المختلطة

**Read the following groups of words:**

*tree that palm climb*                      *palm I climbing like trees*  
*river this Nile is the*                      *beautiful at boat look that*  
*flying are birds*                              *country agricultural Sudan an is*

The above groups of words can't make meaningful sentences because they are not ordered words. They are groups of **jumbled** words. Therefore, they can't be called sentences.

We express our thoughts by using groups of words which are **ordered** and make sense.

## The Sentence الجملة

**Read the following groups of words:**

Climb that palm tree.                      I like climbing palm trees.  
 This is the river Nile.                      Look at that beautiful boat.  
 Birds are flying.                              Sudan is an agricultural country.

These groups of words make sense because they are ordered. They are sentences.

**Learn:**

A **sentence** is a group of words that can stand on its own and make complete sense.

## The Phrase العبارة

**Examine the following sentences:**

- |                      |                     |                   |
|----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. On the table.     | 2. At evening.      | 3. By post.       |
| 4. In the room.      | 5. After arriving.  | 6. From the city. |
| 7. Before waking up. | 8. Behind the wall. | 9. Near the gate. |
| 10. Among people.    | 11. Down the river. | 12. Up the wall.  |

These groups of words make sense, but they are not complete sentences. Therefore, they are called **phrases** and not sentences.

**Learn:**

A group of words that make some sense, but not complete sense is called a **Phrase**. It can't stand on its own and independently.

**Thus, let's remember this rule:**

The study of **grammar** is the study of words and how they act when they are in the form of groups.

**Exercise (1):**

The following are some groups of words. Identify them. Write (S) for a sentence, (J) for jumbled words and (P) for a phrase in the bracket given against each sentence:

1. Teaches the me teacher.	( )
2. Under my bed.	( )
3. I enjoy going to mosque.	( )
4. Who is knocking the door?	( )
5. What a lovely flower!	( )
6. Honey bees make.	( )
7. At the door.	( )
8. Cats like milk.	( )
9. Next to the hotel.	( )
10. How beautiful the moon is!	( )
11. Exercise health good is for.	( )
12. To be a distinguished guest.	( )
13. Did they come yesterday?	( )
14. Close the window.	( )
15. Where was he standing?	( )
16. name is your what?	( )
17. he eaten the has food?	( )
18. Open the gate.	( )
19. In the room.	( )
20. The earth is round.	( )
21. At the gate.	( )
22. with the down enemy.	( )
23. Has he humiliated the Imperialists?	( )
24. In the morning.	( )
25. over are exams the.	( )
26. Shut up!	( )
27. computer switch off the.	( )
28. Can he operate the machine?	( )
29. For two days.	( )
30. How dark the room is!	( )

## Subject and Predicate المبتدأ والخبر

Every spoken or written sentence consists of two parts. They are the **Subject** and the **Predicate**. They are the components of a sentence.

**Read the following sentences:**

**The cook** *makes food.*

**Children** *like sweets.*

**My father** *is a teacher.*

**The man** *planted a flower.*

*How beautiful* **the moon** *is!*

*What a pleasant* **weather** *it is!*

There are two parts in each of the above sentences. The words in bold type '**The cook**', '**Children**', '**My father**', '**The man**', '**the moon**' and '**weather**' are called the **Subjects** because they are the naming part of the sentence.

**Learn:**

The person or thing about which we speak is called the **Subject**. It is the naming part of a sentence.

The words in italic type '*makes food*', '*like sweets*', '*is a teacher*', '*planted a flower*', '*How beautiful is*' and '*What a pleasant*' are called the **Predicates** because they tell us something about the **Subjects**.

**Learn:**

A **Predicate** says something about the **Subject** whether it was a person or thing. It is the saying part of the sentence.

In some Imperative sentences, the **Subject** is understood or not mentioned. A sentence may consist of a single word, two words or three words; as: 'Go!' or 'Come here.' or 'Sit down.' or 'Don't go there.' It is clear that one part of the sentence has been left out, but it has been understood. This part is the **Subject**. If we say:

'Go!'	we mean	“ <b>You</b> go.”
'Come here.'	we mean	“ <b>You</b> come here.”
'Sit down.'	we mean	“ <b>You</b> sit down.”
'Don't go there.'	we mean	“ <b>You</b> don't go there.”

**Exercise (2):**

Underline the **Subject** in the following sentences:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Ali met Hasan.<br>3. How hot the tea is!<br>5. Men work hard in the fields. | 2. Sabir has a red car.<br>4. The stars twinkle in the sky.<br>6. Women undertake household. |
|--|--|

- |                            |                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 7. The goat eats grass.    | 8. Thank you.                   |
| 9. I enjoy good health.    | 10. Birds fly in the air.       |
| 11. Cats like meat.        | 12. Ali likes Jihad.            |
| 13. Come in.               | 14. The Nile waters the desert. |
| 15. I love my parents.     | 16. Read the holy Quran.        |
| 17. Mona is cooking fish.  | 18. Look at the moon.           |
| 19. They help poor people. | 20. What a beautiful flower!    |
| 21. Don't waste time.      | 22. Shut the door.              |

**Exercise (3):**

Underline the **Predicate** in the following sentences:

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. He learns his lessons.               | 2. Birds build their nests.           |
| 3. Dogs kill foxes.                     | 4. Children like playing.             |
| 5. What a nice friend he is!            | 6. Salih is a great man.              |
| 7. The invaders departed Sudan in 1956. | 8. Come in.                           |
| 9. The tortoise walks slowly.           | 10. The hare runs fast.               |
| 11. Cows give us milk.                  | 12. Honesty is the best policy.       |
| 13. How cold the weather is!            | 14. The sky is blue.                  |
| 15. Hamza is a nice man.                | 16. The elephant is a large animal.   |
| 17. Sameer went to Madani.              | 18. Khartoum is the capital of Sudan. |
| 19. Stand up.                           | 20. He acted wisely.                  |

**Exercise (4):**

The following sentences do not express a complete meaning. They are **Predicates**. Supply each one a **Subject** to complete their meanings:

1. ....are eating grass.
2. ....is cooking food.
3. ....planted a tree.
4. ....is a wild animal.
5. ....like meat.
6. ....repairs cars.
7. ....go on Friday to the mosque.
8. ....is barking.
9. How beautiful ..... is!
10. What a lovely .....!
11. ....is a big city.
12. ....liberated Sudan from the Turkish.
13. ....is blowing.
14. ....is a religious girl.

- 15. ....is a good boy.
- 16. ....dresses the scarf.
- 17. ....killed Ismaeel Basha.
- 18. ....helps the poor people.
- 19. ....kill foxes.
- 20. ....is singing a song.

**Exercise (5):**

The following sentences do not express a complete meaning. They are **Subjects**. Supply each one a **Predicate** to complete their meanings:

- 1. The camel.....
- 2. Teachers.....
- 3. Farmers.....
- 4. Students.....
- 5. He.....
- 6. She.....
- 7. They.....
- 8. We.....
- 9. You.....
- 10. It.....
- 11. I.....
- 12. ....sight!
- 13. ....stars!
- 14. The giraffes.....
- 15. Lions.....
- 16. Foxes.....
- 17. Eagles.....
- 18. Shamsoddeen.....
- 19. Hamza.....
- 20. The carpenter.....

**Exercise (6):**

Divide the following sentences into **Subject** and **Predicate** in the columns as given at the end of the exercise:

- 1.Sami plays football.
- 2.Rami obeys his parents.
- 3.Mona helps her mother.
- 4.The cat is chasing a rat.
- 5.The fisherman caught a fish.
- 6.What a soft blanket!
- 7.How fierce that lion is!
- 8.He takes medicine daily.

- 9. Fatima is a religious girl.
- 10. Ali goes to the mosque.
- 11. The whale is a large sea-animal.
- 12. Cows give us milk.
- 13. The camel is the ship of the desert.
- 14. Dongola is the capital of the Northern Province.
- 15. All students respect their teachers.
- 16. English is an interesting language.
- 17. Maths is an easy subject.
- 18. Ali has a beautiful beard.
- 19. Abdelraheem Al Buraee praised the Prophet (PBUH and his progeny).
- 20. The sun rises in the east.

No.	Subject	Predicate
1.	.....	.....
2.	.....	.....
3.	.....	.....
4.	.....	.....
5.	.....	.....
6.	.....	.....
7.	.....	.....
8.	.....	.....
9.	.....	.....
10.	.....	.....
11.	.....	.....
12.	.....	.....
13.	.....	.....
14.	.....	.....
15.	.....	.....
16.	.....	.....
17.	.....	.....
18.	.....	.....
19.	.....	.....
20.	.....	.....

**Exercise (7):**

Complete the following sentences by adding **Subject** or **Predicate** wherever needed:

- 1. Jabal Marra .....
- 2. ....is the Sudanese main sea-port.
- 3. The goldsmith.....
- 4. ....are kind towards their children.
- 5. How happy .....is!

6. ....picture!
7. The postman .....
8. ....bought milk from the milkman.
9. My father .....
10. ....discharged the patient.
11. The Sudanese army .....
12. Long live .....
13. ....took pride in her Islamic uniform.
14. ....is a honest judge.
15. A bird .....
16. ....is the capital of the Islamic Republic of Iran.
17. ....is a useful animal.
18. The hunter .....
19. The rabbit.....
20. ....was a wise ruler.
21. ....is a criminal act.
22. How weak .....
23. ....is a beautiful place.
24. AIDS.....
25. ....food shortage.
26. ....is a brave man.
27. The builder.....
28. ....went to the school.
29. What a grand.....!
30. How hot.....is!
31. ....Flower!
32. The nurse.....
33. ....was a great leader.
34. The Red Sea.....
35. ....came from China.
36. Ali.....
37. ....dears the scarf.
38. ....prays in the Mosque.
39. Dongola.....
40. ....cooks food.

## انواع الجُمَل Kinds of Sentences

**There are four kinds of sentences. They are as follows:**

1. The declarative or assertive sentences,
2. The imperative sentences,
3. The interrogative sentences,
4. The exclamatory sentences.

1. **The Declarative or Assertive sentences (Statement):** الجُمَل التصريحية  
او التوكيدية

**Read the following sentences:**

1. I like reading the Quran.
2. Mona prays regularly.
3. He studies very hard.
4. They attend the meeting.
5. **We don't smoke cigarette.**

**Learn:**

A **Declarative or Assertive** sentence denies or affirms something.

2. **The Imperative sentences:** الجُمَل الامرية

**Read the following sentences:**

1. Sleep early. (advice نصح)
2. Come here. (command/order امر)
3. Please, let me go. (request طلب)
4. Don't smoke. (forbidding نهى)

**Learn:**

An **Imperative** sentence expresses an advice or a request or an order or a forbidding.

3. **The Interrogative Sentences:** الجُمَل الاستفهامية

**Read the following sentences:**

- |                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. How did you come?     | 2. Is she reading the book? |
| 3. Why does he complain? | 4. What is your name?       |

**Learn:**

An **Interrogative** sentence asks a question.

4. **The Exclamatory Sentences:** الجُمَل التعجبية

**Read the following sentences:**

- |                             |                         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. What a beautiful flower! | 2. What a lovely voice! |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|

- 3. How religious she is!
- 4. Long live our leader!
- 5. What a beautiful rose!
- 6. How deep it is!

**Learn:**

An **Exclamatory** sentence expresses a sudden or strong feeling of the mind, a wish or a prayer.

**Remember:**

- 1. A **sentence** begins with a **capital letter**,
- 2. An **assertive** or an **imperative** sentence ends with a **full stop**,
- 3. An **interrogative** sentence or a **question** ends with a **question mark**,
- 4. An **exclamatory** sentence ends with an **exclamatory mark**.

**Exercise (8):**

Pick out **Statements (affirmative/negative), Questions, Exclamations and Imperative (command/forbidding, etc.)** in the following sentences:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Is he coming now?</li> <li>3. Where does he keep his books?</li> <li>5. What a nice shirt!</li> <li>7. Do it immediately.</li> <li>9. The stars twinkle.</li> <li>11. Why have they left us?</li> <li>13. What a sweet mango!</li> <li>15. When are you coming to us?</li> <li>17. Close the door.</li> <li>19. Bees make honey.</li> <li>21. How soft they are!</li> <li>23. She is helping her mother.</li> <li>25. Don't swim in deep water.</li> <li>27. We don't harm others.</li> <li>29. They did not waste time.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. They are planting flowers.</li> <li>4. Stand up.</li> <li>6. Do they attend their classes?</li> <li>8. How kind the mother is!</li> <li>10. Are we going with him?</li> <li>12. How skillful he is!</li> <li>14. What a strong man!</li> <li>16. Ali is working hard.</li> <li>18. Speak loudly.</li> <li>20. There is a fish in the pond.</li> <li>22. Keep quiet.</li> <li>24. Sit down.</li> <li>26. Give me some water, please.</li> <li>28. She had never wasted time.</li> <li>30. She does not speak loudly.</li> </ul> |
|---|--|

**(1) Statements:**

- 1. ....
- 2. ....
- 3. ....
- 4. ....
- 5. ....
- 6. ....

**(2) Imperatives:**

- 1. ....
- 2. ....
- 3. ....
- 4. ....
- 5. ....
- 6. ....

**(3) Questions:**

- 1. ....
- 2. ....
- 3. ....
- 4. ....
- 5. ....
- 6. ....

**(4) Exclamations:**

- 1. ....
- 2. ....
- 3. ....
- 4. ....
- 5. ....
- 6. ....

**Exercise (9):**

Fill in the blanks in the following **Statements:**

- 1. He .....a good student.
- 2. They .....students.
- 3. She .....my sister.
- 4. Donkeys .....useful animals.
- 5. The scorpion .....dangerous.
- 6. There .....no fruits in the fridge.
- 7. Shamsoddeen .....a famous leader.
- 8. He .....tea.
- 9. Parents.....their children.
- 10. Al Fadhil Saeed .....an actor.
- 11. Pigeons.....in the sky.
- 12. I .....hungry.
- 13. You.....ill.
- 14. The goat .....us milk.
- 15. Dogs.....at night.

**Exercise (10):**

Fill in the blanks in the following **Command** sentences:

1. ....the window.
2. ....the door.
3. ....quiet.
4. ....it immediately.
5. ....here.
6. ....there.
7. ....water, please.
8. ....up.
9. ....down.
10. ....out.
11. ....fast.
12. ....hard.
13. ....slowly.
14. ....make noise.
15. ....smoke cigarette.

**Exercise (11):**

Fill in the blanks in the following **Interrogative** sentences:

1. ....she washing the dishes at present?
2. ....they doing their homework now?
3. ....he eat eggs everyday?
4. ....we look dirty every week?
5. ....it seen a mouse since July?
6. ....you drunk water since morning?
7. ....he come tomorrow?
8. ....he have his own car?
9. ....they have their own house?
10. ....he playing all yesterday?
11. ....they swimming all last week?
12. Where.....he park his car every night?
13. When.....they come to school every morning?
14. Why.....he sell his car last week?
15. How.....he done it before I came?
16. What .....he get for us tomorrow?
17. Where .....they sleeping now?
18. When .....he coming tonight?
19. How.....his health condition all last night?
20. What .....you eating all last night?

## أجزاء الكلام Parts of Speech

**There are eight parts of speech in English:**

1. Noun الاسم      2. Pronoun الضمير      3. Verb الفعل  
 4. Adjective الصفة      5. Adverb الحال      6. Preposition حرف الجر  
 7. Conjunction اداة العطف      8. Interjection صيغة تعجب

1. The **Noun** is the name of a person, place, animal, bird or thing;  
as:      Ali, Elgolid, pigeon, bicycle.
2. The **Pronoun** is the word that is used in place of a noun; as:  
**He** is a hard-working boy;    **She** works hard;    **They** slept.
3. The **Verb** says something about the subject; as:  
Ali **reads** the Quran;                      Mona **prayed**;  
Sami has **planted** a flower;              They will **come** soon.
4. The **Adjective** qualifies the noun or the pronoun; as:  
She is a **religious** girl;    He is an **excellent** ruler.
5. The **Adverb** modifies a verb, an adjective or any other adverb. It adds something to the meaning of a verb, an adjective or another adverb; as:  
He **always** prays;    They came **yesterday**;    She writes **well**.
6. The **Preposition** stands between two words; as:  
I get money **from** my father;                      It is made **in** Sudan.
7. The **Conjunction** joins words and sentences; as:  
The dog barks **and** the camel marches;  
Pay its price **or** leave it.
8. The **Interjection** is a word used to express a sudden feeling of mind; as:  
**Alas!** I failed to save it;                      **Oh!** What a delicious dish.

## The Noun الاسم

A **noun** names a person, place, animal or thing. The work of a noun is to name. It is a naming word; as: Hamza, Fatima, fish, car.

### Kinds of Nouns أنواع الأسماء

There are five kinds of nouns;

1. **Proper Noun**; اسم العلم as: Ali bin abee Talib, Sudan, Dongla, etc.
2. **Common Noun**; الاسم العام as: man, woman, boy, girl, mountain, river, etc.
3. **Collective Noun**; الاسم الجمع as: group, flock, class, bundle, crowd, etc.
4. **Material Noun**; اسم المادة as: gold, iron, sugar, tea, meat, silver, etc.
5. **Abstract Noun**; الاسم المجرد as: honesty, bravery, solidarity, misery, etc.

#### 1. PROPER NOUNS:

Read the following sentences:

1. **Abdelrahman Swar el Dahab** was the leader of Sudan.
2. **Dongola el Ajooz** was a famous city.
3. **Hamza** was a brave man.
4. **El Tabaldi** is a famous tree.

The words in bold type are **Proper nouns**. **Abdelrahman Swar el Dahab** is the name of a particular person. **Dongola el Ajooz** is name of a particular place. **El Tabaldi** is name of a particular tree.

**Learn:**

A **Proper Noun** is special name of some particular person, place or thing. It always begins with a capital letter.

## 2. COMMON NOUNS:

Read the following sentences:

1. A **bird** eats grain.
2. A **boy** prays in the mosque.
3. A **girl** helps her mother.
4. A **cow** gives us milk.

The words in bold type are **Common nouns**. A common noun refers to a name that is shared in common by every person or thing of the same class.

**Learn:**

A **Common Noun** is a name that is shared in common by everything of the same class or kind.

## 3. COLLECTIVE NOUNS:

Read the following sentences:

1. The **army** is patrolling the city.
2. The **crowd** went to the market.
3. I brought a **bundle** of grass.
4. That is a **group** of twenty dogs.

The words in bold type are **Collective nouns**. A collective noun refers to the name of a number of persons or things considered as one.

**Learn:**

A **Collective Noun** is the name given to a group or collection of persons, animals or things considered as one.

## 4. MATERIAL NOUNS:

Read the following sentences:

1. I brought **gold** to my mother.
2. The dog eats **meat**.
3. **Coffee** activates the heart.
4. This is a **silver** necklace.

The words in bold type are **Material nouns**. A material noun refers to the name of the substance or matter of which things are made.

**Learn:**

A **Material Noun** is the name of the matter of which things are made.

## 5. ABSTRACT NOUNS:

Read the following sentences:

1. **Honesty** is the best policy. (quality)

2. They were charged with **murder**. (action)
3. His life was spent in **poverty**. (state)
4. **Kindness** is always rewarded. (quality)

The words in bold type are **Abstract nouns**. An abstract noun refers to the name of some quality, action or state that we can't see or touch, but we can only think of.

**Learn:**

An <b>Abstract Noun</b> denotes quality, action or state that we can only think of, but we can't see or touch.
--

# Countable and Uncountable Nouns

## الاسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

Nouns can be classified as:

1. Countable;
2. Uncountable.

Read the following sentences:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. They are my <b>pens</b> .                 | 2. These are <b>trees</b>                   |
| 3. The <b>dogs</b> chased the <b>foxes</b> . | 4. The <b>children</b> like <b>sweets</b> . |
| 5. I don't like <b>sugar</b> .               | 6. <b>Gold</b> is very expensive.           |
| 7. <b>Silver</b> glitters.                   | 8. This <b>bread</b> is not soft.           |

The words in bold type are **nouns**. **pens, trees, dogs, foxes, children** and **sweets** are countable nouns. **sugar, gold, silver** and **bread** are uncountable nouns.

**Remember:**

**Collective** and **common** nouns are **countable** nouns. **Proper, material** and **abstract** nouns are **uncountable** nouns.

**Exercise (12):**

Given below are some **nouns**. Identify each **noun** and write it in the appropriate column given below:

iron, army, Salim, Dongola, girl, sugar, man, brass, darkness, crowd, country, eagle, palm, Nile, river, gang, kindness, Jamal, dog, audience, paper, failure, The Quran, flock, Barbar, herd, hatred, woman, Sinnar, city, Ahmed, bunch, ignorance, bundle, Juba, steel, poet, postman, hunter, dove, nickel, Sudan, sailor, horse, tiger, courage, lion, gold, Port Sudan, deer, silver, Hasan, misery, clay, wealth, hair, cotton, brick, metal, salt, spectator, Blue Nile, Tehran, camel, childhood, elephant, cattle, cow, wool, poverty, potatoes, cat, bananas, monkey.

### Proper Nouns

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**Common Nouns**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**Collective Nouns**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**Material Nouns**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**Abstract Nouns**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**Exercise (13):**

Underline **nouns** in the following sentences and write them in the appropriate columns in the given table:

1. Ali is a great man.
2. Al Mahadi army was strong.
3. Khartoum is a big city.
4. He works hard to achieve success.
5. I have a lot of gold.
6. There are many students in the class.
7. Mona is a good girl.
8. Hamad needs some wood to lit fire.
9. They established a committee to deal with the problem.
10. Abdallah Al Tayeb excelled in Arabic language.
11. Elgolid is a beautiful place.
12. Honesty must be adhered to by everybody.

13. Iron is mentioned in the Quran.
14. The police dispersed the crowd.
15. Our football team will visit Iran tomorrow.
16. The child wept with pleasure.
17. Ali must be rewarded for his act of bravery.
18. Sabir has a happy family.
19. Sami likes tea.
20. Give me some water.
21. Slavery is prohibited by the Quran.
22. Nafeesa is a woman.
23. Ali is a man of wisdom.
24. They chased the thief.
25. She loves children.
26. The hall was filled with laughter.
27. Jabir is a merchant.
28. This is a large stone.
29. She wept with joy.
30. I sell and buy silver.

S.N.	Proper	Common	Collective	Material	Abstract
1.					
2.					
3.					
4.					
5.					
6.					
7.					
8.					
9.					
10.					
11.					
12.					
13.					
14.					
15.					
16.					
17.					
18.					
19.					
20.					
21.					
22.					

23.					
24.					
25.					
26.					
27.					
28.					
29.					
30.					

**Exercise (14):**

Fill in the blanks with the **nouns** given below. Mention the kind of each **noun** in the bracket given against each sentence:

Khartoum, eagles, honesty, city, tables, failure, army, bravery, gold, drugs, wisdoms, injustice, stones, nurse, man, children, Sudan, lions, people, Ali, milk, iron, boys.

1. We use .....to make axes. ( )
2. The goat gives us ..... ( )
3. ....sings a song. ( )
- 4.....are the kings of the forest. ( )
5. ....is our mother land. ( )
6. ....like toys. ( )
7. Ali has done an act of ..... ( )
8. There is a .....in the room. ( )
9. The boy is throwing.....into the river. ( )
10. ....is the capital of Sudan. ( )
11. The carpenter makes..... ( )
12. Kareema is a ..... ( )
13. ....is the best policy. ( )
14. To avoid ....., you have to study hard. ( )
15. ....is a precious metal. ( )
16. Fatima is a ..... ( )
17. ....fly in the sky. ( )
18. The Republic of Islamic Iran has a strong..... ( )
19. Always avoid bad..... ( )
20. The Quran teaches us..... ( )
21. Husain (PBUH) confronted the.....of Yezeed. ( )
22. Part-system divided the.....of Sudan. ( )
23. ....are harmful to health. ( )

## The Pronouns الضمائر

A **Pronoun** is a word used in place of a noun.

There are different types of pronouns. They are as follows:

1. **Personal Pronouns** الضمائر الشخصية : I ,we , you , he , she , it , they , etc.
2. **Possessive Pronouns** الضمائر التملكية : my, our, your, his, her, its, their, etc.
3. **Reflexive Pronouns** الضمائر الانعكاسية : myself, ourselves, yourself, etc.
4. **Emphasizing Pronouns** الضمائر التوكيدية : I myself, She herself, He himself, etc.
5. **Interrogative Pronouns** الضمائر الاستفهامية : who, whom, whose, etc.
6. **Demonstrative Pronouns** الضمائر الإشارة : this, these, that, those, etc.
7. **Relative Pronouns** ضمائر الوصل : that, who, which, where, etc.
8. **Distributive Pronouns** ضمائر التوزيع : each of, either of, neither of, etc.
9. **Indefinite Pronouns** ضمائر غير محددة :many, any, few, no, none, some, others, all, etc.

### 1. Personal Pronouns:

- (A) The Pronouns which refer for the person or persons speaking are called **First Person Pronouns**; as: I, me, my, mine, we, us, our, ours, etc.
- (B) The Pronouns which refer for the person or persons spoken to are called **Second Person Pronouns**; as: you, your, etc.
- (C) The Pronouns which refer for the person or persons or thing or things spoken of are called **Third Person Pronouns**; as: he, him, his, she, her, hers, etc.

The following table of **Personal Pronouns** would give more details:

	First Person Pronouns ضمائر المتكلم		Second Person Pronouns ضمائر المخاطب	Third Person Pronouns ضمائر الغائب			
<b>Nominative Pronouns</b> ضمائر الرفع (الفاعل)	I	We	You	He	She	It	They
<b>Possessive Pronouns</b> الضمائر التملكية	My mine	Our Ours	Your yours	His	Her hers	Its	Their theirs
<b>Object Pronouns</b> ضمائر المفعول به	Me	Us	You	Him	Her	It	them

## 2. Possessive Pronouns:

Each of the personal pronouns, except **he** and **it** has two possessive forms.

The forms **my, our, your, her** and **their** are used before the nouns they qualify. They are called **Possessive adjectives**; as:

1. That is my kite.
2. It is our house.
3. I want your pen.
4. This is her book.
5. These are their cars.

The forms **mine, ours, yours, hers** and **theirs** are used after the nouns; as:

1. The kite is mine.
2. That house is ours.
3. This pen is yours.
4. The book is hers.
5. These cars are theirs.

## 3. Reflexive Pronouns:

Read the following sentences:

1. He imposes himself.
2. They enjoyed themselves.
3. You served yourself.
4. She did the work herself.

The Pronouns 'himself', 'themselves', 'yourself', 'herself' are object of the verbs, but refer to the same person as the subject of the verbs. They are called **Reflexive Pronouns**. They are formed by adding '**self**' or '**selves**' to the personal pronouns.

## 4. Emphasizing Pronouns:

Read the following sentences:

1. I **myself** saw it.
2. They **themselves** told me.
3. She **herself** supported us.
4. You **yourself** send it.

The Pronouns 'myself', 'themselves', 'herself' and 'yourself' are used with a noun or pronoun so as to emphasize.

**Note:**

**Reflexive Pronouns** and **Emphasis Pronouns** are formed by adding 'self' or 'selves' to my, your, her, their, it.

**5. Interrogative Pronouns:**

Read the following sentences:

1. **Who** knocked the door?
2. **Whom** did you meet?
3. **Which** cake would you take?
4. **What** is the issue?
5. **Whose** pen is this?

The pronouns 'who', 'whom', 'which', 'what' and 'whose', not only stand in the place of nouns, but also ask questions.

**Learn:**

**Pronouns** used for asking questions are called **Interrogative Pronouns**.

**6. Demonstrative Pronouns:**

Read the following sentences:

1. **This** is a beautiful picture.
2. **These** are our cars.
3. **That** is her house.
4. **Those** are his pens.
5. **Such** were their behaviors.

The words in bold type are **Demonstrative Pronouns**. Demonstrative Pronouns point out the object or objects to which they refer. 'This' and 'these' are used to refer to persons or things near in space, time or thought. 'that' and 'those' are used to refer to persons or things farther away.

**Learn:**

**Demonstrative Pronouns** point out the objects to which they refer.

When **Demonstrative Pronouns** come before nouns, they become **Demonstrative Adjectives**; as:

1. **This** house is hers.
2. **That** car is ours.
3. **These** trees are green.
4. **Those** flowers are mine.
5. **Such** results are his achievement.

**Learn:**

**Demonstrative Adjectives** come before nouns.

**7. Relative Pronouns:**

Case	'who' for persons	'which' for things	'that' for persons and things
Nominative	Who	Which	That
Objective	Whom	Which	That
Possessive	Whose	Of which	---

**Read the following sentences:**

## Group (A)

1. This is the boy **who** won the prize. (*nominative*)
2. That is the man **whom** I met yesterday. (*objective*)
3. I spoke to the driver **whose** car was stolen. (*possessive*)

## Group (B)

1. That is the house **which** collapsed yesterday. (*nominative*)
2. This is the car **which** I bought last year. (*objective*)
3. I saw the dog **of which** tail was cut by the trap. (*possessive*)

## Group (C)

1. The driver **that** made the accident died.  
(*Person/nominative*)
2. The man **that** you spoke to is my father.  
(*person/objective*)

## Group (D)

1. The car **that** stands there is ours. (*thing/nominative*)
2. The beautiful flower **that** he bought has dried up.  
(*thing/objective*)

The pronouns in bold type are **Relative Pronouns**. They do the work of pronouns. They act as conjunctions and join two sentences and are used for nouns that go before them. The nouns to which relative pronouns refer are called antecedent (which means going before). A relative pronoun agrees with its **antecedent** in number, gender or person.

**Learn:**

A **Relative Pronoun** is used for the noun that goes before it. It agrees with its **antecedent** in number, gender or person.

**8. Distributive Pronouns:****Read the following sentences:**

1. **Each** of the girls got a book.
2. **Either** of them can swim.
3. **Neither** of you can break this.

The words in bold type are **Distributive Pronouns**. Distributive Pronouns refer to persons or things, one at a time.

**Learn:**

**Distributive Pronouns** refer to persons or things, one at a time.

**9. Indefinite Pronouns:****Read the following sentences:**

1. Have you **any** money?

2. I don't have **any** money.
3. Are there **many** pens?
4. There are **many** pens there.
5. I committed **few** mistakes.
6. He has **no** time.
7. **Some** students were sitting, **others** were standing, but **all** attended.
8. **None** failed except lazy students.
9. **One** should always remember Allah.

The words in bold type refer to persons or thing in a general and ambiguous way, therefore, they are called **Indefinite Pronouns**.

**Learn:**

**Indefinite Pronouns** refer to persons or thing in a general and ambiguous way

Now, let's read and parse اعراب the Pronouns in the following sentence:

Who is she? .....Mona, the girl whom you respect.

**Parsing:** اعراب

Who	Interrogative pronoun. It stands for the noun Mona and asks a question
She	Personal pronoun. It stands for the noun Mona.
Whom	Relative pronoun. It stands instead of the noun girl and joins 'you respect very much' with 'the girl'.
You	Personal pronoun. It stands instead of the asker's name.

**Exercise (15):**

Underline the **pronouns** in the following sentences and write them in the appropriate box given at the end of the exercise:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. I am a student.</li> <li>3. He loves me.</li> <li>5. We study together.</li> <li>7. She is my mother.</li> <li>9. We love her.</li> <li>11. You will visit their house.</li> <li>13. Don't forget your book.</li> <li>15. I met him yesterday.</li> <li>17. Look at its tail.</li> <li>19. These pens are hers.</li> <li>21. Those books are ours.</li> <li>23. That pen is his.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. My father gave me a pencil.</li> <li>4. They are our friends.</li> <li>6. I respect them.</li> <li>8. She cooks for us.</li> <li>10. I drive her car.</li> <li>12. They will welcome you.</li> <li>14. It is not my book.</li> <li>16. I caught it last week.</li> <li>18. This house is mine.</li> <li>20. That car is yours.</li> <li>22. These shirts are theirs.</li> <li>24. I myself do my homework.</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 25. She herself met us.                  | 26. He himself gave me the message.           |
| 27. It itself caught the mouse.          | 28. They themselves told me.                  |
| 29. We ourselves will go to him.         | 30. You yourself come to me.                  |
| 31. He closed himself in the room.       | 32. She injured herself.                      |
| 33. You enjoyed yourself.                | 34. We spoke to ourselves.                    |
| 35. They entertained themselves.         | 36. You yourselves informed them.             |
| 37. You troubled yourselves.             | 38. I tortured myself.                        |
| 39. It licked itself.                    | 40. Who cooks for us?                         |
| 41. Whose car is this?                   | 42. Whom did you meet?                        |
| 43. Which is her book?                   | 44. What is your name?                        |
| 45. The man who is sitting is my father. | 46. This is the boy whose father has died.    |
| 47. That is student whom you met.        | 48. This is the hen which I bought yesterday. |
| 49. All politicians are not good.        | 50. Some are always serious.                  |
| 51. Many were present in the meeting.    | 52. Such are his styles                       |
| 53. Somebody is knocking the door.       | 54. I did not see anyone in the street.       |
| 55. Everybody liked him.                 | 56. Something is moving in the room.          |
| 57. Nobody came to the school.           | 58. None has sufficient money.                |
| 59. I want some sugar. Do you have any?  | 60. Each of the girls has a book              |
| 61. Either of you can come.              | 62. Neither of them is good.                  |
| 63. Such are her conducts.               | 64. Few attended the class.                   |

**Personal Pronouns**

- First Person Pronouns.....
- .....
- .....
- Second Person Pronouns .....
- .....
- Third Person Pronouns.....
- .....
- .....

**Reflexive Pronouns**

- .....

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**Emphasizing Pronouns**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**Possessive Pronouns**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**Demonstrative Pronouns**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**Interrogative Pronouns**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**Relative Pronouns**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**Indefinite Pronouns**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**Distributive Pronouns**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**Exercise (16):**

Fill in the blanks with **Reflexive Pronouns**:

1. She will hurt .....
2. He enjoyed .....
3. They did the work .....
4. I cut the vegetables .....
5. We blame .....for what has happened.
6. The cat hid .....
7. You served.....

**Exercise (17):**

Fill in the blanks with **Emphasizing Pronouns**:

1. I .....have told her.
2. She .....cooked for us.
3. He.....met me.
4. They .....came to my house.

5. We .....did the work.
6. You .....go to him.

**Exercise (18):**Fill in the blanks with **Possessive Pronouns**:

1. She bought that house. It is .....house.  
The house is.....
2. He owns this car. It is .....car.  
It is .....
3. They caught that deer. It is .....deer.  
It is .....
4. You won this prize. It is .....prize.  
It is .....
5. I built this palace. It is .....palace.  
The palace is.....
6. We got this TV. It is .....TV.  
It is .....
7. The lion caught a deer. The deer is .....prey.

**Exercise (19):**Fill in the blanks with **Demonstrative Pronouns**:

1. ....is my money. Count it, please.
2. ....is his plane flying. Can you see it?
3. ....are my cloths. Iron them, please.
4. ....are their balloons. They are rising into the air.
5. ....was our house. We sold it last year.
6. ....were her books. You can take them now.
7. ....is the mirage. You can't reach it.
8. ....were good days. They have already gone.

**Exercise (20):**Fill in the blanks with **Interrogative Pronouns**:

1. ....knocks the door?
2. ....car is this?
3. ....did you meet?
4. ....is your car?
5. ....does she eat?
6. ....cooked the food?
7. .... houses are those?
8. ....will she speak to?
9. ....can you select?
10. ....did they bring?

**Exercise (21):**

Fill in the blanks with **Relative Pronouns**:

1. That is the student.....got the highest mark in English language.
- 2.This is the car .....I bought yesterday.
- 3.I saw the man .....you met last week.
- 4.That is the girl .....pen was broken yesterday.
- 5.This is the book .....I gave to my friend to read.
- 6.The boy.....is swimming is my brother.
- 7.This is the boy.....father has died last year.
- 8.That is the player.....the audience like very much.
- 9.The girl .....is religious is liked by everyone.
- 10.This is the table.....leg was broken last week.
- 11.This is the table .....the carpenter repaired yesterday.

**Exercise (22):**

Join the following pairs of sentences by suitable **Relative Pronouns**:

1. He is a teacher. He teaches students.  
.....
2. This is the TV. I bought it yesterday.  
.....
3. That is the girl. Her mother washed our clothes.  
.....
4. This is the old man. You helped him to cross the street.  
.....
5. These are the houses. My father has rented them for my newly married sisters.  
.....
6. This is the driver. His car was stolen last month.  
.....
7. I met the rich man. He used to help me when we were poor.  
.....
8. That is the greengrocer. We saw him in the market yesterday.  
.....
9. Here is the gift. My father got it for me on my birthday.  
.....
10. That is the traveler. His ticket was found by the taxi driver.  
.....
11. That is the car. Its engine needs maintenance.  
.....
- 12.This is the village. We live in it.  
.....

- 13. That is Iran. Students study nuclear science there.  
.....
- 14. I met the teacher. The society awarded him a great prize.  
.....
- 15. This is the city. My friend lives here.  
.....
- 16. These are the houses. Their owner got good tenants.  
.....

**Exercise (23):**

Pick out the **Relative Pronouns** in the following sentences and tell their **antecedents**:

- 1. She is the religious girl whom we respect and love.
- 2. That is the computer which I purchased yesterday.
- 3. It is the cat that I got from my friend's house.
- 4. This is the boy whose mother died while she was delivering him.
- 5. These are the trees that my father planted.
- 6. He is the scientist who engineered our scientific progress.
- 7. He is Ali whom we like very much.
- 8. This is the donkey which I borrowed from our neighbor.
- 9. I met Ali who is a great scholar.
- 10. This is flower that I planted during the last autumn.
- 11. These are the trees. Their fruits are very sweet.

**Exercise (24):**

Answer the following questions as shown in the example:

Example: (a) Does Randa write novels or poems?

Answer: \* She writes neither novels nor poems.  
\* She writes neither.

Example: (b) Which is near from here, Dongola or Juba?

Answer \* Neither Dongola nor Juba is near from here.  
\* Neither is near from here.

- 1. Is she a Sudanese or an Iranian?
- 2. Do you come from Juba or from Halfa?
- 3. Have you visited China or Japan?
- 4. Did she buy a flat or a villa?
- 5. Does she cook fish or meat?
- 6. Who is your enemy, Sami or Rami?
- 7. What is his hobby, swimming or fishing?
- 8. Which is a difficult subject, History or Geography?
- 9. Is your mother a teacher or a household?
- 10. Who is his favorite actor, James or William?



4.								
5.								
6.								
7.								
8.								
9.								
10.								
11.								
12.								
13.								
14.								
15.								

**Exercise (27):**

Join the following sentences using the suitable **Relative Pronoun**:

1. The fox was grey. I saw it last night.  
.....
2. The program was boring. I attended it yesterday.  
.....
3. People wear woolen clothes. They live in the cold regions.  
.....
4. Sami is my teacher. His mother is a senior nurse.  
.....
5. Ali is highly qualified. His teaching benefits all students.  
.....
6. That man is a doctor. He is greeting my brother.  
.....
7. Ali is a great Islamic intellectual. He reformed the entire society.  
.....
8. This computer is very modern. It has multiple systems.  
.....

**Exercise (28):**

Read and parse اعراب the **Pronouns** in the following sentences:

1. Who was he? .....Ali, the scholar whom you met yesterday.
2. Who are they?.....The boys, the good players whom we congratulated.
3. Who is that man?.....Jabir, the teacher whom you wanted to meet.

## The Verb الفعل

### Read the following sentences:

- |                                 |                                    |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Ali <b>wrote</b> the letter. | 2. They <b>play</b> chess.         |
| 3. We <b>swam</b> in the sea.   | 4. She <b>cooks</b> fish.          |
| 5. He <b>watched</b> TV.        | 6. It <b>eats</b> rats.            |
| 7. She <b>is</b> miser.         | 8. They <b>were</b> ill yesterday. |

The words in bold type are verbs. A **Verb** is a word that says something about a subject or what a subject does or what is done to it or what it is. A verb is an important part of a sentence. It is not possible to create a sentence without a verb.

### Learn:

A **Verb** is a word that says something about a subject.

### Exercise (29):

Pick out the **verbs** in the following sentences:

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. He is generous.                   | 2. She is religious.                     |
| 3. They taught me a lesson.          | 4. Ali is brave.                         |
| 5. I meet him in the college.        | 6. You drink milk everyday.              |
| 7. They are preparing for the exams. | 8. It is hiding to catch a mouse.        |
| 9. She cooks for us.                 | 10. We attend the conference every year. |

### Exercise (30):

Fill in blanks with **verbs**:

- |                           |                               |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. He .....curious.       | 2. They .....ambitious.       |
| 3. She .....the question. | 4. I .....the work.           |
| 5. They.....the poor.     | 6. We .....enthusiastic.      |
| 7. You .....lucky.        | 8. I am .....a letter now.    |
| 9. She has .....the milk. | 10. They will.....food today. |

## Kinds of Verbs أنواع الأفعال

### There are two kinds of verbs:

1. Intransitive verbs, الأفعال اللازمية
2. Transitive verbs. الأفعال المتعدية

### 1. Intransitive Verbs:

Read the following sentences:

- |                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Children <b>play</b> .  | 2. The bell <b>rings</b> . |
| 3. The sun <b>shines</b> . | 4. Birds <b>fly</b> .      |

The words in bold type are verbs. Each of the above verbs makes good sense and does not require an object to complete its sense. They are called **Intransitive Verbs**.

**Learn:**

A verb which does not require an object to complete its sense is called **Intransitive Verb**.

**2. Transitive Verbs:****Read the following sentences:**

- |                                    |                                      |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Ali <b>drank</b> <u>water</u> . | 2. She <b>cooks</b> <u>fish</u> .    |
| 3. They <b>play</b> <u>chess</u> . | 4. It <b>caught</b> a <u>mouse</u> . |

The words in bold type are verbs. Each of the above verbs does not make good sense by itself. For example, if we say 'Ali **drank**' the meaning would not be clear. Therefore, each of the above verbs requires an object to complete its sense. The objects are the underlined words. They make the meaning of the verbs clear. A verb which requires an object to make its meaning complete is called **Transitive Verb**.

**Learn:**

A **Verb** which requires an object to complete its sense is called **Transitive Verb**.

There are some verbs which require a word or words to be added after them in order to complete its sense.

**Read the following sentences:**

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. He <b>looks</b> smart.                | 2. She <b>appears</b> unhappy.   |
| 3. They <b>seem</b> suspicious.          | 4. The horse <b>looks</b> tired. |
| 5. Generous men <b>are</b> always loved. | 6. His leg <b>is</b> numbed.     |

The words in bold type 'looks', 'appears', 'seem', 'looks', 'are' and 'is' are **Copulative Verbs**. A copulative verb joins the subject to a word that describes it. Therefore, each of the above verbs does not make good sense by itself. It requires a word or words to complete its meaning, therefore, it is called a verb of **Incomplete Predicament**. The word or phrase added after such verbs is called **Complement** التتمة. Thus, 'smart', 'unhappy', 'suspicious', 'tired', 'always loved' and 'numbed' are **Complements**.

**Remember:**

Some verbs can act both as **Transitive** and **Intransitive verbs**. Compare the following sentences in the following table:

In table (A) the verbs 'fly', 'run', 'rings', and 'opens' are transitive verbs because the actions pass on to the objects 'kites',



- 9. Bite :.....T  
      :.....In
- 10. Rings :.....T  
      :.....In

## Direct Object and Indirect Object

### المفعول به المباشر والمفعول به غير المباشر

**Read the following sentences:**

1. Ali offered **her** his **car**.
2. I give **him** monthly **payment**.
3. My mother told **me** a **story**.
4. He granted **them** a **holiday**.

The verbs 'offered', 'give', 'told' and 'granted' are transitive verbs. Each of the above verbs has two objects. One of which in the form of a person. It is called "**Indirect Object**". The words '**her**', '**him**', '**me**' and '**them**' are 'indirect objects'. The other object is a thing. It is called "**Direct Object**". The words 'car', 'payment', 'story' and 'holiday' are 'direct objects'.

**Exercise (33):**

Fill in the blanks with **Object**:

1. The bad boy had broken .....
2. The builder builds.....
3. The cat caught.....
4. The driver has driven.....
5. They have drunk .....
6. The learner will learn.....
7. The baker is making.....
8. The students were ringing.....
9. The girl was sweeping.....
10. The teacher taught .....
11. The author wrote .....
12. The team won .....
13. The dogs are chasing.....
14. My father brought .....
15. I bought .....

**Exercise (34):**

Fill in the blanks with **Indirect Object**:

1. He gave .....books.
2. They told .....a story.
3. We are granting.....a scholarship.
4. She has offered .....gifts.
5. I give .....a chance.
6. You will tell.....the truth.
7. He had taught.....lessons.
8. I grant .....a fund.

9. They are giving .....an offer.  
 10. She was telling .....the news.

**Exercise (35):**

Fill in the blanks with **Direct Object**:

1. She is serving them.....
2. They were teaching me .....
3. He has granted her.....
4. I am telling you .....
5. You will offer them .....
6. We can give him.....
7. They gave us .....
8. She told me .....
9. I offered her .....
10. He grants them.....

**Exercise (36):**

Fill in the blanks with **Object** or **Complement**:

1. The knight is .....
2. The farmer planted .....
3. You seem.....
4. The volcano.....
5. He looks.....
6. The girls are washing.....
7. The thief appears .....
8. The teacher teaches .....
9. Sugar tastes .....
10. My mother is cooking.....

**Exercise (37):**

Pick out verbs in the following sentences and say whether they are **Transitive** or **Intransitive**. Name the **Object** of each **Transitive Verb** and **Complement** of each **Intransitive Verb**:

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. The politician spoke loudly.      | 2. Ali bought a car.                      |
| 3. My father gives me money.         | 4. Tom is tying the dog.                  |
| 5. She appears happy.                | 6. They run a company.                    |
| 7. Sabir became happy.               | 8. The mechanic repairs cars.             |
| 9. The zoo-keeper feeds the animals. | 10. The old man walks very slow.          |
| 11. The moon is bright.              | 12. She ironed the shirt.                 |
| 13. You look healthy.                | 14. The protestors tore the enemy's flag. |
| 15. Playing in the streets is        | 16. They went mad.                        |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>dangerous.</p> <p>17. The wife takes care of her husband.</p> <p>19. The stars glitter.</p> | <p>18. Ali was a man of courage.</p> <p>20. Snakes creep.</p> |
|--|---|

Transitive Verbs	Objects
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

Intransitive Verbs	Complements
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

**Exercise (38):**

Use each of the following verbs both **transitively** and **intransitively**:

fly, speak, run, broke, walk, stop, ring, run, sing, follow.

## Finite and Non-Finite Verbs

### a. Finite Verbs:

Read the following sentences:

- |                    |               |
|--------------------|---------------|
| 1. I cook.         | 2. She cooks. |
| 3. We cook.        | 4. He cooks.  |
| 5. I drink.        | 6. He drank.  |
| 7. She will drink. |               |

\* We observe that in the sentences from 1-4 the verbs agree with their subjects. It means that the form of the verb changes according to the number of its subject. The verb 'cook' is used with the subject 'I'. The verb 'cooks' is used with the subject 'she'. The verb 'cook' is used with the subject 'we' and the verb 'cooks' is used with the subject 'he'. It becomes clear that there are two numbers; singular and plural. A verb that changes according to its subject is called **Finite Verb**.

\* We observe that in the sentences from 5-7 the verbs are limited by their tenses.

**Learn:**

A **Finite Verb** agrees with its subject in number and person. It is limited by its tense also.

### b. Non-Finite Verbs:

Read the following sentences:

1. He likes **swimming**.
2. She waited to **see** the film.
3. They decided to **depart**.
4. We want to **read**.
5. It enjoys **eating** meat.

The verbs in bold type have no subject. They are called **non-finite verbs** because they do not have a subject with which they need to agree.

**Learn:**

A **Non- Finite Verb** has no subject with which it needs to agree.

**Examine the following patterns of Infinitives:**

*Pattern 1. The object of the verb is an Infinitive:*

No.	Subject + Verb	To + Infinitive
1.	They agreed	to visit you.
2.	I want	to make bread.

- |    |              |                        |
|----|--------------|------------------------|
| 3. | She forgot   | to turn off the light. |
| 4. | He planned   | to build a house.      |
| 5. | You promised | to assist the manager. |
| 6. | They began   | to study English.      |
| 7. | He comes     | to see her.            |

*Pattern 2. The verb is followed by a noun/pronoun:*

No.	Subject + Verb	Noun/pronoun	To + infinitive
1.	He wants	her	to study medicine.
2.	She trained	Ali	to play chess.
3.	They took	me	to see her house.
4.	You teach	him	to speak Arabic.
5.	Ali asked	you	to help them.
6.	I told	them	to stop the car.
7.	She promised	me	to prepare food.

*Pattern 3. The verb is followed by a conjunction:*

No.	Subject + Verb	Conjunction	To + infinitive
1.	Ask him	what	to cook today.
2.	Teach them	how	to hunt lions.
3.	Inform me	when	to depart.
4.	Tell us	where	to keep it.
5.	Ask them	why	to blame her.
6.	She does not know	which	to eat.
7.	They know	how	to go.

*Pattern 4. The use of the Infinitive after 'too':*

No.	Subject + verb	Too	Adjective/Adverb	To + infinitive
1.	It is	too	ambiguous	to understand.
2.	She is	too	small	to walk.
3.	He is	too	fast	to reach.
4.	They are	too	heavy	to carry.
5.	She is	too	weak	to resist disease.
6.	You are	too	healthy	to fall ill.
7.	We are	too	late	to reach.

*Pattern 5. The use of the Infinitive after an Adjective:*

No.	Subject + Verb	Adjective	To + infinitive
1.	The Quran is	easy	to understand.

- |    |                 |           |              |
|----|-----------------|-----------|--------------|
| 2. | Electricity is  | dangerous | to touch.    |
| 3. | The mattress is | soft      | to sleep on. |
| 4. | The load is     | heavy     | to carry.    |
| 5. | The food is     | difficult | to swallow.  |
| 6. | The tea is      | hot       | to drink.    |
| 7. | Vegetables are  | good      | to eat.      |

*Pattern 6. The use of the Infinitive with 'it':*

No.	It + to be	Subject Complement	To+ infinitive
1.	It is	dangerous	to smoke cigarette.
2.	It is	safe	to travel by plane.
3.	It is	difficult	to earn money.
4.	It is	easy	to waste money.
5.	It is	good	to sleep early.
6.	It is	healthy	to swim twice a week.
7.	It is	joyful	to praise the Prophet of Islam.

*Pattern 7. Infinitive without 'to':*

No.	Subject + Verb	Noun/pronoun	Infinitive without 'to'
1.	I let	it	escape.
2.	She saw	him	cry.
3.	He made	you	fall.
4.	They caught	you	hide.
5.	You make	them	surrender.
6.	We heard	it	chirp.
7.	He made	me	accept.

There are four types of **non-finite** verbs. They are as follows:

1. **Infinitives.**
2. **Gerund.**
3. **Present participle.**
4. **Past participle.**

## The Infinitives:

**Read the following sentences:**

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. He likes to <b>eat</b> apples.         | 2. She wanted to <b>sleep</b> early. |
| 3. They went to <b>visit</b> Jabal Marra. | 4. It stopped to <b>pump</b> water.  |
| 5. We forgot to <b>inform</b> him.        | 6. He liked to <b>eat</b> eggs.      |
| 7. You agreed to <b>help</b> her.         | 8. They may <b>depart</b> .          |
| 9. She can <b>cook</b> .                  |                                      |

\* The verbs in bold type in sentences from 1- 7 are examples of **Infinitives**. They are formed by putting the word 'to' before the first form of the verbs 'eat', 'sleep', 'visit', 'pump', 'inform', 'eat', 'help'.

\* The verbs in bold type in sentences from 8 and 9 are also examples of **Infinitives**, but they are not used with the word 'to'. They are preceded by the words 'may' and 'can'.

**Learn:**

An **Infinitive** can be used with the words 'to', 'shall', 'should', 'will', 'would', 'can', 'could', 'may', 'might', 'must'.

Some verbs like 'let', 'make', 'see', 'hear', 'watch' play the role of 'to', 'shall', etc. in forming Infinitives. It means infinitive without 'to'. Read the following sentences:

1. He saw the fish **swim**.
2. Let her **go** tomorrow.
3. They made me **come** here.
4. I heard him **cry** for food.
5. She watched it **eat** the grass.

**More patterns of Infinitives:**

1. The subject of a verb:
  - (a) **To abuse** others is not good.
  - (b) **To err** is human.
  - (c) **To forgive** is divine.
  
2. The object of a verb:
  - (a) It attempted **to enter** the house.
  - (b) They promise **to win** the match.
  - (c) He wants **to steal** the money.
  
3. To qualify a noun:
  - (a) They have no time **to wait**.
  - (b) I don't have money **to spend**.
  - (c) This is not the way **to deal** with it.
  
4. To qualify an adjective:
  - (a) The child is eager **to see** his mother.
  - (b) The mother is happy **to feed** her child.
  - (c) He is glad **to receive** you.
  
5. To express purpose:
  - (a) I study hard **to pass** in exams.
  - (b) She came here **to welcome** you.

(c) They were hiding **to catch** the thief.

6. The verb is followed by a noun or a pronoun:

- (a) Ali advised her **to read** the Quran.
- (b) I told Rami **to sleep** early.
- (c) I ask him **to explain** the difficult lessons.

7. The verb is followed by a conjunction:

- (a) They know how **to earn** money.
- (b) Tell him when **to come**.
- (c) She does not know where **to get** vegetables.

8. The use of the infinitive after 'too + adjective':

- (a) He is **too** young **to travel** alone.
- (b) She is **too** foolish **to answer** the question.
- (c) That camel is **too** weak **to stand** on its legs.

9. The use of the infinitive with 'it':

- (a) It is easy **to read** the Quran.
- (b) It is difficult **to learn** Japanese language.
- (c) It is expensive **to live** in Khartoum.

### Exercises (39):

Complete the following sentences with **Infinitives** provided in brackets:

1. He decided .....his grandfather. (visit)
2. I told her ..... for me. (cook)
3. She promised .....the room. (clean)
4. It is harmful .....cigarette. (smoke)
5. The doctor advised me .....exercises. (do)
6. He is too old .....without help. (walk)
7. Japanese language is difficult ..... (learn)
8. The dog made the fox..... (run)
9. I want you .....English. (speak)
10. He is learning how .....cars. (repair)
11. They let him..... (go)
12. I taught Ali .....bread. (make)

### The Gerund:

Read the following sentences:

1. **Swimming** is a good exercise.

2. **Reading** is his hobby.
3. **Driving** a truck requires skill.

In the above sentences, 'Swimming', 'Reading' and 'Driving' are formed from the first form of the verbs 'swim', 'read' and 'drive'. The words 'Swimming', 'Reading' and 'Driving' do the work of nouns. The verb 'Swimming' is both like a verb and a noun and therefore, it is a **Verb-Noun**. A verb-noun always ends with '**ing**'. Such words are called **Gerunds**.

**Learn:**

A **Gerund** is a word partly a noun and partly a verb. Therefore, it is called **verbal-noun**. It always ends with '**ing**'.

**Remember:** The gerund has the force of a **noun** and a **verb**.

**Read the following sentences:**

1. **Reading** is a good habit. (subject to a verb)
2. He likes **writing**. (object to a verb)
3. They are interested in **swimming**. (object of a preposition)
4. **Seeing** is proving. (complement to a verb)
5. I saw a big **fishing** net. (adjective qualifying the noun)
6. He admitted **committing** the theft. (verb followed by a gerund)
7. I like **teaching** students. (verb followed by a gerund)

**Exercises (40):**

Complete the following sentences with **Gerunds** given in brackets:

1. ....is my favorite hobby. (swim)
2. ....is an art. (draw)
3. He likes .....the Quran. (read)
4. They enjoy .....the prophet of Islam. (praise)
5. She is fond of .....Islamic uniform. (dress)
6. We refused .....money. (take)
7. He avoided ..... (smoke)
8. She dislikes .....make-up. (use)
9. ....is resting. (sleep)
10. They are keen on ..... (fast)
11. He bought an old .....brush. (paint)
12. You started ..... (laugh)

## Present Participle:

**Read the following sentences:**

1. I saw the thief **stealing** the money.

2. He went home **running**.
3. She found her mother **cooking** food.
4. They heard Ali **reading** the Quran.
5. On **seeing** the lion, the deer ran away.
6. **Laughing** the child went to its mother.

In the above sentences, 'stealing', 'running', 'cooking', 'reading', 'seeing' and 'laughing' are participles ending in 'ing'. They refer to actions that are going on and have to be completed. These are examples of **Present Participle**.

**Remember:** The present participle has the force of an adjective and a verb. It is partly a verb and partly an adjective. It has an active meaning, e.g. *A misleading information is an information which misleads you.*

**Learn:**

A **Present Participle** refers to an action that is going on and has to be completed. It is a word partly a **verb** and partly an **adjective**. Therefore, it is called **verb-adjective**. It always ends with 'ing'. It has an active meaning.

**Exercises (41):**

Complete the following sentences with **Present Participles** given in brackets:

1. He found her .....the Quran. (read)
2. She saw him .....football. (play)
3. ....the man met his friends. (smile)
4. ....the mouth, he refused to eat. (close)
5. They came to you..... (run)
6. Their performance is ..... (interest)
7. The food .....delicious, he asked for more. (be)
8. People went to the street ..... (demonstrate)
9. On .....the cat, the mouse ran away. (see)
10. ....drunk the poison, it died immediately. (have)
11. I caught him.....the mango. (steal)
12. She saw a child ..... a car. (drive)

## Past Participle:

**Read the following sentences:**

1. It is a **broken** glass. (as an adjective)
2. He feels **insulted**. (as subject complement)
3. They had their house **painted**. (as object complement)
4. **Shot** by a bullet, the soldier fell down. ( in passive sense)

In the above sentences, 'broken', 'insulted', 'painted' and 'shot' are participles which refer to actions that are completed and finished. These are examples of **Past Participles**. The past participle is formed from the third form of the verb. It has a passive meaning, e. g. *A misled man is a man who has been misled by somebody.*

**Learn:**

A **Past Participle** refers to the action that is finished. It is a word partly a **verb** and partly an **adjective**. It is formed from the third form of the verb. It has a passive meaning.

**Remember:**

*The Gerund is a verb-noun whereas the Participle is a verb-adjective.*

Now, let's read and parse اعراب Verbs and Nouns in the following sentences:

1. Cats drink milk.      2. Wind blows.      3. Ali is clever.

**Parsing:** اعراب

- |         |   |
|---------|---|
| 1. Cats | Common noun, subject of drink.                                |
| Drink   | transitive verb because it has an object; milk.               |
| Milk    | Common noun, object of drink.                                 |
| 2. Wind | Common noun, subject of blows.                                |
| Blows   | Intransitive verb. It is a verb of action, but has no object. |
| 3. Ali  | Proper noun, subject of is.                                   |
| Is      | Copulative verb because it joins Ali and clever.              |
| Clever  | It is a word that describes Ali.                              |

**Exercises (42):**

Complete the following sentences with **Past Participles** given in brackets:

1. It is a .....dog. (tie)
2. The .....thief was taken to the hospital. (beat)
3. See the wound ..... (clean)
4. He got the old chair..... (repair)
5. ....by the cold weather, the poor man died. (freeze)
6. She found the bottle.....into pieces. (break)
7. ....by the dog, the fox ran into the thick forest. (bite)
8. The .....letter was sent by post. (write)
9. She is a girl.....by all. (respect)



‘F’ for the finites and ‘N’ for the non-finites in the given boxes.

Give the form of non-finites in the table given below:

1. I hear a child crying in that house.	
2. He saw a deer.	
3. She wanted to draw a picture.	
4. Ali decided to travel tomorrow.	
5. She found them playing football.	
6. I saw a farmer planting a tree.	
7. Shot by a bullet, the soldier died.	
8. They speak English language.	
9. Ahmed is a man trusted by all.	
10. Reading is a good habit.	
11. He stopped smoking.	
12. The carpenter made a new sitting chair.	
13. We are interested in swimming.	
14. She will do the work.	
15. I enjoy fighting enemies.	
16. They agreed to see you.	
17. She advised me to travel tomorrow.	
18. It chases the rat.	
19. I have a new trouser made.	
20. We saw her grinding wheat.	
21. Cheated by the banker, he went to the police station.	
22. Sabir went to the school walking.	
23. She was thinking of studying medicine.	
24. They dislike wasting time.	
25. I hate smoking cigarette.	
26. They got a new car bought.	
27. He caught a fish.	
28. He is fond of eating.	
29. He had his room cleaned.	
30. She is a girl respected by all.	

**Exercise (45):**

Identify **infinitives**, **present participles**, **past participles** and **gerund** in the following sentences. Write ‘I’ for the infinitives, ‘P’ for the present participles, ‘PP’ for the past participles and ‘G’ for the gerunds in the given boxes:

1. I like sitting with religious people.	
2. The fox began to run.	
3. Surrounded by policemen, the criminal surrendered.	
4. She saw me crying.	



## Auxiliary Verbs افعال مساعدة

**Read the following sentences:**

1. I **am** reading now.
2. She **was** cleaning the room.
3. The bus **has** already left.
4. They **will** go to Iran next year.
5. He **may** come tonight.
6. You **must** do it now.
7. They **shall** defeat you.

In the above sentences the words 'reading', 'cleaning', 'left', 'go', 'come', 'do' and 'defeat' are the **main verbs**. The words 'am', 'was', 'has', 'will', 'may', 'must' and 'shall' are **Auxiliary Verbs**. An auxiliary verb helps the main verb, therefore, they are called also **Helping Verbs**.

The following table contains some of the helping verbs/modals:

Am	Do	Will	Would	Has	Be
Is	Does	Shall	Should	Have	Being
Are	Did	Can	Could	Had	Been
Was	-	May	Might	-	-
Were	-	Must/ought to	Had to	-	-

**Remember:** 'Has to/have to, dare, need, used to' have the features of modals.

### Uses of 'shall' and 'will'

'**Shall**' in the first person refers to:

\* **Simple future**; as:

1. I shall come to school.
2. We shall write a letter to Ali.

'**Shall**' in the second and third person refers to:

\* **A Command**; as:

1. You shall come immediately.
2. They shall not go out till I come.

\* **A Promise**; as:

1. You shall get a gift from me.
2. He shall have the money tomorrow.

\* **A Threat**; as:

1. You shall be jailed.

2. He shall be fined.

\* **Determination**; as:

1. You shall pass in exam.
2. He shall win the game.

‘**Will**’ in the second and third person refers to:

\* **Simple Future**; as:

1. You will come tomorrow.
2. They will visit Iran next year.

‘**Will**’ in the first person refers to:

\* **A Promise**; as:

1. I will always help you.
2. We will pay him tomorrow.

\* **A Threat**; as:

1. I will teach you a lesson.
2. We will punish her.

\* **Determination**; as:

1. I will confront all of them.
2. We will go and see what he wants.

\* **Willingness**; as:

1. I will go to see my friend.
2. We will support the Islamic countries.

**Note:** Modern English prefers using ‘**will**’ in all person and avoids using ‘**shall**’.

## Uses of **Have/Has** and **Had**

\* ‘**Have**’, ‘**Has**’ and ‘**Had**’ are used in the formation of the perfect tense. ‘**Has**’ and ‘**Have**’ are used with the **present perfect** and **present perfect continuous**. ‘**Has**’ is used with third person whereas ‘**have**’ is used with first and second persons.

‘**Had**’ is used in the formation of the **past perfect tense** and **past perfect continuous**. It works with all pronouns.

**Read the following sentences:**

‘**Has**’ (He, She, It)

1. **He has** eaten apples for two days.
2. **She has** cooked food for three hours.
3. **It has** not caught a mouse since last night.
4. **He has** been sleeping for two hours.

**'Have'** (They, we, you, I)

1. **They have** not broken a pen since their childhood.
2. **We have** drunk the juice for half an hour.
3. **You have** not driven the car since July.
4. **I have** sung a song for an hour.
5. **They have** been playing since early morning.

**'Had'** (He, she, it, they, we, you, I)

1. **He had** left our house when I came home.
2. **They had** been drawing a scene when we met them.

\* **'Has', 'Have' and 'Had'** are used to indicate **Possession**; as:

1. **He has** a car.
2. **They have** money.
3. **She had** a scarf at that time.
4. **He doesn't have** a car.
5. **They don't have** money.

\* (**'Has', 'Have' and 'Had' + to**) are used to indicate **obligation**; as:

1. She **has to** cook food.
2. They **have to** attend the class.
3. He **had to** study hard.

## Uses of 'Am, Is, Are, Was, Were'

**'Am, Is, Are, Was, Were'** are the finites of the verb **'be'**. They act as auxiliary verbs when used:

1. In the formation of continuous tense. **'Am, Is, Are'** are used to form the **Present Continuous Tense**. **'Was, Were'** are used to form the **Past Continuous Tense**. Read the following carefully:

**'Am, Is, Are' (Present Continuous Tense)**

- (a) I am reciting the holy Quran at present.
- (b) She is cooking food now.
- (c) They are playing football at this moment.

**'Was, Were' (Past Continuous Tense)**

- a) I was planting a flower.
- b) He was catching fish.
- c) They were swimming.

2. In the formation of the passive voice.

- ‘**Am, Is, Are**’ are used to form the passive voice of the **present simple tense**.
- ‘**Was, Were**’ are used to form the passive voice of the **past simple tense**.
- ‘**being**’, ‘**be**’, ‘**been**’ are used to form the passive voice of the **present/past continuous**, future/modals and present/past perfect consecutively.

**Read the following carefully:**

1. He beats me./ I **am beaten** by him.
2. I eat it. / It **is eaten** by me.
3. She teaches them./ They **are taught** by her.
4. You broke it./It **was broken** by you.
5. We drew them./ They **were drawn** by us.
6. They are playing chess. /Chess is **being played** by them.
7. I am repairing the cars./The cars are **being repaired** by me.
8. We were reading a book./A book was **being read** by us.
9. She was washing dishes./Dishes were **being washed** by her.
10. He will write the letter./The letter will **be written** by him.
11. She would plant flowers./Flowers would **be planted** by her.
12. It can make tea./Tea can **be made** by it.
13. He has sung songs./Songs have **been sung** by him.
14. They have eaten food./Food has **been eaten** by them.
15. She had sold the house./The house **had been** sold by her.

When ‘**be**’ expresses a meaning of its own, it is a **principal verb**; as:

1. Allah is.

The word ‘**be**’ is also used as a **verb of incomplete predication**, it is **verb ‘to be’** as:

1. Ali is generous.
2. Rami was present.

## Uses of ‘**May**’

\* ‘**May**’ is used to express a **wish**; as:

1. May success be hers.
2. May they reach safely.

\* ‘**May**’ is used to express a **purpose**; as:

1. We eat that we may live.
2. He went that he may attend.

\* **'May'** is used to express **permission**; as:

1. You may go if you want.
2. You may sit down.

\* **'May'** is used to express **possibility**; as:

1. It may rain.
2. He may catch cold.

### Uses of **'Do, Does, Did'**

\* **'Do, Does, Did'** are used to form **questions**; as:

1. Does he teach English?
2. Do they eat fish?
3. Did she cook food?

\* **'Do, Does, Did'** are used to **emphasize** and **assert**; as:

1. He does teach English.
2. They do eat fish.
3. She did say so.

\* When **'Do, Does, Did'** express meanings of their own, they are **principal verbs**; as:

1. I do my work regularly.
2. She does her duty well.
3. They did what we told them.

### Uses of **'Do and Make'**

**'Do'** is used when we do not say exactly what activities we are referring to; as with words like (something), (anything), (nothing), (thing), (what). It is also used to talk about (duty), (job) and (work). Examine the following:

**What** can they **do**? Can they **do anything**? They can **do nothing**. They can **do** only strange **things**. Ask them to **do something** good. They will **do** a **favor** for us if they **do** their **homework**. They must **do** their **duty**. They must **do** their **work**. Then, they can **do** a regular **exercise** such as **swimming, walking**. In future, they can **do business**.

**'Make'** is used when we talk about (creating), (constructing), (building). Examine the following:

They are good only in **making noises**. They can't **make plans** for the future. If they do not **make wars** and **fires**, they will not **make profits** and **money**. They failed to realize that **making peace** means **making fortune** for future generations.

**Exercise (47):**

Fill in the blanks with suitable **Auxiliary** (helping) **Verbs**:

1. ....he play football every Thursday?
2. ....they go school everyday.
3. ....you see him yesterday?
4. I .....eating food now.
5. He .....doing his homework at this moment.
6. They.....building a house at present.
7. He ..... repairing the car all last week.
8. We .....walking in the streets all yesterday night.
9. She .....visit us next year.
10. They .....not eaten food for two days.
11. He .....not visited China since 1999.
12. When I reached the airport, the plane.....taken off.
13. They have .....living here in 1999.
14. The letter is .....written by the boy now.
15. The letter will.....delivered by the postman.

**Exercise (48):**

Fill in the blanks with ‘**shall**’ or ‘**will**’:

1. We .....visit the zoo.
2. You .....not leave this place till I come back.
3. He .....get a special gift.
4. You .....be jailed.
5. They .....catch it sooner or later.
6. You .....come tomorrow.
7. I .....help you when you ask for help.
8. We .....extinguish you.
9. I .....confront enemies whatever the cost may be.
10. We .....go to visit him.
11. ....we go to Dongola?
12. ....you come to our house?

**Exercise (49):** Fill in the blanks with ‘**do**’ or ‘**make**’:

....an appointment.	.....a decision.	.....an effort.
.....a mistake.	.....homework.	.....a speech.
.....excuses.	Never.....wrong things.	.....arrangements.
.....a request.	.....progress.	.....sport.

## The Adjective النعت / الصفة

Read the following sentences:

1. The sky is **blue**.
2. The roses are **beautiful**.
3. Our parents are **kind**.
4. The mangoes are **sweet**.
5. Sami is **poor**, but **honest**.
6. Mona is a **religious** girl.

The words in bold type in the above sentences are **Adjectives**. They tell us something more about the person or thing named by nouns in each sentence. For example, the word 'blue' describes for us the color of the sky. Thus, the words '**blue**', '**beautiful**', '**kind**', '**sweet**', '**poor**', '**honest**', '**religious**', are describing-words. Each of the above describing-words adds something to the meaning of a noun.

**Learn:**

An **Adjective** is a describing word. It is used to add something to the meaning of a noun or pronoun.

### Kinds of Adjective انواع النعت/الصفة

There are six kinds of adjectives:

1. ADJECTIVES OF QUALITY. صفات النوع Hamza is a **brave** man.
2. ADJECTIVES OF QUANTITY. صفات الكمية I have **much** money.
3. ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER. صفات العدد He bought **ten** tickets.
4. DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES. صفات الاشارة **This** banana is sweet.
5. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. صفات التملكية That is **our** house.
6. INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVES. الصفات الاستفهامية **Whose** car is this?

#### 1. ADJECTIVES OF QUALITY:

Read the following sentences:

1. Ali is a **clever** boy.
2. Sabir is a **generous** man.
3. Nada is a **fat** woman.
4. Sudan is a **rich** country.

The words '**clever**', '**generous**', '**fat**', '**rich**', are **adjectives of quality**. They tell us something more about the nouns 'boy', 'Sabir', 'Nada' and 'Sudan'. **The adjectives of quality** show the quality of nouns they qualify. They tell us '**of what kind a person or a thing is**'. Thus, **Adjectives of quality** answer the question '**Of what kind**'?

**Learn:**

An **Adjective of Quality** describes the quality of a person or thing and adds to its meaning. It answers the question 'Of what kind'?

**Exercise (50):**

Pick out **Adjectives of Quality** in the following sentences:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. She wears Islamic uniform.             | 2. He drives the red car.               |
| 3. The white dog is chasing the fast fox. | 4. Hasan is a great scholar.            |
| 5. Ali is a noble and generous man.       | 6. The crocodile is a dangerous animal. |
| 7. This is a historical city.             | 8. That is a poor and ill woman.        |
| 9. Hamza was brave and strong.            | 10. Ammar is a religious man.           |
| 11. Hayder was a wise teacher.            | 12. I bought a sharp knife.             |
| 13. Khadeeja is a kind mother.            | 14. Kordofan is a beautiful place.      |
| 15. The Nile gives us fresh water.        | 16. Ali was a good fighter.             |

**Exercise (51):**

Fill in the blanks with **Adjectives of Quality**. The words are given below:

*Religious, intelligent, wise, happy, beautiful,  
sweet, small, young, great, weak, rich, deep.*

1. I swam in a .....sea.
2. She is a .....girl.
3. It is a .....flower.
4. I am very .....today.
5. He is a .....man.
6. Husain was a .....leader.
7. Ali was a .....scholar.
8. Qaroon was ....., but he became proud.
9. I bought a .....bread.
10. He is a .....child.
11. He is an old and .....man.
12. Mohammed is an .....student.

**2. ADJECTIVES OF QUANTITY:**

**Read the following sentences:**

- |                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 1. He bought <b>some</b> bread.  | 2. He consumes <b>much</b> sugar.        |
| 3. They had <b>enough</b> money. | 4. The monkey ate the <b>whole</b> cake. |

The words ‘**some**’, ‘**much**’, ‘**enough**’, ‘**whole**’, are **adjectives of quantity**. They show describe how much a thing is. They answer the question ‘**Of how much**’?

Learn:

An **Adjective of Quantity** describes how much a thing is. It answers the question ‘**Of how much**’?

### 3. ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER:

Numbers are of three types:

(a) **Definite numeral**; as:

= one, two, three - (*Cardinal numbers* الاعداد الاصلية)

\* Ali has **two** cars.

= first, second, third—(*Ordinal numbers* الاعداد الترتيبية)

\* The **first** racer got the cup.

(b) **Indefinite numeral**; as:

= all, few, some, any, many.

\* **Some** students are clever.

(c) **Distributive numeral**; as:

= each, every, either, neither.

\* **Each** child got a doll.

The words ‘**two**’, ‘**The first**’, ‘**some**’, ‘**each**’, are **adjectives of number**. They refer to the numerical strength of persons or things. They answer the question ‘**How many**’? Or ‘**How much**’? Or ‘**In what order**’?

Learn:

An **Adjective of Number** refers to the numerical strength of persons or things. It answers the question ‘**How many**’? Or ‘**How much**’? or ‘**In what order**’?

#### Exercise (52):

Pick out **Adjectives of Quantity** and **Adjectives of Number** in the following sentences:

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. Three boys are standing there. | 2. The first runner is my brother.      |
| 3. I saw many lions in the zoo.   | 4. Each poor man got a piece of bread.  |
| 5. She will need some sugar.      | 6. I found some mangoes under the tree. |
| 7. I have got enough ink.         | 8. There is little rice in the dish.    |

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 9. Either team can win the golden cup. | 10. Every child likes to eat sweets. |
| 11. All children like their mothers.   | 12. Neither fulfilled the promise.   |
| 13. He ate the whole cake.             | 14. They have much money.            |
| 15. I did not take any medicine.       | 16. She has no time to waste.        |

**Exercise (53):**

Fill in the blanks with **Adjectives of Quantity** and **Adjectives of Number**. The words are given below:

*Much, some, any, few, little, all, no, enough, sufficient,  
six, every, either, neither, third, some, many,*

1. I saw .....cars in the street.
2. He has .....money for the journey.
3. There is .....milk in the cup.
4. ....girl in the group got a scarf.
5. ....cars are parked in the cars parking.
6. The .....girl is my sister.
7. There are .....any students in the class.
8. I ate .....bread.
9. The time to complete the program is not.....
10. He has not eaten .....food since Monday.
11. ....army can win the battle.
12. ....gave me any money.
13. There are .....girls in the class.
14. There is .....water in the jar.
15. The ill child drank.....milk.
16. ....human beings like wealth.

**4. DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES:**

**Read the following sentences:**

- |  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1. Look at <b>this</b> beautiful flower. | 2. Go and take <b>that</b> pen. |
| 3. I bought <b>these</b> bags.           | 4. Get <b>those</b> pencils.    |
| 5. I enjoy <b>such</b> stories.          |                                 |

The words '**this**', '**that**', '**these**', '**those**', '**such**' are **demonstrative adjectives**. They point to a noun. They answer the question '**which**'?

**Learn:**

A **Demonstrative Adjective** points out which a person or thing is meant. It answers the question '**which**'?

**Exercise (54):**

Pick out **Demonstrative Adjectives** in the following sentences:

- |                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. These dresses are respectable. | 2. That man is honest.            |
| 3. Those trees are green.         | 4. This mango is sweet.           |
| 5. I respect such men.            | 6. Come and clean this room.      |
| 7. She likes this scarf.          | 8. Look at these camels.          |
| 9. They hate such behaviors.      | 10. Does this car need repairing? |
| 11. When did he buy that donkey?  | 12. Give me those shoes please.   |

**5. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES:**

Read the following sentences:

- |                               |                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. I cleaned <b>my</b> room.  | 2. She got <b>his</b> book.   |
| 3. We saw <b>their</b> house. | 4. He met <b>your</b> father. |

The words '**my**', '**his**', '**their**', '**your**', are **possessive adjectives**. They tell whose a thing is. They answer the question '**whose**'?

**Learn:**

A **Possessive Adjective** denotes possession or relationship. It comes before a noun and answers the question '**whose**'?

**6. INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVES:**

Read the following sentences:

- |                                     |                               |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <b>What</b> type of fruit is it? | 2. <b>Which</b> pen is hers?  |
| 3. <b>Whose</b> house is that?      | 4. <b>Which</b> car is yours? |

The words '**What**', '**Which**', '**Whose**', '**Which**', are **interrogative adjectives**. They are used with nouns to ask questions.

**Learn:**

An **Interrogative Adjective** is used with nouns to ask question.

**Exercise (55):**

Pick out **Possessive Adjectives** and **Interrogative Adjectives** in the following sentences:

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1. Whose horse is that?           | 2. This is my property.                  |
| 3. He sold his car.               | 4. Which scarf is hers?                  |
| 5. What picture was drawn by you? | 6. That is their house.                  |
| 7. Death is our destiny.          | 8. I don't need your help.               |
| 9. Whose books are these?         | 10. I appreciate her Islamic tendencies. |
| 11. This is its tail.             | 12. Which pencil is hers?                |

## Use of Adjectives استعمال الصفات

**Adjectives may be used in two ways:**

1. Attributive use of adjectives (Epithet), الاستعمال النعتي للصفات
2. Predicative use of adjectives. الاستعمال الخبري للصفات

### 1. Attributive use of adjectives (Epithet)

**Read the following sentences:**

1. This is a **black** cat.
2. That is a **famous** school.
3. The **big** elephant.

In sentence 1, 2 and 3, the adjectives '**black**', '**famous**' and '**big**' stand close to the nouns 'cat', 'school' and 'elephant'. When the adjective stands close to the noun with which it goes, it indicates **an attributive use of the adjective**.

### 2. Predicative use of adjectives

**Read the following sentences:**

1. This cat is **black**.
2. That school is **famous**.
3. The elephant is **big**.

In sentence 1, 2 and 3, the adjectives '**black**', '**famous**' and '**big**' stand apart from the nouns 'cat', 'school' and 'elephant' by the word 'is'. When the adjective stands apart from its noun, it is known as **the predicative use of the adjective**.

**Exercise (56):**

(A) Rewrite the following sentences using the adjectives **attributively**:

The sentences	The Attributive use of Adjectives
1. This man is angry.	
2. That flower is beautiful.	
3. The fighter is brave.	
4. These letters are brief.	
5. Those students are confident.	
6. This question is easy.	
7. That city is famous.	
8. This man is rich.	
9. The student is enthusiastic.	
10. This insect is dangerous.	

11. This man is generous.	
12. That room is clean.	
13. These tanks are effective.	
14. Those girls are religious.	

**Exercise (57):**

(B) Rewrite the following sentences using the adjectives **predicatively**:

The sentences	The Predicative use of Adjectives
1. This is a generous man.	
2. That is a greedy trader.	
3. He is a peaceful man.	
4. She is a religious girl.	
5. They are clever students.	
6. This is a fat cow.	
7. She is a silent woman.	
8. He is an angry man.	
9. These are brief letters.	
10. This is a safe place.	

**Exercise (58):**

Use the following Adjectives in sentences:

*old, good, clever, much, few, three, any, some, whose, enough, every, their, which, neither, little, those, poor, these, her, each.*

**Exercise (59):**

Point out the **Adjectives** in the following sentences and state the kind of each:

1. A religious girl studies in that school.
2. The dog chased four foxes.
3. He consumes much sugar.
4. The first girl in the third group is intelligent.
5. All students attended their class.
6. Each student got a new book.
7. I want some water.
8. There are many lions in the forest.
9. I got some mangoes.
10. These cars are mine.
11. Ali is my friend.
12. Whose house is that?
13. Every human being must worship Allah.
14. He eats little rice.
15. Either girl can win the first prize.



- 4.....planes landed in the airport.
5. Electricity is .....
6. He did not find .....money in the burse.
7. The sun is .....
8. He bought .....shirts from the shopping center.
- 9.The rain is .....
- 10.....poor man got a dish of rice.
11. There is .....in the inkpot.
- 12.....car is this?
13. That is .....house.
- 14.....tables are mine.
15. I have .....books.

## Adjective Degrees of Comparison

### صفة درجات التفاضل

**Read the following sentence:**

Tariq is as **clever** as Sabir.

The words **as...as** is used to say that people or things are equal in some way. Both, Tariq and Sabir are clever.

In English language adjectives change their forms to show comparison. The three forms of adjectives are:

1. The Positive Degree, الدرجة الايجابية
2. The Comparative Degree, درجة التفاضل الاولى
3. The Superlative Degree. درجة التفاضل العليا

**Read the following sentences:**

1. Ali is a **tall** man.
2. Mona is a **religious** girl.

The words '**tall**', '**religious**' are adjectives in their simple forms. The simple form of the adjective is called the **Positive Degree**; as, '**tall**', '**religious**'.

**Read the following sentences:**

1. Sabir is **taller than** Ali.
2. Sara is **more religious than** Mona.

The words '**taller than**', '**more religious than**' refer to the comparative forms. When comparing two persons or things and saying that one has a certain quality in a greater degree than the other, the comparative form of the adjective is used. It is called the **Comparative Degree**; as, '**taller than**' or '**more religious than**'. '**Than**' is used after the comparative degree. If the adjective is long, the adverb '**more**' is used instead of '**er**'; as,

\* Dongola is **more famous than** Halfa.

**Read the following sentences:**

1. Sabir is **the tallest** of the three.
2. Huda is **the most religious** of the three.

The words '**the tallest**', '**the most religious**' refer to the superlative forms. When comparing more than two persons or things and saying that one has a certain quality in the greatest degree of all those are being compared, the superlative degree is used. It is called the **Superlative Degree**; as, '**the tallest**' or '**the most religious**'. If the adjective is long, the adverb '**most**' is used instead of '**est**'; as,

\* Elgolid is **the most famous** of the three.

**Remember:**

1. "**than**" is used after the comparative degree; as:

Sami is faster **than** Hani.

Dongola is more beautiful **than** New York.

2. "**the**" is used before the superlative degree; as:

Rami is **the** fastest student in the school.

Kasala is **the** most beautiful city in the world.

3. Some adjective take '**to**' instead of '**than**'. They are:

junior, senior, superior, inferior,

- (a) Sameer is junior **to** Ali in grade.
- (b) Fatima is senior **to** Randa in rank.
- (c) This car is superior **to** that.
- (d) That model is inferior **to** this.

4. Some adjectives can't be compared. Their meanings indicate that they possess the highest possible degree of a quality. They are: full, dead, circular, perfect, etc.

5. The adjectives '**this**' and '**that**' are the only adjectives that have plural forms. They are as follows:

This/ That

These/ Those

6. Adjectives such as much, little, less, far and rather form comparative meanings.

When parsing an Adjective, mention first of all the kind of adjective, secondly, its degree, thirdly, the noun that it qualifies or distinguishes.

Let's read and parse the Adjectives in the following sentence:

That generous ruler is the richest of the rich and he is nobler than all other rulers.

**Parsing:**

- That : Demonstrative adjective, pointing out ruler.  
 Generous: Adjective of quality, positive degree, describing ruler.  
 Richest : Adjective of quality, superlative degree, describing man (understood).  
 Rich : Adjective of quality, positive degree, describing men (understood).  
 Nobler : Adjective of quality, comparative degree (with -er), describing the ruler.

**Exercise (62):**

Parse the Adjectives in the following sentences:

1. Sami is faster than Rami, but Rami is heavier than Sami.
2. We are religious people.
3. This old man is the funniest person in this big city.
4. Ali is more intellectual than Hasan, but Hasan is the most initiative man.
5. Qasim is shorter than Basim, however, Basim is the fattest person in the city.

## Formation of the Degrees of Adjectives

### تكوين درجات الصفات

By adding 'er' and 'est' to the positive degree:

المعنى	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
طويل	Tall	Taller than اطول من	The tallest الاطول
قصير	Short	Shorter than اقصر من	The shortest الاقصر
صغير	Small	Smaller than اصغر من	The smallest الاصغر
قوي	Strong	Stronger than اقوى من	The strongest الاقوى

By adding 'r' and 'st' to the positive degree which has 'e' at the end:

المعنى	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
كبير	Large	Larger than اكبر من	The largest الاكبر
ابيض	White	Whiter than اكثر بياضا من	The whitest الاكثر بياضا
شجاع	Brave	Braver than اشجع من	The bravest الاشجع
حكيم	Wise	Wiser than اكثر حكمة من	The wisest الاكثر حكمة

By doubling the last consonant if a vowel comes before it and then adding 'er' and 'est':

المعنى	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
ضخم	Big	Bigger than من اضمخ	The biggest الاضخم
رفيع	Thin	Thinner than ارفع من	The thinnest الارفع
سخن	Hot	Hotter than اسخن من	The hottest الاسخن
سمين	Fat	Fatter than اسمن من	The fattest الاسمن

By changing the last 'y' into 'i' if a consonant comes before it and then adding 'er' and 'est':

المعنى	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
سهل	Easy	Easier than اسهل	The easiest الاسهل
سعيد	Happy	Happier than اسعد	The happiest الاسعد
ثقيل	Heavy	Heavier than اثقل	The heaviest الاثقل
محظوظ	Lucky	Luckier than اكثر حظا	The luckiest الاكثر حظا

By changing the whole word (irregular):

المعنى	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
جيد	Good	Better than افضل من	The best الافضل
سيئ	Bad	Worse than اسوأ من	The worst الاسوأ
كثير	Much	More than اكثر كمية	The most (quantity) الاكثر كمية
متعدد	Many	More than اكثر عددا	The most (number) الاكثر عددا
قليل	Little	Less than اقل من	The least الاقل
بعيد	Far	Farther than ابعد من	The farthest الابعد
سبق	Fore	Former than اسبق من	The foremost الاسبق
قديم/عجوز	Old	Older/elder than اقدم من/اكبر من	The oldest/eldest الاقدم/الاكبر
خارج	Out	Outer than اكثر خروجا من	The outermost/utmost الاكثر خروجا
عالي	Up	Upper than اعلى من	The uppermost الاعلى

By putting 'more' and 'most' before the positive degree (long adjectives):

المعنى	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
صعب	Difficult	More difficult than اكثر صعوبة من	The most difficult الاكثر صعوبة
جميل	Beautiful	More beautiful than اكثر جمالا من	The most beautiful الاكثر جمالا
كريم	Generous	More generous than اكثر كرما من	The most generous الاكثر كرما
ذكي	Intelligent	More intelligent than اكثر ذكاءا من	The most intelligent الاكثر ذكاءا

**Exercise (63):**

Give the **Comparative** and **Superlative Degrees** of the following Adjectives: *Easy, deep, good, large, big, busy, cold, hot, thin, beautiful, sad, bad, difficult, dirty, useful, late, happy, many, wise.*

**Exercise (64):**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c:

1. This is the .....conference I have ever attended.  
(a) good (b) better (c) best
2. The Nile is the .....river in the world.  
(a) longest (b) long (c) longer
3. The white horse is not as .....as the black horse.  
(a) the slowest (b) slow (c) slower than
4. This is the .....question in the exam.  
(a) more difficult (b) most difficult (c) difficult
5. This shirt is .....than that shirt.  
(a) expensive (b) more expensive (c) most expensive
6. My essay is .....than yours.  
(a) better (b) good (c) best
7. The Concord plane could fly at a speed.....than sound.  
(a) fast (b) fastest (c) faster
8. AIDS is one of .....diseases.  
(a) the most dangerous (b) more dangerous (c) dangerous
9. Weika is a popular food, however, Khudra is much.....  
(a) most popular (b) more popular (c) popular
10. Ali is .....of all.  
(a) brave (b) braver than (c) the bravest
11. February is the .....month.  
(a) shortest (b) shorter (c) short
12. This flower is .....than that flower.  
(a) pretty (b) prettier (c) prettiest
13. Elgolid is big, but Dongola is much.....  
(a) bigger (b) biggest (c) big
14. The river is not as .....as the ocean.  
(a) deep (b) deeper than (c) the deepest
15. Nada is .....than Rasha.  
(a) fattest (b) fat (c) fatter
16. This trouser is the.....one in the shop.  
(a) cheap (b) cheaper (c) cheapest
17. In Mathematics exam, Mona was .....than Leena.  
(a) bad (b) worse (c) worst
18. In English exam, Sabir was the.....  
(a) worst (b) bad (c) worse

19. University of Khartoum is one of.....universities in Africa.  
 (a) old (b) the oldest (c) older than
20. Al Buraee was one of .....Sudanese scholars.  
 (a) great (b) greater than (c) the greatest
21. Sahatul Fida is .....than foreign serials.  
 (a) enjoyable (b) more enjoyable (c) most enjoyable
22. This is the .....mark in my class.  
 (a) bad (b) worse than (c) worst
23. This room is as .....as that room.  
 (a) wider than (b) wide (c) the widest
24. That field is not as.....as this field.  
 (a) fertile (b) more fertile (c) the most fertile

**Exercise (65):**

Fill in the blanks with the correct **degree of Adjectives** given in brackets:

1. Ali is .....than George. (wise)
2. This type of fruit is .....than those others. (useful)
3. Ali was the.....of all leaders. (great)
4. The enemy is .....than us. (weak)
5. That is the .....shape I have ever seen. (ugly)
6. Hamza is .....than Toney. (brave)
7. Precaution is the ..... policy. (good)
8. Wine consumption is.....than adultery. (bad)
9. Drug addiction is.....than smoking cigarettes. (dangerous)
10. He is the .....man I have ever see. (lazy)
11. Ahmed is.....than his brother. (clever)
12. He is the .....man I have ever met. (kind)
13. It was the .....lecture I have ever attended. (bad)
14. Khartoum is .....than Madani. (large)
15. Prevention is .....than cure. (good)
16. Japanese is much .....than Arabic. (difficult)
17. There is much.....bread in that bakery. (good)
18. My health is rather .....today. (good)
19. A donkey is far .....than a horse. (cheap)
20. I slept a little.....than usual. (early)
21. A train is less.....than a plane. (expensive)
22. Who is .....Jabir or Nadir? (thin)
23. Sheesha is as.....as cigarette. (harmful)
24. Algadr Night is.....than a thousand months. (good)

**Exercise (66):**

Rewrite the following sentences using “**not as.....as**” as shown in the following example:

Example: Rami is taller than Sami

Answer: Sami is not as tall as Rami

1. The horse is faster than the donkey.
2. Natural medicines are better than chemical medicines.
3. Jabir is more generous than Sabir.
4. Sudan is richer than many other countries.
5. The snake is worse than the scorpion.
6. Reading is easier than writing.
7. Night is colder than daytime.
8. History is more difficult than Geography.
9. Lions are fiercer than tigers.

## The Correct Use of Some Adjectives

### الاستعمال الصحيح لبعض الصفات

#### 1. Some, Any:

\* **'Some'** is used in Affirmative and Interrogative sentences:

- = He read some books yesterday.
- = Give me some salt.
- = Does she have some envelopes?
- = Do you have some sugar?

\* **'Any'** is used in Negative or Interrogative sentences; as:

- = He has not cooked any food.
- = Do you have any pen?
- = You don't have any pen.
  
- = Did they buy any milk?
- = They did not buy any milk.

#### 2. Few, a few, the few.

They are adjectives of Number.

\* **'Few'** denotes a negative meaning. It means **'not many'** or **'hardly any'**; as:

- = Few students get above 90%.

\* **'A few'** means **'a small number'** or **'some at least'**; as:

- = A few students get above 90%.
- = He found a few ripe fruits.

\* **'The few'** means **'not many but all'**; as:

- = The few students who get above 90% get admission  
in medical colleges.
- = He has eaten the few fruits he found.

#### 3. Little, a little, the little:

They are adjectives of quantity. They are used before uncountable nouns;

\* **'Little'** denotes scarcity or lack. It conveys a negative sense. It means **[not much]** or **[hardly any]**; as:

- = They have little chance of survival.
- = There is little chance of reaching the train.

\* **'A little'** means refers to **'small amount'** or **'some'**; as:

- = He consumes a little sugar.
- = They have a little chance of survival.

- \* **'The little'** means **'not much but all that is'**; as:
  - = The little water that is in the pot is dirty.

#### 4. Many, much:

- \* **'Many'** refers to number; as:
  - = There are many cars in the garage.
- \* **'Much'** refers to quantity; as:
  - = She has wasted much oil.
  - = There is no much oil in the bottle.

#### Exercise (67):

Fill in the blanks with (**some, any, few, a few, the few, little, a little, the little, many, much**):

Example:

1. He has .....wealth.
2. There are.....lions in the zoo.
3. He distributed .....milk he bought from the market.
4. She has .....chance of escaping death.
5. The fox is not running fast. It has..... chance of escaping from the dog.
6. They have completed.....works they had.
7. We have.....hours to reach the station.
- 8.....students went to school yesterday.
9. I did not meet.....person in the street.
10. Is there.....sugar in the sack?
11. The beggar has.....food to eat.
12. I bought.....shoes from the market.

## The Adverb (الحال / الظرف)

### Read the following sentence:

Ali reads.

The above is a sentence. It is a complete statement. But we do not know anything about Ali and his action because there are no any words which describe his action. Now, read the following sentences:

1. Ali reads **loudly**.
2. Ali reads **now**.
3. Ali reads **there**.

The above sentences tell us many things about Ali's action. The words in bold type tell us how, when and where the action is done by Ali.

In sentence 1 the word **loudly** tells us *how* Ali reads. It shows in what manner Ali reads and thus it modifies the verb 'reads'.

In sentence 2 the word **now** tells us *when* Ali reads. It shows when Ali reads and thus it modifies the meaning of the verb 'reads'.

In sentence 3 the word **there** tells us *where* Ali reads. It shows where Ali reads and thus it modifies the meaning of the verb 'reads'.

Therefore, each sentence got a word that adds something to the meaning of its verb. Such words are called **Adverbs**. The words (**loudly, now, there**) are adverbs.

### Learn:

**An Adverb** is the word that adds something to the meaning of a verb, an adjective or another adverb.

## Kinds of Adverb انواع الظرف

There are six kinds of adverbs:

1. ADVERBS OF MANNER: ظروف الاسلوب He speaks **loudly**.
2. ADVERBS OF TIME: ظروف الزمن He sleeps **early**.
3. ADVERBS OF PLACE: ظروف المكان She washes **there**.
4. ADVERBS OF NUMBER: ظروف العدد I visited Tehran **twice**.
5. ADVERBS OF DEGREE: ظروف الدرجة The child is **very**  
weak.
6. INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS: ظروف استفهامية **How** do you  
do?

7. ADVERBS OF REASON: ظروف السبب She, **therefore**, failed to come here.
8. RELATIVE ADVERBS: ظروف وصلية This is the house **where** (in which) we lived.
9. ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION: ظروف التأكيد He **certainly** left the place.
10. ADVERBS OF NEGATION: ظروف النفي She is **not** studying law.

### 1. ADVERBS OF MANNER:

**Read the following sentences:**

1. He slept **soundly**.
2. She walks **slowly**.
3. It ran **quickly**.

In the above sentences the words ‘**soundly**’, ‘**slowly**’, ‘**quickly**’ are adverbs. They show **how** the action happened. These are **Adverbs of Manner**. They answer the question ‘**How**’?

**Learn:**

**An Adverb of Manner** answers the question ‘**How**’?

**Exercise (68):**

Pick out **Adverbs of Manner** in the following sentences:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. The knight marches bravely.           | 2. The wise man speaks briefly.           |
| 3. The mother takes her child carefully. | 4. Farmers work collectively.             |
| 5. The hard-work man works confidently.  | 6. She reads well.                        |
| 7. Sameer runs very fast.                | 8. I helped the poor generously.          |
| 9. The beggar ate the food greedily.     | 10. The child went to his mother happily. |
| 11. She received the gift joyfully.      | 12. They settled the problem peacefully.  |
| 13. He slept comfortably.                | 14. I started my work enthusiastically.   |
| 15. He goes to school regularly.         | 16. The thief entered the room secretly.  |
| 17. They came out of the well safely.    | 18. He settled in Tehran permanently.     |
| 19. He writes badly.                     | 20. They speak loudly.                    |

**Exercise (69):**

Answer the following questions using the **Adverbs** given in brackets:

1. How did the child sleep? (soundly)
2. How does the old man walk? (slowly)
3. How does the farmer work? (hard)
4. How did the knight fight? (bravely)
5. How did Ali rule? (wisely)
6. How does the mother treat her child? (kindly)
7. How did it rain? (heavily)
8. How does the man speak? (angrily)
9. How did the boy answer the questions? (cleverly)
10. How did the fox run? (swiftly)
11. How did they sing? (sweetly)
12. How does he dress himself? (neatly)

**Exercise (70):**

Write down ten sentences each containing an **Adverb of Manner**:

**2. ADVERBS OF TIME:**

**Read the following sentences:**

1. She will come **tomorrow**.
2. They are swimming **now**.
3. They go to school **daily**.

In the above sentences the words '**tomorrow**', '**now**', '**daily**' are adverbs. They show **when** the action happened. These are **Adverbs of Time**. They answer the question '**When**'?

**Learn:**

**An Adverb of Time** answers the question '**When**'?

**Exercise (71):**

Pick out **Adverbs of Time** in the following sentences:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. He is sleeping now.</li> <li>3. She went to China last year.</li> <li>5. He arrived late.</li> <li>7. You go to the river daily.</li> <li>9. We are opening the shop shortly.</li> <li>11. He slept immediately.</li> <li>13. Go out of the room now.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. They caught a fish yesterday.</li> <li>4. That metal melted instantly.</li> <li>6. She woke up early.</li> <li>8. They visit Khartoum monthly.</li> <li>10. I come to the office in time.</li> <li>12. It will arrive soon.</li> <li>14. She will come today.</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

- |                                   |                                    |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 15. She goes to the school daily. | 16. He will telephone us tomorrow. |
| 17. They are paying me afterward. | 18. I met him yesterday.           |
| 19. That day she arrived late.    | 20. They are sleeping now.         |

**Exercise (72):**

Answer the following questions using the **Adverbs** given in brackets:

- |                                   |              |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| 1. When did he play football?     | (yesterday)  |
| 2. When are they working?         | (now)        |
| 3. When do I meet him?            | (monthly)    |
| 4. When will they travel?         | (tomorrow)   |
| 5. When will he come?             | (today)      |
| 6. When do they go to school?     | (daily)      |
| 7. When does father come home?    | (late)       |
| 8. When did you get up?           | (early)      |
| 9. When will you visit us?        | (soon)       |
| 10. When did she go to Iran?      | (yesterday)  |
| 11. When do they do the homework? | (daily)      |
| 12. When will he come?            | (afterwards) |

**Exercise (73):**

Write down ten sentences each containing an **Adverb of Time**:

**3. ADVERBS OF PLACE:**

Read the following sentences:

1. They are staying **here**.
2. She is praying **there**.
3. The doctor is **in**.

In the above sentences the words '**here**', '**there**', '**in**' are adverbs. They show **where** the action happened. These are **Adverbs of Place**. They answer the question '**Where**'?

**Learn:**

**An Adverb of Place** answers the question '**Where**'?

**Exercise (74):**

Pick out **Adverbs of Place** in the following sentences:

- |                                   |                                       |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Go there.                      | 2. Come here.                         |
| 3. She looked down.               | 4. They went everywhere to get water. |
| 5. The driver is waiting outside. | 6. The doctor is in.                  |

- |                                   |                                 |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 7. The dog is out.                | 8. The army marched forward.    |
| 9. Ali lives near the mosque.     | 10. The bees flew away.         |
| 11. The traveler fell overboard.  | 12. Sit down.                   |
| 13. Come in.                      | 14. She came back.              |
| 15. They are standing underneath. | 16. It is kept somewhere.       |
| 17. He went homeward.             | 18. I saw the plane go up.      |
| 19. The bus stops here.           | 20. It runs hither and thither. |

**Exercise (75):**

Answer the following questions using the **Adverbs** given in brackets:

- |  |              |
|--|--------------|
| 1. Where did the train stop?                   | (here)       |
| 2. Where has Saif gone?                        | (out)        |
| 3. Where do you live?                          | (there)      |
| 4. Where do they look?                         | (up)         |
| 5. Where did he go in search of his car?       | (everywhere) |
| 6. Where does the milkman wait?                | (outside)    |
| 7. Where did the disease spread?               | (everywhere) |
| 8. Where did they go?                          | (away)       |
| 9. Where did she keep the money?               | (somewhere)  |
| 10. Where does the doctor examine the patient? | (inside)     |
| 11. Where did the eagle fly?                   | (away)       |
| 12. Where will the students stand?             | (here)       |

**Exercise (76):**

Write down ten sentences each containing an **Adverb of Place**:

**4. ADVERBS OF NUMBER (Frequency):**

Read the following sentences:

1. He went to Tehran **twice**.
2. She **never** delays prayers.
3. They **always** pray in the mosque.
4. It **often** sleeps on the bed.
5. I **seldom** go to the sea.

In the above sentences the words '**twice**', '**never**', '**always**', '**often**', '**seldom**' are adverbs. They show **how often** an action is done. These are **Adverbs of Number**. They answer the question '**How often**'?

**Learn:**

**An Adverb of Number (Frequency) answers the question 'How often'?**

**Exercise (77):**

Pick out **Adverbs of Number** (Frequency) in the following sentences:

- |                                  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. He never smokes cigarette.    | 2. He often drives cycles.       |
| 3. I visited him once.           | 4. It frequently comes here.     |
| 5. They seldom go to the club.   | 6. He always prays in mosques.   |
| 7. We usually go to the sea.     | 8. I generally keep silent.      |
| 9. I have been to Tehran thrice. | 10. We went to them twice.       |
| 11. She always wears the scarf.  | 12. They frequently visit us.    |
| 13. The thieves seldom wait.     | 14. They never tell lie.         |
| 15. He always speaks the truth.  | 16. You seldom visit us.         |
| 17. He came to this shop twice.  | 18. I take tablets thrice a day. |
| 19. We often work together.      | 20. He met them once.            |

**Exercise (78):**

Answer the following questions using the **Adverbs** given in brackets:

- |  |                |
|--|----------------|
| 1. How often does he participate in games? | (always)       |
| 2. How often do they smoke cigarette?      | (never)        |
| 3. How often does she come here?           | (frequently)   |
| 4. How often do you go to Khartoum?        | (once a year)  |
| 5. How often does she take tablets?        | (thrice a day) |
| 6. How often do they go there?             | (twice a week) |
| 7. How often do you tell stories?          | (always)       |
| 8. How often does he visit the zoo?        | (seldom)       |
| 9. How often do we make cake?              | (sometimes)    |
| 10. How often does she go for a walk?      | (generally)    |
| 11. How often does it come here?           | (once a day)   |
| 12. How often do they tell lie?            | (never)        |

**Exercise (79):**

Write down ten sentences each containing an **Adverb of Number** (Frequency):

**5. ADVERBS OF DEGREE:**

**Read the following sentences:**

1. She is **quite** weak.
2. You are **very** late.
3. He is **fully** satisfied.
4. They are **too** careless.
5. He treats the animals **most** cruelly.
6. The sack is **nearly** full.
7. I am **so** happy.

In the above sentences the words ‘quite’, ‘very’, ‘fully’, ‘too’, ‘most’, ‘nearly’, ‘so’ are adverbs. They show **to what extent** an action is done. These are **Adverbs of Degree**. They answer the question ‘**How far**’ or ‘**How often**’ or ‘**How much**’?

**Learn:**

**An Adverb of Degree** answers the question ‘**How far**’ or ‘**How often**’ or ‘**How much**’?

**Exercise (80):**

Pick out **Adverbs of Degree** in the following sentences:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. The girl is very religious.         | 2. He is quite well.                   |
| 3. The barrel is nearly empty.         | 4. The bucket is almost full.          |
| 5. He is fully aware of the problem.   | 6. They are so careless.               |
| 7. You are too lazy.                   | 8. He is exceedingly ugly.             |
| 9. She is truly diligent.              | 10. I am partly wrong.                 |
| 11. You are highly thankful.           | 12. His writing is fairly good.        |
| 13. The shoes are brightly white.      | 14. Its tongue was surprisingly red.   |
| 15. He was rather upset.               | 16. She is quite right.                |
| 17. The bird sings pretty well.        | 18. He plays a wonderfully fine music. |
| 19. What remarkable good work they do? | 20. They are altogether mistaken.      |

**Exercise (81):**

Answer the following questions using the **Adverbs** given in brackets:

- |                                       |                   |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. How easy is this exam?             | (very easy)       |
| 2. How careless was he?               | (too careless)    |
| 3. How much satisfied are you?        | (fully satisfied) |
| 4. How late were they?                | (very late)       |
| 5. How fast does it move?             | (very fast)       |
| 6. How often does she meet you?       | (quite often)     |
| 7. How much is the bucket filled?     | (nearly full)     |
| 8. How far is the news true?          | (partly true)     |
| 9. How strong are the wrestlers?      | (very strong)     |
| 10. How sad does he look?             | (rather sad)      |
| 11. How hot is the sun?               | (extremely hot)   |
| 12. How quickly do they prepare food? | (very quickly)    |

**Exercise (82):**

Write down ten sentences each containing an **Adverb of Degree**:

**6. INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS:**

**Read the following sentences:**

1. **When** does he sleep?
2. **How** do you do it?
3. **Where** is the key?
4. **Why** did you come?

In the above sentences the words '**when**', '**how**', '**where**', '**why**' are adverbs. They are used for asking questions. These are **Interrogative Adverbs**.

**Learn:**

**An Interrogative Adverb** is used for asking questions.

**Exercise (83):**

Pick out **Interrogative Adverbs** in the following sentences:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. What is your name?</li> <li>3. When did he come?</li> <li>5. How do you do?</li> <li>7. How did they make it?</li> <li>9. How often do they go there?</li> <li>11. How many pens are there in the box?</li> <li>13. What is the matter?</li> <li>15. Why are they arguing?</li> <li>17. How will they travel?</li> <li>19. What have they done?</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Where do they stay?</li> <li>4. Why does it cry?</li> <li>6. Where is Ali?</li> <li>8. Why is he late?</li> <li>10. When have you arrived?</li> <li>12. How is he today?</li> <li>14. When will they go?</li> <li>16. Who is knocking the door?</li> <li>18. Where do they keep it?</li> <li>20. Why is he complaining?</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

**Exercise (84):**

Ask a question about the following sentences using the **Interrogative Adverbs** given in brackets:

- |   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 1. He is playing chess.                   | (What)      |
| 2. They came to see you.                  | (Why)       |
| 3. His name is Hasan.                     | (What)      |
| 4. They keep money in the cupboard.       | (Where)     |
| 5. He has traveled by plane.              | (How)       |
| 6. I am very well.                        | (How)       |
| 7. Ali is knocking the door.              | (Who)       |
| 8. They are very ill.                     | (How)       |
| 9. He visits us twice a week.             | (How often) |
| 10. She takes tablets because she is ill. | (Why)       |
| 11. Sami was meeting Salih.               | (Whom)      |

12. The fox hides in the forest. (Where)

**Exercise (85):**

Write down ten sentences each containing an **Interrogative Adverb**:

**7. ADVERBS OF REASON:**

Read the following sentences:

1. He, **therefore**, could not drive the car.
2. She is, **hence**, unable to sleep.

In the above sentences the words '**therefore**', '**hence**' are adverbs. They are used for indicating the reason. These are **Adverbs of Reason**.

Learn:

**An Adverb of reason** is used for indicating the reason.

**Exercise (86):**

Pick out **Adverbs of Reason** in the following sentences:

1. She, therefore, may not cook today.	2. He is, hence, unable to walk.
3. Since this machine has troubled me very much, I am going to buy another machine.	4. Ali was happy as he got the highest mark in the class.
5. I want to take bath because I'm dirty.	6. I missed the bus because I got up late.
7. As he wanted to withdraw some money, he went to the bank.	8. Since he couldn't cook, he remained without food all the day.
9. Mona passed the test because she studied thoroughly.	10. As Salih met his old friend, he was surprised.
11. They, therefore, could not come yesterday.	12. They were, hence, unable to sleep.

**Exercise (87):**

Answer the following questions using the **Adverbs** given in brackets:

1. Why was he weeping? (because)
2. Why do you want to buy another car? (Since)
3. Why is she staying without paying the rent? (hence)
4. Why did they go to the hospital? (As)
5. Why were they demonstrating? (therefore)

**Exercise (88):**

Write down ten sentences each containing an **Adverb of Reason**:

**8. RELATIVE ADVERBS:**

**Read the following sentences:**

1. This is the school **where** (in which) I studied.
2. That was the year **when** (in which) he completed his studies.
3. The reason **why** (for which) she rejected him is not clear.

In the above sentences the words '**where**', '**when**', '**why**' are adverbs. They are used for connecting related meanings. These are **Relative Adverbs**.

**Learn:**

**A Relative Adverb** is used for connecting related sentences.

**Exercise (89):**

Pick out **Relative Adverbs** in the following sentences:

1. The village where I was born has turned into a big city.	2. The day when I must surrender has come.
3. The reason why he cried is not very clear.	4. The person whom I like traveled.
5. The student who excels in exams will get the gift.	6. The goat that gives us milk died.
7. The money which I receive is not enough.	8. The house where I stay is far away.
9. The reason why he visited us is not known.	10. The man whom she met in the street is here.
11. The cat of which tail was cut is chasing a mouse.	12. The table of which legs were broken is in the room.

**Exercise (90):**

Write down ten sentences each containing a **Relative Adverb**:

**9. ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION:**

**Read the following sentences;**

1. They **certainly** arrived by now.
2. He is **surely** waiting for us.
3. I will **definitely** come to you.
4. Did you see him? **Yes**, I saw him.
5. Do you agree? Oh, **quite**.

In the above sentences the words '**certainly**', '**surely**', '**definitely**', '**Yes**' and '**quite**' are adverbs. They are used for affirming the occurrence of an action. These are **Adverbs of Affirmation**.

**Learn:**

**An Adverb of Affirmation** is used for affirming the occurrence of an action.

**Exercise (91):**

Pick out **Adverbs of Affirmation** in the following sentences:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. She certainly likes dressing scarf. | 2. He is surely regular in attending classes. |
| 3. He will definitely tell us.         | 4. They have certainly left to the market.    |

**Exercise (92):**

Write down ten sentences each containing an **Adverb of Affirmation**:

**10. ADVERBS OF NEGATION:**

**Read the following sentences:**

1. It is **not** in the room.
2. They do **not** like smoking.
3. We did **not** pay the rent.
4. Have you ever smoked cigarette? **No**, I have **never** smoked cigarette.

In the above sentences the words ‘**no**’, ‘**not**’ and ‘**never**’ are adverbs. They are used for negating the occurrence of an action. They are **Adverbs of Negation**.

**Learn:**

**An Adverb of Negation** is used for negating the occurrence of an action.

**Exercise (93):**

Pick out **Adverbs of Negation** in the following sentences:

- |   |                       |
|---|-----------------------|
| 1. He will not come.                                      | 2. She can not do it. |
| 3. It is not here.  | 4. We are not going.  |
| 5. Has he ever wasted time? No, he has never wasted time. |                       |

**Exercise (94):**

Write down ten sentences each containing an **Adverb of Negation**:

## Position of Adverbs موقع الظروف

### Position of Adverbs before verbs:

Subject	Adverb	Verb
1. He	always	pays.
2. They	usually	go to mosque.
3. She	often	eats rice.
4. We	generally	play football on Friday.
5. I	never	smoke cigarette.

### Position of Adverbs after verbs:

Subject	Verb	Adverb
1. He	sings	sweetly.
2. They	sleep	early.
3. We	march	forward.
4. I	paid	twice.
5. She	is	in.
6. They	are	almost ready.

(A) Adverbs of Frequency such as '**always**', '**usually**', '**sometimes**', '**often**', '**rarely**', '**seldom**', '**never**' come before the verb. They appear either after the noun/pronoun or after the helping verb.

\* *Adverbs after noun/pronoun:*

1. Ali always prays.
2. She usually cooks.
3. Mona rarely goes out.
4. They never smoke.

\* *Adverbs after helping verbs:*

1. We must always terrorize the enemies of Islam.
2. They should never lie.
3. It can seldom catch a mouse.

(B) Adverbs of Manner, Place and Time appear at the end of the sentences; as:

- a. He writes **neatly**. (manner)
- b. The bus stops **there**. (place)
- c. I will return **soon**. (time)

(C) The adverb '**enough**' comes at different positions; as:

1. Are the rooms wide enough?

2. He is generous enough to please all the poor.

Now, let's read and parse اعراب all the words in the following sentence:

Then the old man stood up very easily.

**Parsing:** اعراب

Then	adverb of time, used with verb stood.
The	Demonstrative adjective pointing out the noun man.
Old	Adjective of quality describing man.
Man	Common noun, subject of stood.
Stood	Intransitive verb. It is a verb of action, but has no object.
Up	Adverb of place, used with the verb stood.
Very	Adverb of degree, used with the Adverb easily.
Easily	Adverb of manner, used with the verb stood.

**Exercise (95):**

Pick out the **Adverbs** in the following sentences, state their kinds and name the words they modify:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. They look happy.                        | 2. You take breakfast daily.                        |
| 3. The coward man moves backward.          | 4. He visited Juba twice.                           |
| 5. Ali is very generous.                   | 6. Why are you sad?                                 |
| 7. We therefore slept early.               | 8. The reason why he refused to speak is not known. |
| 9. Ali reads clearly.                      | 10. Mona is cooking now.                            |
| 11. She seldom comes here.                 | 12. The old man slept soundly.                      |
| 13. Come here.                             | 14. He is too stupid.                               |
| 15. It is hence unable to catch the mouse. | 16. That was the year when he left us.              |
| 17. He is surely busy.                     | 18. They have not taken dinner.                     |

**Exercise (96):**

Pick out **Adverbs** in the following sentences and the **verbs** with which each is used:

The sentence	Adverb	Verb
1. The crocodile creeps slowly.	.....	.....
2. The ill man slept soundly.	.....	.....
3. The old man spoke wisely.	.....	.....
4. The watch shows time accurately.	.....	.....
5. The student greets the teacher politely.	.....	.....

- 6. The soldier fights bravely. ....
- 7. Drive slowly in the street. ....
- 8. The moon shines brightly. ....
- 9. The mother treats kindly. ....
- 10. The lion roared loudly. ....
- 11. The bird sang sweetly. ....
- 12. Good boys wake up early. ....
- 13. The girl writes neatly. ....
- 14. The doctor is examining him  
carefully. ....
- 15. The rich man is helping us  
generously. ....

**Exercise (97):**

Pick out **Adverbs** in the following sentences and the **adjective** with which each is used:

<b>The sentence</b>	<b>Adverb</b>	<b>Adjective</b>
1. He is very strong.	.....	.....
2. She is quite intelligent.	.....	.....
3. The barrel is nearly full.	.....	.....
4. It is almost dead.	.....	.....
5. They are so helpful.	.....	.....
6. She is too religious.	.....	.....
7. They are quite well.	.....	.....
8. The tea is rather hot.	.....	.....
9. The shirt is too short.	.....	.....
10. The man is very kind.	.....	.....
11. The watch is fairly accurate.	.....	.....
12. He is exceedingly busy.	.....	.....
13. The weather is wonderfully fine.	.....	.....
14. The results are remarkably good.	.....	.....
15. The fruits are almost ripe.	.....	.....

**Exercise (98):**

Fill in the blanks with appropriate **adverbs** from the list given below:

yesterday, seldom, soundly, here, quite, not, therefore, When, late, often, hard, up, fully, exceedingly, certainly, never, surely, hence, Why, why, now, always, slowly, down, very, fairly, never, ever, where, as, clearly, loudly.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. She reads.....                                       | 2. I have .....abused him.              |
| 3. This is the hut.....I was born.                      | 4. She is cooking .....                 |
| 5. He is .....coming.                                   | 6. The army is .....prepared.           |
| 7. She .....goes out.                                   | 8. ....are they waiting?                |
| 9. The man is sleeping.....                             | 10. This is reason .....he is coming.   |
| 11. Sit.....  | 12. They do .....speak English.         |
| 13. Yesterday, he came .....                            | 14. She looked.....                     |
| 15. He writes .....                                     | 16. ....did he eat?                     |
| 17. I .....go there on Monday.                          | 18. The worker worked .....             |
| 19. The dog ran.....,....., it could not reach the fox. | 20. The stone fell.....                 |
| 21. We are ....fluent in English.                       | 22. They .....visit us.                 |
| 23. The child walks .....                               | 24. She .....failed in exams.           |
| 25. We are .....coming now.                             | 26. Have you.....visited Tehran?        |
| 27. I have .....done anything wrong.                    | 28. ....I wanted to sleep, I went home. |
| 29. The mountain is .....high.                          | 30. The letter is .....written.         |

**Exercise (99):**

Use the following **adverbs** in sentences:

Ambitiously, daily, beautifully, everywhere, very, therefore, not, certainly, seldom, Why, happily, when, where.

**Exercise (100):**

Make **Adverbs** from the following Adjectives:

Decent, near, full, quite, cruel, noisy, straightforward, remarkable, fair, accurate, kind, usual, bright, present, different, great, distinct, true, quiet, shameful.

**Exercise (101):**

Read and parse اعراب all the words in the following sentences:

1. Ali studies very hard.
2. Then the plane landed safely.
3. The weather is delightfully cool.
4. The sea was very stormy.
5. The cunning fox ran away very quickly.

## Formation of Adverbs

Regular	Irregular	Change of Spelling	No Change
Brave -bravely	Good – well	Easy –easily	fast

## Formation of some Adverbs

Adjective	Adverb	Adjective	Adverb
Agreeable	Agreeably	Generous	Generously
Ambitious	Ambitiously	Glorious	Gloriously
Angry	Angrily	Happy	Happily
Beautiful	Beautifully	Effective	Effectively
Brave	Bravely	Honest	Honestly
Careful	Carefully	Kind	Kindly
Certain	Certainly	Joyful	Joyfully
Collective	Collectively	Lucky	Luckily
Complete	Completely	Oral	Orally
Comfortable	Comfortably	Peaceful	Peacefully
Confident	Confidently	Permanent	Permanently
Courageous	Courageously	Quick	Quickly
Curious	Curiously	Sad	Sadly
Daily	Daily	Safe	Safely
Dangerous	Dangerously	Silent	Silently
Distant	Distantly	Secret	Secretly
Easy	Easily	Suspicious	Suspiciously
Favorable	Favorably	Victorious	Victoriously
Fortunate	Fortunately	Weak	Weakly
Free	Freely	Wise	Wisely

## The Preposition حرف الجر

**Read the following sentences:**

1. The doll is **on** the drawer.
2. The doll is **in** the drawer.
3. The doll is **under** the drawer.
4. The doll is **above** the drawer.
5. The doll is **beside** the drawer.
6. The doll is **below** the drawer.
7. The doll is **near** the drawer.

Each of the above sentences contains a word in bold type that shows the relation between the doll and the drawer. Such words are called **Preposition**.

**Learn:**

A **Preposition** is a word placed before a noun or a pronoun to indicate its relation to somebody or something else in the sentence.

**Read the following sentences:**

1. She went **with** me.
2. She spoke **about** you.
3. I listened **to** her.
4. I did not believe **in** her.
5. She got a message **from** him.

In the above sentences the prepositions are used with pronouns. The noun or pronoun that follows the preposition is governed by the preposition because if we say 'She went **with**', the sentences will be incomplete. She must have gone with somebody or with something. The preposition 'with' must have an object or the sentences will remain incomplete. Therefore, the pronoun '**me**' is called its **Object**.

**Learn:**

A Noun or Pronoun that follows a preposition is governed by the preposition, therefore, the noun or pronoun is called the **Object** of the preposition.

## Uses of the Prepositions: at, in, on

**Read the following sentences:**

1. Ali lives **at** Kankalab village.
2. Salih lives **in** Dongola.

3. I was born **on** June 11, 1980.

The preposition '**at**' is used before the names of villages or an address as exemplified in sentence 1.

The Preposition '**in**' is used before the names of towns and cities as exemplified in sentence 2.

The Preposition '**on**' is used before the names of the days and dates as exemplified in sentence 3.

**Study the following prepositions:**

<b>In</b>	The man is in the room. There are two windows in this room. There are five beds in that room. Believe in Allah.
<b>Into</b>	He went into the kitchen. The police rushed into the room. Bad friends changed him into a criminal.
<b>On</b>	The cup is on the table. We came on Sunday. The mad man sits on the wall.
<b>At</b>	She was at her clinic. The bus will start at 6 o'clock. At these comments he went away. He is at home.
<b>To</b>	He slept from 10 pm to 5 am. The audience ran to the exits. She gave the money to them.
<b>Between</b>	Mona sits between Nada and Huda. Divide the cake between the two boys.
<b>Among</b>	I stood among the crowd of people. Distribute this money among the people in need.
<b>Over</b>	The plane flew over our heads. Put this blanket over that ill man.
<b>Above</b>	Sudan is above all.
<b>With</b>	We eat with our right hands. He is ill with Malaria.
<b>Without</b>	I can't sleep without taking my supper.

<b>For</b>	We use gas for cooking. They have not visited us for three months. I devote my life for Islam. I'm sorry for that.
<b>From</b>	I walk from home to school. They study from 5 pm to 10 pm. I get knowledge from the Quran. They will start the project from next month.
<b>Of</b>	This is a sack of sugar. He comes of a religious family.
<b>By</b>	We traveled by bus. The vegetables are sold by the grocer. She will be there by 3 o'clock. The child sits by his mother.
<b>Before</b>	I appeared before the magistrate. The bus will start before midnight.
<b>Beside</b>	The child sat beside his father.
<b>Besides</b>	Besides fever, he has headache. He has two cars besides that.
<b>Along</b>	The army marched along the bank of the Nile.
<b>Across</b>	The bridge is across the river. He put the wood across his shoulder.
<b>Off</b>	The knight fell off the horse.
<b>Since</b>	I have been reading the Quran since the morning.
<b>Through</b>	The thief peeped through the window.
<b>Up</b>	The snake is up the tree. They are sailing up the river Nile.
<b>Down</b>	He is boating down the river Nile. Sit down.
<b>About</b>	The police knew everything about the criminal. It is about five o'clock.
<b>Towards</b>	The train is coming towards the city.
<b>Upon</b>	The child is upon the bed.

## Preposition + Gerund

Read the following sentences:

1. The thief is **accused of stealing**.
2. The boy is **interested in drawing**.
3. The patient has a **chance of surviving**.

In sentence 1, the word 'accused' is a verb. It is followed by a preposition '**of**'. The preposition 'of' is followed by a verb that turned into a gerund 'stealing'.

In sentence 2, the word 'interested' is an adjective. It is followed by a preposition '**in**'. The preposition 'in' is followed by a verb that turned into a gerund 'drawing'.

In sentence 3, the word 'chance' is a noun. It is followed by a preposition '**of**'. The preposition 'of' is followed by a verb that turned into a gerund 'surviving'.

**Learn:**

Any verb that follows a preposition must be in the form of a gerund.

A preposition may come after a verb, a noun or an adjective.

Some examples of **Verb + Preposition** that creates a Gerund:

Admit to	Succeed in	Talk about	Suffer from
Look forward to	Specialized in	Worry about	Prevent from
Be/get used to	Believe in	Think about	Suspect of
Accuse of	Consist of	Think of	Depend on
Warn against	Congratulate on	Insist on	Rely on

Some examples of **Adjective+ Preposition** that creates a Gerund:

Capable of	Worried about	Bored with	Responsible for
Frightened of	Serious about	Good at	Keen on
Interested in	Tired of	Angry at	Afraid of

Some examples of **Noun + Preposition** that creates a Gerund:

Danger of	Advantage of	Disadvantage of	Expert at
Idea of	Way of	Chance of	Opportunity of
Specialist in	Safety of		

The following sentences will give further exemplification:

1. The doctor is absent **from** the hospital.
2. He acted **upon** my directives.
3. They agree **with** her.

4. She agrees **to** my proposal.
5. He is not afraid **of** death.
6. You are angry **with** him.
7. I aimed **at** the deer.
8. She applied **for** admission.
9. They argued **with** him.
10. They arrived **at** the airport.
11. Her family is ashamed **of** her bad behavior.
12. The money belongs **to** her.
13. They are busy **with** their studies.
14. He is born **of** a royal family.
15. A daughter is born **to** him.
16. Take care **of** the child.
17. They do not care **for** him.
18. The detective caught hold **of** the criminal.
19. He complains of pain **in** his stomach.
20. They congratulate me **on** my birthday.
21. The house consists **of** three rooms.
22. The guards have full control **over** the prisoners.
23. The cat is crying **for** meat.
24. Don't be cruel **to** animals.
25. The businessman deals **in** cement.
26. Man has desire **for** food.
27. This pen is different **from** that.
28. They are displeased **with** her.
29. He dived **into** the sea.
30. You depend **on** his help.
31. He failed **in** his first attempt.
32. The Indian woman is faithful **to** her husband.
33. He is familiar **to** such noises.
34. Dongola is famous **for** dates.
35. Lions feed **on** meat.
36. He is fond **of** swimming.
37. She is fond **of** apples.
38. The fox is frightened **of** the dog.
39. The barrel is full **of** water.
40. I am glad **at** their arrival.
41. He is glad **to** see you.
42. Go ahead **with** the plan.
43. I go **on** foot.
44. I am good **at** swimming.
45. She got **over** the difficulties.
46. She is grateful **to** the teacher **for** his help.

47. She is interested **in** cooking.
48. He invited me **to** the party.
49. She inquired **after** my health.
50. The first wife is jealous **of** the second wife.
51. The thief threw money **into** the well.
52. They laughed **at** the stupid boy.
53. He will leave **for** home.
54. Every good man looks **after** his parents.
55. They looked **at** me.
56. The police looked **for** him.
57. He made friends **with** the trader.
58. The factory is **on** fire.
59. We pray **to** Allah five times a day.
60. She is proud **of** herself.
61. The husband is pleased **with** his wife.
62. The coward man is scared **of** his enemy.
63. He sent **for** the doctor.
64. He served the guests **with** juice.
65. The child sits **by** his mother.
66. We are sorry **for** the inconvenience we created.
67. In the court, the criminal stared **at** the witness.
68. I was startled **at** his decision.
69. They are suffering **from** diabetes.
70. The army is sure **of** victory.
71. The gun is **to** shoot **with**.
72. Ali has taste **for** art.
73. Do have trust **in** me.
74. **After** taking the tablets, I went to school.
75. **Before** going to school, I took the tablets.

**Read the following sentences:**

1. Did you see a child come **in**?
2. The child came **in** the room.

In sentence 1 the word '**in**' adds something to the meaning of the verb 'come'.

In sentences 2 the word '**in**' shows the relation between the 'coming of the boy' and 'the room'. Therefore, the word 'in' is a preposition governing the noun 'room'.

**Learn:**

Some words are **Prepositions** when they are used with a noun or pronoun. When they stand alone, they turn into **adverbs** and modify a word in the sentence.

**Read the following sentences:**

1. He played effectively. (adverb)
2. He played **in an effective manner**.

In sentences 2, the group of words 'in an effective manner' plays the role of an adverb because it tells how he played. Such a group of words is called **an Adverb Phrase**.

**Learn:**

An **Adverb Phrase** is a group of words which plays the role of an adverb.

**Read the following sentences:**

1. She is a **healthy** woman. (Adjective)
2. She is a woman **of health**.

In sentence 2, the group of words '**of wealth**' plays the role of an adjective because it tells what type of woman she is. It stands close beside the noun 'woman' it qualifies. Such a group of words is called **an Adjective Phrase**.

**Learn:**

An **Adjective Phrase** is a group of words which plays the role of an adjective. It stands close beside the noun it qualifies.

**Exercise (102):**

Pick out the **Prepositions** in the following sentences:

1. She lives in Khartoum.	2. They live at Jabal Awlia.
3. I went with him.	4. The message is from them.
5. We believe in the Quran.	6. There is a fence round the place.
7. Sami slept in the room.	8. You went to the bathroom.
9. They fought for freedom.	10. The food is on the table.
11. The Nile runs through Khartoum.	12. They sat by fire.
13. A dog stood under the tree.	14. A bird flew over our heads.
15. He is a man of courage.	16. I spoke to him.
17. She went into the room.	18. The dog ran after the fox.
19. He cut onions with a knife.	20. By the Quran he swore.
21. I sit among them.	22. She goes to the mosque on Friday.
23. He brings water for the guests.	24. She brings water from the river.
25. He stood beside the wall.	26. They went across the road.
27. I traveled without money.	28. You listened to the teacher.
29. Look at them.	30. He is not at home.
31. She cried because of illness.	32. Because of us, he left them.

**Exercise (103):**Fill in with suitable **Prepositions**:

1. The thief buried the money .....the tree.
2. The students gathered .....the teacher.
3. She is .....the room.
4. He poured tea .....the cup.
5. She traveled .....Sunday.
6. He is busy.....his office.
7. The child ran .....his mother.
8. I distributed alms .....the poor villagers.
9. They put a blanket .....him.
10. She writes ..... a pencil.
11. They use soap .....cleaning the shirts.
12. I can go across the forest .....a gun.
13. They did many things .....him.
14. We traveled .....Dongola to Elgolid.
15. This is a barrel .....water.
16. The man died .....AIDS.
17. He traveled .....train.
18. The food is cooked .....her.
19. The police brought the thief .....the judge.
20. He walked .....the road.
21. The nomad puts a stick .....his shoulder.
22. Man is tenacious in the love.....wealth.
23. Say: I seek refuge in the Lord .....the dawn,
24. I fell .....the donkey.
25. He looked .....the window.
26. I don't know anything ..... him.
27. He went to bed..... doing ablution.
- 28.....taking a nap, he took a shower.

**Exercise (104):**Choose the most suitable **Preposition** from those between brackets:

1. The preacher is talking ....Islamic values. (in/about/at)
2. The criminal is accused .....killing the (in/at/of)  
innocent.
3. She succeeded .....achieving the (at/of/in)  
highest mark.
4. They blamed their son.....failing in exam. (of/on/for)
5. Children are fond.....reading the Quran. (in/at/of)
6. Girls are interested .....dressing scarf. (at/on/in)
7. The coward soldier is afraid .....fighting (in/about/of)

- the enemy.
8. Ali is good .....English. (of/in/at)
  9. The child is frightened .....going into the darkness. (in/on/of)
  10. The teacher is pleased.....the results of the class. (about/with/in)
  11. I believe .....the divine message of Islam. (on/at/in)
  12. The thinker is looking.....the sky. (in/at/on)
  13. The applicant is looking forward .....meeting you. (about/in/to)
  14. The student is looking the meaning .....in the dictionary. (of/at/up)
  15. The wrong-doer apologized.....what he had done. (of/on/for)
  16. The man is worried.....the destiny of his bad son. (on/with/about)
  17. He is confident.....getting good results. (in/with/of)
  18. Is he prepared .....the journey? (to/with/for)
  19. He filled the pot .....oil. (to/at/with)
  20. She is satisfied .....her results. (in/with/to)
  21. The patient has no desire.....taking medicine. (with/about/for)
  22. Their colour is different.....your colour. (with /for/from)
  23. The president made his way.....the crowd. (for/on/through)
  24. The beggar asked ...another dish of food. (to/with/for)
  25. He is standing.....the post office. (for/to/near)
  26. She stopped.....the post office. (for/to/with/at)
  27. I am surprised .....her cleverness. (with/in/at/off)
  28. He got.....the car. (for/inside/at)
  29. She ran.....her mother. (on/in/towards)
  30. They have no money.....delicious food. (in/to/for/out)
  31. He has no money, therefore, he has to do.....good food. (for/without/to)
  32. She traveled to Iran and settled down.....a new life. (in/for/without)
  33. The waiter served them.....juice. (to/at/with/for)
  34. All people,.....Sami, drank juice. (to/for/except)
  35. He ate food when he was .....home. (in/at/with/for)
  36. Rami was passing.....the old man. (on/at/by/for)
  37. ....eating any food, he left the house. (at/in/without)
  38. She shouted.....joy. (for/with/from)

39. He tied the rope.....the calf's neck. (with/for/round)  
40. It is a gift.....him. (to/for/with/in)  
41. The rumors.....military coup are not true. (in/for/of/from)  
42. They come from the land.....gold. (in/of/on/after)  
43. In winter, we sit.....the sun and talk. (on/in/for/with)  
44. We go to Iran .....summer. (on/at/during)  
45. In addition .....a taxi, he has a lorry. (on/in/to/with)

**Exercise (105):**

Use the following Prepositions in sentences:

under, below, above, over, for, around, on, at, by, with,  
without, of, off, between, among, before, after, in, into, inside,  
outside, beside.

## The Conjunction حرف العطف

### Read the following sentences:

1. Ali **and** Hasan are reading the Quran.
2. Will you come **or** I must invite you?
3. He studied well, **but** could not get good marks.
4. She likes him **because** he is religious.

The words in bold type are used for joining sentences or words together. They are called **Conjunctions**.

### Learn:

A **Conjunction** is a word that joins words or sentences together.

Now, let's read and parse اعراب Conjunctions in these sentences:

1. Sami and Rami met her.
2. I went out although it was raining.

### Parsing: اعراب

And Conjunction, joining the words Sami and Rami.

Although Conjunction, joining the sentence 'I went out' to 'it was raining'.

### Read the following sentences:

- \* He fell down. I took him to the hospital.
- \* I invited him. He did not come.

The above are two independent sentences. They are of equal rank. They do not depend on each other and neither is servant of the other. When we join them with the words 'and', 'but', the Conjunctions 'and' and 'but' are called **Coordinating Conjunction**. The joined sentences would be as follows:

*He fell down **and** I took him to the hospital.*

*I invited him, **but** he did not come.*

### Learn:

**Coordinating Conjunction** is the conjunction that joins sentences or words of equal rank.

### Now read the following sentences:

I will give you a great prize. You win.

If we depend on the Conjunctions '**and**' or '**but**' to join the above sentences, we will not be able to create sense out of what we write. However, if we use the word '**if**', we can make a complete sense. The joined sentence would be as follows:

*I will give you a great prize **if** you win.*

The word '**if**' joins two sentences which are not of equal rank. One of such sentences is dependent on the other, therefore, the Conjunction that joins them is called a **Subordinating**

**Conjunction.** It precedes the dependent sentence.

**Learn:**

**Subordinating Conjunction** is the conjunction that joins sentences of unequal rank. The subordinating Conjunction is always the first word in the dependent sentence.

Now, let's read and parse اعراب the Conjunctions in the following sentences:

1. Five and six make eleven.
2. He is leading a life of a sportsman though he is ill.

**Parsing:** اعراب

- and                      Coordinating Conjunction, joining the word 'five' to the word 'six'.
- though                  Subordinating Conjunction, joining the sentence 'He is leading a life of a sportsman' to the sentence 'he is ill'.

**Read the following sentences:**

1. I **both** admire **and** respect her.
2. **Either** sit down **or** go away.
3. **Neither** Mona **nor** Nuha cooked food.
4. They are **neither** clean **nor** neat.
5. She is **not only** intelligent, **but also** religious.
6. I want to know **whether** she is young **or** old.
7. **As** you sow, **so** shall you reap.
8. **No sooner** did the door open **than** the mosquitoes entered into the room.
9. The weather was **so** cold **that** I could not go to school.
10. **Hardly** had I reached the airport **when** the plane took off.
11. I respect **such** people **as** are religious.

In each of the above sentences there are pairs of conjunctions. They are called **Correlative Conjunctions**.

**Learn:**

Conjunctions which are used in pairs are called **Correlative Conjunctions**.

**Remember:**

In parsing pairs of Conjunctions, we call the first conjunction an **Introductory Conjunction** and the second **Correlative Conjunction**.

Now, let's read and parse اعراب the pairs of Conjunctions in the following sentence:

He both loves and respects his sister.

**Parsing:** اعراب

- both Introductory Conjunction, joining the words he to 'loves' and 'respects' to the sentence 'his sister'.  
and Correlative Conjunction, correlative to the Conjunction 'both'.

**Additional examples of Conjunctions:**

1. Give me some food to eat, **else** I will die of hunger.
2. I will leave **before** you come.
3. She will not leave **unless** he comes.
4. She will wait **until** he returns.
5. He is very generous **though** he is poor.
6. I will fight **till** I defeat them.
7. Ali is taller **than** Salih.
8. He came back **for** he lost his money.
9. The prisoner asked **whether** he might be released.
10. **Since** you are doing it, I must take a rest.
11. **As** it was cold, I did not go for a walk.
12. I will get it with me **when** I visit you.
13. He will pass **if** he works hard.
14. I work hard **so that** I can earn some money.
15. He studied hard, **yet** he failed.
16. They know **that** he has no money.
17. **Because** it was raining heavily, the match was postponed.
18. Sameer did not work hard, **so** he failed in exams.
19. They can dress **however** they like.
20. He is very rich, **nevertheless**, he is very modest.
21. Some of the students came, **whereas** others did not.

**Exercise (106):**

Pick out the **Conjunctions** in the following sentences:

1. He was jailed because he killed a deer.
2. Ali and Hasan read the Quran.
3. Give me my salary or I will file a case against you.
4. He is rich, but miser.
5. Visit us if you have time.
6. She can't travel because she is ill.
7. He has money, but he has no brain to guide him.
8. They will wait until he arrives.
9. I took tablets, yet I suffer from headache.
10. We came here so that we could meet you.
11. Go from here otherwise I will call the police.
12. Unless you start now, you will not finish quickly.

13. As he lost his property, he became mad.
14. Since you are coming, I will wait for you.
15. He did not study hard, therefore, he failed.
16. They have money, so they can buy a house.
17. Although she is ill, yet she determined to cook for us.
18. He woke up early though he slept very late.
19. He is defeated, still he wants to fight.
20. She both likes and respects them.
21. Either he or she must stay at home.
22. Neither I nor he attended the meeting.
23. They were not only jailed, but also fined.
24. I know that she is very religious.
25. We reached before he comes.
26. The child will be cheerful when his father comes.
27. While he was planting a tree, I got water from the well.
28. The tea was so hot that I could not drink it.
29. No sooner did the fox see the dog than it ran away.
30. The stone is so heavy that I can't move it.
31. Hardly had I reached the bus stand when the bus left.
32. The horse is not only fast, but also strong.
33. We like such men as are brave.
34. As you do, so shall you gain.
35. Not only is he a writer, but also a poet.
36. I thought that it is hot, whereas it was very cold.

**Exercise (107):**

Fill in the blanks with suitable **Conjunctions**:

1. Tony is strong,.....coward.
2. He must take medicine.....his health will deteriorate.
3. She is a beautiful .....respectable girl.
4. Mona.....Huda are sisters.
5. They realized .....they were wrong.
6. The ship had sunk .....the rescue team arrived.
7. I don't know.....he will go there .....come here.
8. We like him.....he is generous.
- 9.....she cooks, we will eat.
10. Let me sit, ..... I will fall down.
- 11.....you are intending to come, I will be waiting for you.
12. He did not attend the meeting.....I had invited him.
13. You will not earn money.....you work very hard.
14. I will buy a car for you .....you grow up.
15. The climate is .....hot, .....humid.

- 16.....he.....she got any prize.
- 17.....I .....you must help them.
18. I switched off the electricity.....the iron is hot.
19. He .....eats.....sleeps at the same place.
20. He finished his work, ....., he can enjoy himself.
21. You are.....very tall.....very fat.
22. You thought that he is here,.....he was there.

**Exercise (108):**

Join together the following pairs of sentences, using the word shown in brackets:

1. He is weak. He is strong. (but)
2. Go out. I will call the police. (otherwise)
3. She is religious. She is intelligent. (and)
4. Take your medicine. You will not recover. (unless)
5. He is very rich. He is unhappy. (although/though)
6. You are ill. You must postpone your trip. (as/since/so/ because)
7. You must eat. You will die. (or)
8. He came late. He could not attend the meeting. (therefore)
9. She is ninety years old. She can't walk steadily. (still)
10. I like him. I respect him. (both ...and)
11. Let me go. I will run away. (else)
12. I observe. Your health is improving. (that)
13. Leave the house. I arrive there. (before)
14. You can leave. He comes. (after)
15. It will continue crying. I give it food. (until)
16. She inquired. The child might die. (whether)
17. We must go. He invited us to his marriage. (for)
18. Eat it. Leave it. (either...or)
19. It is not good. It is not useful. (...neither...nor)
20. He is religious. He is clever as well. (..not only...but also)
21. Clean the fish. I will heat the oil. (meanwhile)
22. He fell in a well. He did not die. (nevertheless)
23. She exerted all efforts. She failed to pass. (however)
24. He offered all kinds of food. He was generous. (indeed)
25. He was not ready. She was not ready. (Neither.....nor)
26. Some boys waited. Other boys flew away. (whereas)

**Exercise (109):**

Use the following words as **Conjunctions** in sentences:

1. than .....

2. whether.....or	.....
3. still	.....
4. or	.....
5. otherwise	.....
6. but	.....
7. because	.....
9. else	.....
10. if	.....
11. when	.....
12. as	.....
13. so	.....
14. after	.....
15. before	.....
16. that	.....
17. No sooner ..... than	.....
18. unless	.....
19. though	.....
20. till	.....
21. whereas	.....

**Exercise (110):**

Join each pair of sentences by using ‘**and**’, ‘**but**’, ‘**or**’, ‘**because**’:

- 1.Sami is a boy. Mona is a girl.
- 2.He worked hard. He failed.
- 3.Do your duty. You will lose your job.
- 4.They like apples. They like bananas.
- 5.I underwent the course of English. Still I can’t speak.
- 6.I can’t walk. My leg is injured.
- 7.He is eating meat. He is eating fish.
- 8.I waited for him. He did not come.
- 9.He slept. He was tired.
- 10.Sit down. Go from here.

**Exercise (111):**

Join each pair of sentences by using ‘**otherwise**’, ‘**though**’, ‘**yet**’, ‘**so**’:

1. He has to hire a taxi. He will not reach the lecture.
2. I am beating him. He is laughing.
3. She has a gas stove. She can roast meat.
4. He slept very early. He could not wake up early.
5. Send me an invitation card. I will not come.
6. They have a lot of money. They can buy a new car.
7. You are playing well. You are not winning a prize.

- 8. He is two years old. He can't walk.
- 9. Drink water. You will die of thirst.
- 10. I bought a car. I can travel to Juba.

**Exercise (112):**

Join each pair of sentences by using 'therefore', 'still', 'as', 'else' 'or', 'because':

- 1. She did not come. She is ill.
- 2. He is very tall. He can touch the roof.
- 3. Admit your mistake. I will call the police.
- 4. I have undergone eye surgery. I can't see.
- 5. Catch my hand. I will fall.
- 6. He was not at home. I met his father.
- 7. He wants to attend the meeting. He is coming today.
- 8. Put medicine on the injury. It will not recover.
- 9. I can't go out. It is raining.
- 10. She is twenty-five years old. She is not married.

**Exercise (113):**

Join each pair of sentences by using '...not only....but also' 'Not only.....but also':

Example: She washes dishes. She cooks food as well.

Answer : She does **not only** wash dishes, **but also** cooks food.

**Not only** does she wash dishes, **but also** cooks food.

Example: I became a doctor. I wrote books.

Answer : I did **not only** become a doctor, **but also** wrote books.

**Not only** did I become a doctor, **but also** wrote books.

Example: Salih is a driver. He is a mechanic, too.

Answer : Salih is **not only** a driver, **but also** a mechanic.

**Not only** is Salih a driver, **but also** a mechanic.

- 1.Sudan is a member of the OAU. It is a member of the AL as well.  
Sudan is not only.....  
Not only is Sudan.....
- 2. My father is a teacher. He is a poet, too.  
My father.....  
Not only is my father.....
- 3.Smoking causes lung cancer. It causes heart diseases as well.  
Smoking.....  
Not only does smoking.....
- 4.Nada is beautiful. She is religious as well.  
Nada .....  
Not only.....

5. Hasan is a religious man. He is an intellectual person, too.  
 Hasan.....  
 Not only.....
6. Sudan exported oil. It exported cotton as well.  
 Sudan.....  
 Not only.....
7. We defeated the invaders. We killed Gordon, too.  
 We.....  
 Not only.....
8. Ali is brave. Ali is patriot, too.  
 Ali .....  
 Not only.....
9. A translator must be good at English. He must be good at Arabic as well.  
 A translator.....  
 .....
10. My parents are kind. They are generous, too.  
 .....  
 .....
11. Adultery causes AIDS. It causes venereal diseases, too.  
 Adultery.....  
 Not only.....

**Learn:**

(but/yet/though/although/even though/however/nevertheless/ in spite of/despite/In spite of the fact that/Despite the fact that) are <b>Conjunctions</b> to combine two opposing or contrasting statements. (however/nevertheless) means ‘in spite of this/that.	
+ (possessive pron.)+being + adj. In spite of + noun	+ (possessive pron.)+being+adj. Despite + noun
+ (possessive pron.) + noun	+ (possessive pron.)+noun
In spite of its being sharp, it doesn't cut/ Despite its being sharp, it doesn't cut. In spite of cleaning the room, it is dirty/ Despite cleaning the room, it is dirty. In spite of its sharpness, it doesn't cut/ Despite its sharpness, it doesn't cut.	

**Exercise (114):**

Join each pair of sentences by using:

**'but/yet/though/although/even though/however/nevertheless/  
in spite of/despite/In spite of the fact that/Despite the fact that':**

Ex.: The exam was difficult. He passed it.

Ans.: The exam was difficult<sub>1</sub> but he passed it.

The exam was difficult<sub>1</sub> yet he passed it.

The exam was difficult<sub>1</sub> nevertheless<sub>2</sub> he passed it.

The exam was difficult<sub>1</sub> however<sub>2</sub> he passed it.

However difficult the exam was, he passed it.  
 Although the exam was difficult, he passed it.  
 He passed the exam although it was difficult.  
 Though the exam was difficult, he passed it.  
 He passed the exam though it was difficult.  
 Even though the exam was difficult, he passed it.  
 He passed the exam even though it was difficult.  
 In spite of its difficulty, he passed the exam.  
 He passed the exam in spite of its difficulty.  
 In spite of being difficult, he passed the exam.  
 He passed the exam in spite of being difficult.  
 In spite of the difficulty of exam, he passed it.  
 Despite its difficulty, he passed the exam.  
 He passed the exam despite its difficulty.  
 Despite being difficult, he passed the exam.  
 He passed the exam despite being difficult.  
 Despite the difficulty of the exam, he passed it.  
 In spite of the fact that the exam was difficult, he passed it.  
 He passed the exam in spite of the fact that it was difficult.  
 Despite the fact that the exam was difficult, he passed it.  
 He passed the exam despite the fact that it was difficult.

1. The river was deep. He crossed it.
2. The imperialists were strong. We defeated them.
3. The food was good. I did not eat it.
4. The fruits were ripe. She refused to eat them.
5. The shirt is suitable. He does not wear it.
6. The question was easy. We could not answer it.
7. The shoes were expensive. You bought them.
8. The sun was hot. They went for a walk.
9. The bus was slow. She arrived on time.
10. Tony was self-confident. He was defeated.
11. The deer ran fast. The lion reached it.
12. They departed early. They reached late.

**Exercise (115):**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c:

1. ....he is very old, he is very strong.  
 (a) Despite (b) Although (c) Nevertheless
2. ....his strength, the enemy defeated him.  
 (a) In spite of the fact that (b) Though (c) In spite of
3. Ali was the youngest of the three, .....he was the cleverest.

- (a) despite (b) but (c) although
4. Sabir wanted to go out,....., Nadir wanted to stay at home.  
(a) but (b) in spite of (c) however
5. They are poor.....they share everything with their neighbors.  
(a) despite (b) even though (c) nevertheless
6. He was having high fever,....., he went to the college.  
(a) however (b) even though (c) but
7. ....being angry, he listened to us patiently.  
(a) Although (b) In spite of (c) However
8. The policeman likes his job.....it is sometimes risky.  
(a) nevertheless (b) although (c) despite
9. ....it is expensive, people buy it.  
(a) Despite (b) Although (c) Yet
10. I will invite him, ....., he may not accept my invitation.  
(a) however (b) in spite of (c) despite the fact that
11. English is read from left to right; Arabic, ....., is read from right to left.  
(a) though (b) but (c) however
12. ....their richness, they never help the poor.  
(a) However (b) Despite (c) Though
13. ....easy the exam was, he could not answer any question.  
(a) In spite of (b) However (c) Although
14. The team played well,.....they could not win the match.  
(a) despite (b) yet (c) in spite of
15. ....rich a man is, he always likes to get more wealth.  
(a) Despite (b) Although (c) However
- 16.....her intelligence, she could not answer the quiz.  
(a) However (b) Although (c) In spite of
17. ....danger, people go near it.  
(a) Though (b) Despite (c) Nevertheless
18. Jabir was tired, .....,he took part in the race.  
(a) although (b) but (c) nevertheless
19. Fahd was sick, ....., he went to the farm.  
(a) although (b) but (c) nevertheless
20. ....he was sick, Tariq took part in the race.  
(a) But (b) Although (c) In spite of
21. ....his sickness, Sameer took part in the race.  
(a) However (b) In spite of (c) Although
22. ....being sick, Nadir took part in the race.  
(a) However (b) In spite of (c) Although
23. ....the fact that he was sick, Ashraf took part in the race.

- (a) Although (b) However (c) In spite of
24. ....he was sick, Yasir took part in the race.  
 (a) However (b) In spite (c) Despite the fact that
25. The plane took off on time.....the wind.  
 (a) although (b) despite (c) in spite
26. ....it was raining heavily, the plane landed safely.  
 (a) In spite of (b) However (c) Although
27. ....the fact that he is ill, Aadil traveled by lorry.  
 (a) Despite (b) However (c) Although
28. ....he was an experienced sailor, he sailed carelessly.  
 (a) Despite (b) Although (c) However
29. ....poverty, she is very pious and honest.  
 (a) In spite of (b) Although (c) Though
30. He felt exhausted, ....., he went to the school.  
 (a) although (b) however (c) in spite of
31. They were very sleepy, ....., they went to the party.  
 (a) although (b) nevertheless (c) in spite of

**Exercise (116):**

*Rewrite the sentences, using the **Conjunctions** in brackets:*

1. The rain was heavy, but he went out. (although)
2. Salim was busy, however, he visited us. (although)
3. Although Saif is clever, he could not answer. (in spite of)
4. She attended the class although she was sick. (despite)
5. Rami is poor, yet he helps other people. (in spite of)
6. Although he works hard, he has no money. (despite)
7. Najee took a taxi, however, he arrived late. (although/in spite of)
8. Although he is ill, he never goes to doctors. (in spite of)
9. It was windy, yet the sea was not rough. (despite/ although)
10. He is qualified, but he did not get any job. (in spite of/although)

**Exercise (117):**

Join each pair of sentences by using the **Correlative Conjunction** shown in brackets:

1. He has not come. She has not come. (Neither.....nor)
2. Go there. Stay here. (Either.....or)
3. He is poor. He is generous. (Although.....yet)
4. I visit him. I help him. (Both.....and)
5. He cried. His parents came out. (No sooner.....than)
6. He is a teacher. He is a poet. (Not only .....but also)
7. It is very fast. I can't reach it. (so .....that)
8. I had reached the bus station. The bus left. (Hardly...when)

9. He likes the students. They are clever. (such.....as)  
10. You work. You shall get results. (As.....so)

**Exercise (118):**

Parse اعراب the **Conjunctions** in the following sentences:

1. I visited him, but he did not visit me.
2. I did not go because I forgot.
3. You will pass if you work hard.
4. Three and seven make ten.

## The Interjections اصوات دلالات انفعالات

**Read the following sentences:**

1. **Bravo**, Hamza! Well done.
2. **Hurrah!** We won the contest.
3. **Oh!** What a nice goal.
4. **Hallo**, Ali! How are you?
5. **Fie!** A good swimmer and afraid of the sea.
6. **Alas!** We lost the last and only chance.
7. **Ah!** He is no more.
8. **Hush!** Listen to what he says.

In the above sentences the words ‘**Bravo**’, ‘**Hurrah!**’, ‘**Oh!**’, ‘**Hallo!**’, ‘**Fie!**’, ‘**Alas!**’, ‘**Ah!**’, ‘**Hush!**’ are used to express some sudden feeling of mind. Such words are called **Interjections**. The same word may express different feelings; as:

- \* Oh! What a nasty smelling! (expression of disgust).
- \* Oh! What a nice story! (expression of admiration).
- \* Oh! The old man will fall down! (express of alarm, fear).

The word “Hurrah!” is used to express pleasure whereas the word “Alas!” is used to express sorrow.

**Learn:**

An **Interjection** is a word that expresses some sudden feeling of the mind.

**Exercise (119):**

Pick out **Interjections** in the following sentences:

1. Hurrah! We got the first prize.
2. Ah! That is the complaint every troubled person makes.
3. Hallo, Salih! How are you?
4. Alas! We lost the match.
5. Oh! What a delicious food.
6. Bravo, Ali! Well struck.
7. Fie! A grown-up man and afraid of darkness.
8. Oh! Our friend is coming.
9. Alas! He got nothing out of his efforts.
10. Hush! My father is sleeping.

**Exercise (120):**

Use the following **Interjections** in sentences:

Hurrah! , Ah! , Hallo! , Alas! , Oh! , Bravo! , Fie! , Oh! , Alas! ,  
Hush!

## Articles: A, An, The

The words 'A', 'An', 'The' are Articles. Articles are of two types:

1. Indefinite Articles (A, An). أدوات التنكير
2. Definite Article (The). أداة التعريف

### Indefinite Articles: (A, An) أدوات التنكير

**Read the following sentences:**

1. I have seen **a** man and **an** elephant.
2. He ate **a** banana and **an** orange.
3. She found **a** pen and **an** inkpot.
4. He talked to **a** boy for **an** hour.
5. We got **an** apple in **a** box.
6. They borrowed **an** umbrella from **an** honest man.

The above sentences contain **Indefinite Articles** an, a.

### Uses of An, A: استعمالات أدوات التنكير

1. 'A' is used before any person or thing that begins with a consonant. The consonants of English are (b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, w, x, y, z); as: '**a** man', '**a** girl', '**a** pen', '**a** boy', '**a** box'.

**Exceptions:** We say: **a** university, **a** one-leg woman, **a** European, **a** useful machine. Because these words begin with a **consonant sound**.

2. 'An' is used before:

- \* a word beginning with a vowel (a, e, i, o, u ); as: **an** elephant, **an** ox, **an** island, **an** apple, **an** umbrella,
- \* the silent 'h' (mute 'h') which has a **vowel sound**; '**an** hour', '**an** honest', '**an** heir',
- \* words beginning with 'h' and not accented on the first syllable; as: **an** hotel, **an** historical site.

### Definite Article (The) أداة التعريف

**Read the following sentences:**

1. I saw **the** boy who got the prize. (Before a particular person)

2. This is **the** car which I bought yesterday. (Before a particular object)
3. **The** lion is a dangerous animal. (Before a singular noun representing a whole class)
4. **The** Nile is the longest river. (Before the name of rivers, oceans, mountain ranges, sacred books, magazines, newspapers, etc.)
5. Ali is **the** richest man in the city. (Before adjectives in the superlative degree)
6. **The** Coward (coward people) are laughed at. (Before adjectives used as nouns)
7. **The** sun shines. (Before nouns which are the names of things of which there is only one)

### استعمالات أداة التعريف 'The'

#### The Definite Article 'The' is used:

1. Before a particular person or object; as:
  - \* I saw **the** boy who got **the** prize.
  - \* This is **the** car which I bought yesterday.
2. Before a singular noun representing a whole class; as:
  - \* **The** lion is a dangerous animal.
3. Before the name of rivers, oceans, mountain ranges, sacred books, magazines, newspapers; as:
  - \* **The** Nile is flooding.
4. Before adjectives in the superlative degree; as:
  - \* Ali is **the** richest man in the city.
5. Before adjectives used as nouns; as:
  - \* **The** Coward (coward people) are laughed at.
6. Before nouns which are the names of things of which there is only one; as:
  - \* **The** sun shines.

### حذف أداة التعريف وأدوات التنكير

#### The Article is omitted:

1. Before proper nouns; as:
  - \* **Khartoum** is the capital of **Sudan**.
2. Before material nouns; as:
  - \* **Gold** is an expensive metal.
3. Before abstract nouns; as:
  - \* **Courage** is a desirable **behavior**.
4. Before names of languages; as:

- \* **Arabic** is spoken all over Sudan.
- 5. Before science; as:
  - \* **Science** is spreading all over the world.
- 6. Before arts; as:
  - \* Ali likes **painting**.
- 7. Before indefinite plural nouns; as:
  - \* **Cows** eat grass.
- 8. Before '**home**' when 'home is not preceded by a descriptive word; as:
  - \* Ali went **home**.

**Exercise (121):**

Insert an **Article**:

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. ....cat.       | 2. ....owl.     |
| 3. ....Truth.     | 4. ....office.  |
| 5. ....Nile.      | 6. ....banana.  |
| 7. ....umbrella.  | 8. ....hour.    |
| 9. ....horse.     | 10. ....orange. |
| 11. ....moon.     | 12. ....mosque. |
| 13. .... Quran.   | 14. ....sky.    |
| 15. ....pen.      | 16. ....hare.   |
| 17. ....advice.   | 18. ....house.  |
| 19. ....army.     | 20. ....fox.    |
| 21. ....calf.     | 22. ....donkey. |
| 23. ....wind.     | 24. ....star.   |
| 25. ....hospital. | 26. ....honest. |

**Exercise (122):**

Fill in the blanks with '**a**' '**an**' or '**the**':

1. They bought .....new car.
2. Sudan is .....land of .....Arabic Gum.
3. I saw .....elephant.
4. Was it .....nice journey?
5. Salim is .....little child.
6. ....sun shines.
7. This is .....sharp knife.
8. ....earth is round.
9. I met.....honest man.
- 10.....sky is blue.
11. I came here before .....hour.
- 12.....ocean is deep.
- 13.....moon is beautiful.

14. I saw .....horse,.....ass and .....cow.
- 15.....goat is a useful animal.
16. He is .....undisciplined man.
17. Islam is .....religion of .....Sudanese.
18. Tooti is .....island.
- 19.....orange is sweet.
20. Iron is .....useful metal.

**Exercise (123):**

Fill in the blanks with 'a' 'an' or 'the' where necessary:

1. He got.....job and.....accommodation.
2. They met .....old man.
3. They established .....university.
4. The plane was delayed for.....hour.
5. She fried .....egg.
6. I build .....industrial unit.
7. He is .....boy.
8. She sponsored.....orphan child.
9. He has .....great.....courage.
10. He adhered to .....honesty.
11. She is.....girl.
12. I respect.....teachers.
13. I met .....teachers who taught me English.
14. Jabal Al Barkal is.....historical place.
15. I met .....clerk who resigned.
16. Pacific Ocean is.....deepest ocean in the world.
17. That is .....house which I demolished.
18. ....tiger is .....fierce animal.
19. ....Blue Nile descends from..... Ethiopia.
20. Hamza is .....most courageous man.
21. ....generous are liked by all people.
22. ....Juba is .....green city.
23. ....iron is .....strong metal.
24. ....piety is .....best policy.
25. ....English is spoken all over.....world.
26. ....mathematics needs .....good brains.
27. ....goats give milk.
28. Salih reached.....home.

## Number of Nouns عدد الأسماء

**Read the following sentences:**

1. A **carpenter** is making a **table**.

The nouns '**carpenter, table**' in the above sentence stand for one person or thing. Therefore, they are in the '**Singular number**' عدد مفرد

2. **Carpenters** are making **tables**.

The nouns '**carpenters, tables**' in the above sentence stand for more than one person or thing. Therefore, they are in the '**Plural number**' عدد جمع

**Learn:**

- \* A Noun which names one person or thing is in the **Singular Number**; as: **boy, girl, man**.
- \* A Noun which names more than one person or thing is in the **Plural Number**; as: **boy-boys, girl-girls, man-men**.
- \* Number is the change in the form of a noun in order to show whether it names one person/thing or more than one; as: **girl-girls, man-men**.

However, the following nouns are used **only in the singular**:  
Mathematics, physics, politics, hair, news, information, furniture, advice, scenery. Examples:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Mathematics is an easy subject.</p> <p>3. Politics is a clever game.</p> <p>5. The news is surprising.</p> <p>7. This furniture is new.</p> <p>9. It is a beautiful scenery.</p> | <p>2. Physics is an easy subject.</p> <p>4. Her hair is very long.</p> <p>6. This is a good information.</p> <p>8. The advice was useful.</p> |
|--|---|

Moreover, the following nouns are used **only in the plural**:

Wages, trousers, scissors, spectacles, shoes, people, cattle, socks, shorts. Examples:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. The wages I receive are very less than what I have expected.</p> <p>3. Scissors are used for hair-dressing.</p> <p>5. Her shoes are old.</p> <p>7. Cattle are eating grass.</p> | <p>2. Trousers are very expensive now-a-days.</p> <p>4. My spectacles are broken.</p> <p>6. People are interested in learning the Quran.</p> <p>8. Socks keep feet warm,</p> |
|---|--|

9. Shorts are not respectable dress. | therefore, they are useful in winter.

**Exercise (124):**

Rewrite the following sentences, choosing the correct form of the verbs given in brackets:

1. Mathematics .....very easy. (are/is)
2. My scissors .....very rusty. (are/is)
3. Physics .....very interesting. (is/are)
4. Politics .....practiced by politicians. (are/is)
5. His shoes .....not polished. (was/were)
6. People, all over the world, .....embracing Islam. (are/is)
7. The information you gave me .....very useful. (is/are)
8. Her hair.....white. (are/is)
9. My cattle .....drinking from the stream. (was/were)
10. His house furniture .....old. (were/was)
11. The socks .....become dirty. (have/has)
12. The news .....broadcasted yesterday. (was/were)
13. My spectacles.....been broken since yesterday. (have/has)
14. This man's wages .....very high. (is/are)
15. The shorts which he bought.....not suitable for prayers. (are/is)
16. The scenery I bought yesterday.....varieties of colors. (have/has)

## Formation of Plurals

By adding 's' to the **singular**:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Singular
Book	Books	Ball	Balls
Garden	Gardens	Tree	Trees
Cow	Cows	Pen	Pens
Rose	Roses	Horse	Horses

By adding 'es' to **singular** nouns ending in 's', 'ss', 'o', 'ch', 'x':

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Bus	Buses	Class	Classes
Glass	Glasses	Mass	Masses
Mango	Mangoes	Tomato	Tomatoes
Church	Churches	Watch	Watches
Kiss	Kisses	Box	Boxes
Brush	Brushes	Coach	Coaches

Fox	Foxes	Bush	Bushes
Ass	Asses	Potato	Potatoes
Cargo	Cargoes	Hero	Heroes

Exceptions to this rule: Some words of foreign origin or abbreviated words ending in 'o' get 's':

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Dynamo	Dynamos	Piano	Pianos
Photo	Photos		

By changing 'y' into 'i' and then adding 'es' to the **singular**:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Baby	Babies	City	Cities
Body	Bodies	Duty	Duties
Lady	Ladies	Country	Countries
Fly	Flies	Story	Stories
Army	Armies	Copy	Copies
Family	Families	Diary	Diaries

By adding 's' to the **singular** if 'y' has a **vowel** before it:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Boy	Boys	Toy	Toys
Donkey	Donkeys	Monkey	Monkeys
Way	Ways	Day	Days
Bay	Bays	Valley	Valleys

By changing 'f' or 'fe' into 'ves':

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Wife	Wives	Knife	Knives
Thief	Thieves	Leaf	Leaves
Wolf	Wolves	Shelf	Shelves
Half	Halves	Self	Selves
Life	Lives	Calf	Calves
Loaf	Loaves		

Exceptions to this rule:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Hoof	Hoofs	Staff	Staffs
Roof	Roofs	Chief	Chiefs
Cliff	Cliffs	Gulf	Gulfs

By changing the **inside vowel**:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Mouse	Mice	Foot	Feet
Tooth	Teeth	Policeman	Policemen
Woman	Women	Goose	Geese
Man	Men	Medium	Media

By adding 'en':

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Child	Children	Ox	oxen

**Compound words:**

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Passer-by	Passers-by	Commander-in-chief	Commanders-in-chief
Mother-in-law	Mothers-in-law	Son-in-law	Sons-in-law
Step-father	Step-fathers	Step-mother	Step-mothers

**Singular and plural alike:**

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Fish	Fish	Deer	Deer
Sheep	Sheep	Dozen	Dozen

Now, let's read and parse اعراب the Nouns in the following sentence:

Dogs chase foxes.

**Parsing:** اعراب

Dogs Common noun, plural number, subject of chase.

Foxes Common noun, plural number, object of chase.

**Exercise (125):**

Write the **Plural** of each of the following nouns:

bus, baby, donkey, mango, knife, chief, tooth, child, sheep, cow, glass, city, story, tomato, wife, staff, mouse, ox, fish, house, dish, lady, wolf, man, deer,

**Exercise (126):**

Write the **Singular** of each of the following nouns:

Books, classes, bodies, valleys, potatoes, shelves, proofs, women, children, hundred, pens, brushes, armies, keys, heroes, leaves, hoofs, chairmen, score.

**Exercise (127):**

Change the nouns in the following sentences from **Singular** to **Plural** and rewrite sentences making other necessary changes:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The copy of this book has a detail about the story.</li> <li>3. That army is invading the neighboring city.</li> <li>5. A cow gives milk to a calf.</li> <li>7. Unlike an animal, man cleans his tooth.</li> <li>9. A calf is slaughtered by a knife.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. This ass comes from that fence.</li> <li>4. This donkey was carrying the load of tomato.</li> <li>6. A woman likes her child.</li> <li>8. A Muslim prays in a mosque regularly.</li> <li>10. A tree has a branch that bears a leaf.</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

**Exercise (128):**

Change the nouns in the following sentences from **Plural** to **Singular** and rewrite sentences making other necessary changes:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Men take tablets to get relieved from teeth-aches.</li> <li>3. Children obey their parents and teachers and attend their classes regularly.</li> <li>5. Cats catch mice, but they are hesitant to attack rats.</li> <li>7. Thieves steal gold from ladies' room, money from men's room and valuable assets from the shelves of shops.</li> <li>9. My donkeys are used for transporting tomatoes boxes and potatoes sacks from the farms to the house.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Good women treat their in-laws respectfully, obey their husbands and serve them as well.</li> <li>4. Wolves eat sheep, calves, deer and asses.</li> <li>6. Fishermen catch fish and sell them in cities and villages.</li> <li>8. Good men look after their fathers and mothers patiently, treat their wives mildly and do their duties sincerely.</li> <li>10. Children like tales about fairies and they like to see monkeys in the zoos.</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

**Exercise (129):**

Read and parse اعراب the Nouns in the following sentences:

1. Cats eat mice.
2. Boys like sweets.
3. Emotions are high.
4. People are satisfied.

## Gender of Nouns جنس الاسماء

Read the following sentences:

1. Ali is a **boy**.
2. Mona is a **girl**.
3. The book is on the **table**.
4. This is a small **baby**.

\* The noun '**boy**' is the name of a **male**. It is of the **Masculine Gender**. الجنس المذكر

\* The noun '**girl**' is the name of a **female**. It is of the **Feminine Gender**. الجنس المؤنث

\* The noun '**table**' is the name of a **thing without life**. It is of the **Neuter Gender**. جنس محايد

\* The noun '**baby**' is the name of a **male or female**. It is of the **Common Gender**. جنس عام

**Learn:**

A Noun that is the name of a male is in the **Masculine Gender**; as: Ali, boy, man, dog, horse.

**Learn:**

A Noun that is the name of a female is in the **Feminine Gender**; as: Mona, girl, woman, bitch, mare.

**Learn:**

A Noun that is the name of a lifeless object is in the **Neuter Gender**; as: bed, chair, box, pencil.

**Learn:**

A Noun that is the name of both male and female is in the **Common Gender**; as: baby, child, parent, cousin, nephew, friend, servant.

## Gender in Pronouns الجنس في الضمائر

Read the following sentences:

1. Ali likes praying in mosques. **He** is a religious boy. **He** is doing his prayers.
2. Mona likes dressing scarf. **She** is a respectable girl. **She** is dressing her scarf.
3. Hamza is a brave man. I like **him**.
4. Fatima is a good girl. I respect **her**.
5. I found some money on the floor. I returned **it** to **its** owner.
6. Some men and women work. **They** make carpets and sell **them** in the market. **They** help their families. I respect **them**.

\* The pronouns '**he**', '**his**', '**him**', are used for nouns in

the **Masculine Gender**.

\* The pronouns 'she', 'her' are used for nouns in the

**Feminine Gender**.

\* The pronouns 'he', 'she', 'him' 'her' are also used for nouns in the **Common Gender**.

\* The pronouns 'it', 'its' are used for nouns in the **Neuter Gender**.

\* The pronoun 'they' is used for all genders. The pronoun 'they' is the plural of the pronouns 'he', 'she', 'it'.

**Exercise (130):**

Write the **opposite gender** of the following nouns:

Girl, cow, cock, mother, gentlemen, mare, king, woman, mamma, nephew, husband, bitch, sister, widow.

**Exercise (131):**

State the **Gender** of the each of the following words:

Poet, actress, waiter, drake, lady, lad, uncle, niece, hen, sister, bull, milkman, he-goat.

**Exercise (132):**

Rewrite the following sentences by using nouns of the **opposite gender**:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1. I met the boy with his father.</p> <p>3. She has a son who is an actor.</p> <p>5. The hunter caught a tigress.</p> <p>7. The girl drew the figure of a princess.</p> <p>9. The widow up-brought her daughter.</p> | <p>2. He sold the horse and bought a cow.</p> <p>4. My nephew visited his mother-in-law.</p> <p>6. The shepherdess roasted the cock.</p> <p>8. The prince saved the heroine.</p> <p>10. The dog killed a fox.</p> |
|---|---|

## Formation of the Feminine Gender

By changing of word:

Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
Husband	Wife	Nephew	Niece
King	Queen	Sir	Madam
Cock	Hen	Dog	Bitch
Bull/ox	Cow	Horse	Mare

Uncle	Aunt	Brother	Sister
Man	Woman	Boy	Girl
Lad	Lass	Grandfather	Grandmother
Son	Daughter	Papa	Mamma
Drone	Bee	Colt	Filly
Drake	Duck	Wizard	witch

By adding 'ess' to the masculine:

Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
Host	Hostess	Prince	Princess
Poet	Poetess	Lion	Lioness
Author	Authoress	Shepherd	Shepherdess
Host	Hostess	Jew	Jewess
Count	Countess	Giant	Giantess
Heir	Heiress		

By dropping the vowel and adding 'ess':

Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
Act <u>or</u>	Actress	Wait <u>er</u>	Waitress
Direct <u>or</u>	directress	Tig <u>er</u>	tigress
Hunter	Huntress	Inspector	Inspectress
Negro	Negress	Traitor	Traitress
Instructor	Instructress		

By replacing a word before or after:

Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
Brother-in-law	Sister-in-law	Father-in-law	Mother-in-law
Grand-son	Grand-daughter	Man-servant	Maid-servant
Land-lord	Land-lady	Step-father	Step-mother
Milk-man	Milk-maid	Washer-man	Washer-woman

Miscellaneous:

Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
Widower	Widow	emperor	Empress
Bridegroom	Bride	Hero	Heroine
Mr.	Mrs.	Governor	Governess
Master	Mistress/miss	Fox	Vixen

## Case of Nouns حالة الاسماء

**Case** is the form of noun or pronoun that shows the relation of noun/pronoun to other words in a sentence.

**There are three types of the case:**

1. The Nominative Case.
2. The Objective Case.
3. The Possessive Case.

### \* The Nominative Case حالة الرفع

**Read the following sentences:**

1. **Ali (He)** reads the Quran.
2. The **cat** is eating a rat.
3. The **river** is flooding.

In the above sentences, the words '**Ali, cat, river**' are the Subjects of the verbs. Therefore, they are in the **Nominative Case**. Therefore, the **Nominative Case** answers the question '**Who?**' or '**What?**'; as:

Who reads?	Ali
What is eating a rat?	The cat.
What is flooding?	The river.

**Learn:**

A Noun (or Pronoun) which is the subject of a verb is in the **Nominative Case**. The Nominative Case answers the question '**Who?**' or '**What?**'

**Exercise (133):**

Pick out the nouns (or pronouns) in the **Nominative Case** in the following sentences:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Sami caught a fish.</li> <li>3. Adultery causes AIDS.</li> <li>5. The barrel is full of water.</li> <li>7. Ali married Fatima.</li> <li>9. They never smoke cigarette.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ali read the Quran.</li> <li>4. The fox was chased by the dog.</li> <li>6. She is there.</li> <li>8. Sudan lies in the heart of Africa.</li> <li>10. You got the highest marks.</li> </ol> |
|---|--|

## \* The Objective Case حالة النصب

**Read the following sentences:**

1. Rami greeted **Ahmed**.
2. He teaches **her**.
3. The horse ate **the grass**.
4. The book is **under the bed**.

In sentences 1 and 2, the words ‘**Ahmed, her, the grass**’ are the Objects of the verbs. Therefore, they are in the **Objective Case**.

In sentence 3, the word ‘**the bed**’ is the Object of the preposition ‘**under**’. Therefore, it is also in the **Objective Case**. Therefore, the **Objective Case** answers the question ‘**Whom?**’ or ‘**What?**’; as:

Whom did Rami greet?      Ahmed.  
Whom does he teach?      her.

**Learn:**

A Noun (or Pronoun) which is the Object of a verb is in the **Objective Case**. The **Objective Case** answers the question ‘**Whom?**’ or ‘**What?**’ or ‘**Where?**’

**Read the following sentences:**

1. He went across **the street**.
2. She departed after **them**.

*Nouns and pronouns which follow the preposition are in the **Objective case**.*

**Read the following sentences:**

1. The tiger chased the lion.
2. The lion chased the tiger.

In sentence 1, the noun ‘tiger’ is the **Subject** of the verb ‘chased’. It is in the **Nominative Case**.

In sentence 2, the noun ‘tiger’ is the **Object** of the verb ‘chased’. It is the **Objective Case**.

However, in sentence 2, the noun ‘lion’ is the **Subject** of the verb ‘chased’. It is in the **Nominative Case**.

In sentence 2, the noun ‘tiger’ is the **Object** of the verb ‘chased’. It is in the **Objective Case**.

**Learn:**

The **Nominative** and **Objective case** of nouns are similar in form, but they are recognized by their position in the sentence and sense.

**Remember:**

However, we must remember that the **Nominative cases** come **before** the verb whereas the **Objective cases** come **after** the verb.

**Read the following sentences:**

1. **He** met **me**.
2. **I** met **him**.

The above sentences show that the Nominative and Objective cases of pronouns are not indicated by a change of form. The pronoun 'he' in the **Nominative case** changes in form and turns into 'him' in the **Objective case**. Similarly, the pronoun 'I' in the **Nominative case** changes in form and turns into 'me' in the **Objective case**

**Exercise (134):**

Pick out the **nouns** (or **pronouns**) in the **Objective Case** in the following sentences:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Rami wrote a letter.</li> <li>3. Adultery causes AIDS.</li> <li>5. He departed after me.</li> <li>7. He married her.</li> <li>9. The patient comes for treatment.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. She is cooking food.</li> <li>4. The fox was chased by the dog.</li> <li>6. She is helping me.</li> <li>8. Sudan lies in the heart of Africa.</li> <li>10. They sat on the chairs.</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

**\* The Possessive Case** حالة التملك

**Read the following sentences:**

1. These are **Rami's** books.
2. That is **Ali's** car.
3. This is **my** pen.

In the above sentences '**Rami's book**', '**Ali's car**', '**my pen**' are in the **Possessive Case**. They denote the possessors or owner of something. Therefore, the **Possessive Case** answers the question '**Whose?**'; as:

Whose books are these? Rami's books.

**Learn:**

A Noun (or Pronoun) used to show possession is in the **Objective Case**. The **Possessive Case** answers the question '**Whose?**'

## \* Formation of Possessive Case **تكوين حالة التملكية**

1. The Possessive Case of **singular** nouns is formed by adding an apostrophe ('s) at the end; as:
  - (a) **Salih's** book is on the shelf.
  - (b) The **girl's** pen is there.
  - (c) **Tariq's** father.
  
2. The Possessive Case of **plural** nouns which are formed by changing the inside vowel is formed by adding an apostrophe ('s) at the end; as:
  - (a) **Children's** mother.
  - (b) **Women's** shoes.
  - (c) **Men's** behavior.
  
3. The Possessive Case of **plural** nouns and singular nouns which end in (s) is formed by adding an apostrophe (') at the end; as:
  - (a) **Boys'** hostel. [Plural noun ending in (s)]
  - (b) **Teachers'** office. [Plural noun ending in (s)]
  - (c) **Charles Dickens'** novel. [Singular noun ending in (s)]
  - (d) **Abbas'** car. [Singular noun ending in (s)]

## \* The Use of Possessive Case **استعمال حالة التملكية**

- (i) The Forms of Possessive Case ( 's ), ( ' ) are used with the names of **living things**; as:
  1. **Salih's** book is on the shelf.
  2. **Boys'** hostel.
  3. **Children's** mother.
  4. **Dickens'** novel.
  
- (ii) The **lifeless things** form the Possessive Case by using the preposition (**of**); as:
  1. The taste **of** the mango is sweet.
  2. The page **of** the book is torn.
  3. The window **of** the room is closed.

**Remember:**

It is wrong to say ‘The mango’s taste’ is sweet; ‘The book’s page is torn’, ‘The room’s window is closed’.

However, the Possessive Case is used with nouns referring to **time, space, and weight**; as:

1. A **day’s** journey.
2. A **month’s** holiday.
3. A **meter’s** length.
4. A **kilo’s** weight.

**Read the following sentences:**

1. The **thief’s** arrest was celebrated by all people.
2. The **cat’s** presence made the mouse run away.
3. The **leader’s** assassinator was jailed.
4. The **guardian’s** absence gave chance to the thief to enter the house.

The above sentences indicate that the **Possessive Case does not always refer to possession.**

**Exercise (135):**

Pick out the **nouns** in the **Possessive Case** in the following sentences:

- |                                    |                                   |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. The horse’s tail is long.       | 2. Ali’s speech was influential.  |
| 3. Men’s shirts are expensive.     | 4. The boys’ room is clean.       |
| 5. A woman’s house is her kingdom. | 6. Babies’ milk is not available. |
| 7. Is this your father’s car?      | 8. The scorpion’s sting is fatal. |
| 9. Dickens’ novels are impressive. | 10. The cover of the book.        |
| 11. That is their house.           | 12. The donkey’s nick is long.    |

**\* The Vocative Case الحالة الندائية****Read the following sentences:**

1. Sit here, **Toney**.
2. Go there, **boys**.
3. Come on, **students**.

In the above sentences, the words ‘**Toney, boys, students**’ are the names of person/persons spoken to or addressed. Therefore, they are in the **Vocative Case**. The Vocative Case is also called the **Nominative Address**.

**Exercise (136):**

Write the **Possessive Case** of the following singular nouns:

Girl, cow, fox, lady, monkey, thief, chief, hero, child, sister, servant, woman, Abbas, son-in-law,

**Exercise (137):**

Write the **Possessive Case** of the following plural nouns:

Men, children, asses, babies, donkeys, wives, wolves, mice, stepsons,

**Exercise (138):**

Pick out the **nouns** in the following sentences and tell the **Case** of each:

- |                                |                                       |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Tariq closed the window.    | 2. The girl wore the scarf.           |
| 3. I drove my father's car.    | 4. The leg of the bed.                |
| 5. Go away, Toney.             | 6. He wrote a letter.                 |
| 7. The bottle is full of oil.  | 8. The glass was broken by the child. |
| 9. The bee's sting is painful. | 10. He teaches her.                   |
| 11. The color of the picture.  | 12. O Jabir, come and help me!        |
| 13. This is James' house.      | 14. They sat behind the wall.         |
| 15. Sabir helped Nadir.        | 16. She cooks food.                   |
| 17. This is my pencil.         | 18. Stand up, students.               |
| 19. The lock of the door.      | 20. It hid under the table.           |

## Number, Gender and Case of Some Pronouns

### العدد والجنس والحال لبعض الضمائر

#### \* Number, Gender and Case العدد والجنس والحال (Personal Pronouns)

Examine the content of the following table:

Case	Singular
1.Nominative	I
2.Possessive	my, mine
3.Objective	me

The Pronouns 'I, my, mine, me' are of First Person. They are of the Singular Number, Masculine or Feminine Gender; as:

1. **I** have a brother.
2. The brother is **mine**.
3. The brother respects **me**.

Examine the content of the following table:

Case	Plural
1. Nominative	we
2. Possessive	our, ours
3. Objective	us

The Pronouns 'we, our, ours, us' are of First Person. They are of the Plural Number, Masculine or Feminine Gender; as:

1. **We** have a brother.
2. The brother is **ours**.
3. The brother respects **us**.

Examine the content of the following table:

Case	Singular
1. Nominative	you (thou)
2. Possessive	your, yours (thy, thine)
3. Objective	you (thee)

The Pronouns 'you, your, yours, you' are of Second Person. They are of the Singular Number, Masculine or Feminine Gender; as:

1. **You** are a girl.
2. This book is **yours**.

3. The teacher respects **you**.
1. **You** are a boy.
2. This book is **yours**.
3. The teacher respects **you**.

**Examine the content of the following table:**

Case	Plural
1. Nominative	you (thou)
2. Possessive	your, yours (thy, thine)
3. Objective	you (thee)

The Pronouns ‘you, your, yours, you’ are of Second Person. They are of the Plural Number, Masculine or Feminine Gender; as:

1. **You** are girls.
2. These books are **yours**.
3. The teachers respect **you**.

1. **You** are boys.
2. These books are **yours**.
3. The teachers respect **you**.

**Remember:** (thou), (thy, thine), (thee) are common in poetry.

**Examine the content of the following table:**

Case	Singular
1. Nominative	he
2. Possessive	his
3. Objective	him

The Pronouns ‘he, his, him’ are of the Third Person. They are of the Singular Number, Masculine Gender; as:

1. **He** has a sister.
2. The sister is **his**.
3. The sister likes **him**.

**Examine the content of the following table:**

Case	Singular
1. Nominative	she
2. Possessive	her, hers
3. Objective	her

The Pronouns ‘she, her, hers, her’ are of the Third Person. They are of the Singular Number, Feminine Gender; as:

1. **She** has a brother.

2. The brother is **hers**.
3. The brother respects **her**.

**Examine the content of the following table:**

Case	Singular
1. Nominative	it
2. Possessive	its
3. Objective	it

The Pronouns 'it, its, it' are of the Third Person. They are of the Singular Number; as:

1. **It** (The cat) has a tail.
2. The tail is **its**.
3. It (The cat) cleans **it**.

**Examine the content of the following table:**

Case	Plural
1. Nominative	they
2. Possessive	their, theirs
3. Objective	them

The Pronouns 'they, their, theirs, them' are of the Third Person. They are of the Plural Number; as:

1. **They** (the boys) have sisters.
2. The sisters are **theirs**.
3. **They** (the boys) respect **them**.

**\* Number, Gender and Case العدد، الجنس والحال (Relative Pronouns)**

**Examine the content of the following table:**

Case	Singular/Plural(masculine/ feminine)
1. Nominative	who
2. Possessive	whose
3. Objective	whom

The Relative Pronoun 'who' has the possessive form 'whose' and the objective case 'whom'. The forms are same for singular and plural, masculine and feminine.

**Examine the following sentences:**

1. I met the boy who got the first prize.
2. She saw the man whose leg was broken in the accident.
3. They spoke to the boy whom we met yesterday.

Now, let's read and parse اعراب the **Personal Pronouns** in the following sentence:

1. I met him and Mona.
2. She helps you sometimes.
3. It is Ahmed's car.

**Parsing:** اعراب

- I Personal pronoun, first person, singular number, common gender, nominative case to the verb met.
- Him Personal pronoun, third person, singular number, masculine gender, objective case, object of the verb met.
- She Personal pronoun, third person, singular number, feminine gender, nominative case to the verb helps.
- You Personal pronoun, second person, singular number, common gender, objective case, object of the verb helps.
- It Personal pronoun, third person, singular number, neuter gender, nominative case to the verb is.

**Exercise (139):**

Parse اعراب the **Personal Pronouns** in the following sentences:

1. I like you.
2. They invited him.
3. You bought it.
4. She feeds them.
5. We teach her.
6. He examined us.

Now, let's read and parse اعراب the **Relative Pronouns** in the following sentences:

1. I saw the girl who is religious.
2. He met the boy whose mother died.
3. She is the girl whom you respect.

**Parsing:** اعراب

- who Relative pronoun, third person, singular number, feminine gender, nominative case to the verb is.
- Whose Relative pronoun, third person, singular number, masculine gender, possessive case to the noun mother.
- whom Relative pronoun, third person, singular number, feminine gender, objective case to the verb respect.

**Exercise (140):**

Parse اعراب the **Relative Pronouns** in the following sentences:

1. I met the man who plants flowers.
2. He saw the girl whose brother got a prize.
3. She is the woman whom you met.

**Examine the content of the following table:**

Case	Singular/Plural(masculine /feminine)
1. Nominative	which
2. Objective	which

The Relative Pronoun ‘which’ has the same form for the **Nominative** and **Objective** cases. It has also the forms in the singular and plural. The Relative Pronoun ‘which’ has no Possessive case, but whose is sometimes used to substitute for ‘of which’.

**Examine the following sentences:**

1. The cat which drank the milk ran away.
2. That is the cat which I chased.
3. These are the cars which I bought.
4. A triangle (of which) whose two sides are equal is called an isosceles triangle.
5. A shirt (of which) whose sleeves are short is called short-sleeves shirt.

**Examine the content of the following table:**

Case	Singular/Plural(masculine /feminine)
1. Nominative	that
2. Objective	that

The Relative Pronoun ‘that’ has the same form for the Nominative and Objective cases. It has also the forms in the singular and plural. The Relative Pronoun ‘that’ has no Possessive case. It is never used with a proposition preceding; as:

That is the girl that I spoke to you about.

**Examine the following sentences:**

1. She that is religious is respected by people. (Feminine)
2. He that wastes time will fail. (Masculine)
3. This is the book that I wrote. (Singular)
4. These are the cars that I bought. (Plural)

Now, let’s read and parse اعراب the **Relative Pronouns** in the following sentences:

1. That is donkey which invaded my field.
2. This is car that I bought.

**Parsing:** اعراب

- which Relative pronoun, third person, singular number, common gender, nominative case to the verb invaded.  
 that Relative pronoun, third person, singular number, neuter gender, objective case to the verb bought.

**Exercise (141):**

Parse اعراب the **Relative Pronouns** in the following sentences:

1. This is the cat which caught the mouse.
2. This is the room that I built last year.

**Examine the content of the following table:**

Case	Singular
1. Nominative	what
2. Objective	what

The Relative Pronoun ‘what’ has the same form for the **Nominative** and **Objective cases**. It is used only in the singular. The antecedent of the **Relative Pronoun ‘what’** is not expressed.

**Examine the following sentences:**

1. What is going on is not known. (Nominative)
2. He realized what I mean. (Objective)

Now, let’s read and parse اعراب the **Relative Pronoun** in the following sentences:

1. What has happened is wonderful.
2. I understand what he says.

**Parsing:** اعراب

- what Relative pronoun, third person, singular number, neuter gender, nominative case to the verb happened.  
 what Relative pronoun, third person, singular number, neuter gender, objective case to the verb says.

**Exercise (142):**

Parse اعراب the **Relative Pronouns** in the following sentences:

1. What can fall upon us is not expected.
2. I hate what you do.

**\* Number, Gender and Case العدد، الجنس والحال (Interrogative Pronouns)**

Examine the content of the following table:

Case	Singular/Plural(masculine/feminine)
1. Nominative	who
2. Possessive	whose
3. Objective	whom

The Interrogative Pronoun ‘who’ has the possessive form ‘whose’ and the objective case ‘whom’. The forms are same for singular and plural, masculine and feminine. They are used for persons only.

Examine the following sentences:

1. Who is she? She is Aamina, my mother. (Nominative)
2. Whose is this pen? It is Ali’s. (Possessive)
3. Whom did Salih meet? He met Tariq. (Objective)

Now, let’s read and parse اعراب the **Interrogative Pronouns** in the following sentences:

1. Who is this boy?
2. Whose is this car?
3. Whom did she marry?

**Parsing:** اعراب

Who Interrogative pronoun, third person, singular number, masculine gender, nominative case to the verb is.

Whose Interrogative pronoun, third person, singular number, neuter gender, possessive case to the verb is.

Whom Interrogative pronoun, third person, singular number, feminine gender, objective case to the verb marry.

**Exercise (143):**

Parse اعراب the Interrogative Pronouns in the following sentences:

1. Who was that girl?
2. Whose is this house?
3. Whom did he get engaged to?

Examine the content of the following table:

Case	Singular/Plural (masculine/feminine)
1. Nominative	which
2. Objective	which

The Interrogative Pronoun ‘which’ is used in the nominative

and objective cases. The form in both cases is same and unchanged. The same form is used in singular and plural, masculine and feminine. The same form is used for persons, animals and things.

**Examine the following sentences:**

1. Which of the men will teach us? (nominative-masculine)
2. Which of these women can cook for us? (nominative-feminine)
3. Which of the donkeys you want to ride? (objective-animal)
4. Which of these books you want to read? (objective-thing)

Now, let's read and parse اعراب the Interrogative Pronoun in the following sentence:

1. Which of these girls is participating in the contest?

**Parsing:** اعراب

Which Interrogative pronoun, third person, singular number, feminine gender, nominative case to the verb coming.

**Exercise (144):**

Parse اعراب the Interrogative Pronouns in the following sentences:

1. Which of these boys will participate in the contest?
2. Which of these shoes you bought yesterday?
3. Which of those cats you chased last night?

**Examine the content of the following table:**

Case	Singular/Plural
1. Nominative	what
2. Objective	what

The Interrogative Pronoun 'what' is used for things only. It has the same form in the nominative and objective cases. It is used in singular and plural.

**Examine the following sentences:**

1. What is moving there?
2. What is he thinking of?

Now, let's read and parse اعراب the Interrogative Pronouns in the following sentences:

1. What is troubling him?
2. What do you eat?

**Parsing:** اعراب

What Interrogative pronoun, third person, singular number, neuter gender, nominative case to the verb troubling.

What Interrogative pronoun, third person, singular number, neuter gender, objective case to the verb eat.

**Exercise (145):**

Parse اعراب the Interrogative Pronoun in the following sentences:

1. What is glittering there?
2. What are you doing?

**Remember:**

When the words (which, what) are used with nouns, they are adjectives; as:

- Which car is hers?
- What lesson is this?

**\* Number, Gender and Case العدد، الجنس والحال (Demonstrative and Indefinite Pronouns)**

**1. Demonstrative Pronouns:**

Examine the content of the following table:

Case	Singular	Plural
1. Nominative	This, that	These , those
2. Objective	This, that	These, those

Demonstrative Pronouns (this, these, that, those) are used to refer to persons or things near in space, time and thought or far in space, time and thought. They are used in the nominative and objective cases.

**Examine the following sentences:**

1. This is my brother.
2. These are my books.
3. That is her house.
4. Those are their cars.

Now, let's read and parse اعراب the **Demonstrative Pronouns** in the following sentences:

1. This is my pen.
2. Ali gave her that.

**Parsing:** اعراب

this Demonstrative pronoun, third person, singular number, neuter gender, nominative case to the verb is.

those Demonstrative pronoun, third person, plural number, neuter gender, objective case to the verb gave.

**Exercise (146):**

Parse اعراب the Demonstrative Pronouns in the following sentences:

1. These are our books.
2. My uncle offered me those.

**2. Indefinite Pronouns:**

**Examine the content of the following table:**

Case	Pronouns
1. Nominative	Indefinite pronouns
2. Objective	Indefinite pronouns

Indefinite Pronouns many, some, any, none, all, etc are used to refer to persons or things. They are used in the nominative and objective cases.

**Examine the following sentences:**

1. Some is available in the market.
2. Many left this country.
3. I got some.
4. He gave me many.

Now, let's read and parse اعراب the **Indefinite Pronouns** in the following sentences:

1. Many attended the meeting.
2. Sugar is not available, but my neighbor gave me some.

**Parsing:** اعراب

Many Indefinite pronoun, third person, plural number, common gender, nominative case to the verb attended.

Some Indefinite pronoun, third person, singular number, neuter gender, objective case to the verb gave.

**Exercise (147):**

Parse اعراب the Indefinite Pronouns in the following sentences:

1. Medical books are not available, but the lecturer gave her some.
2. I have none.
3. Many will come to the class today.
4. Some are in the store.

## Verb-Subject Agreement توافق الفعل والفاعل

- A. The verb **agrees** with its subject in number and person; as:
1. The boy (He) eats.
  2. The girl (She) eats.
  3. The cat (It) eats.
  4. The boys (They) eat.
  5. I eat.
  6. We eat.
  7. You eat.
  8. He (She/It) eats.
- B. The verb is **plural** if two or more singular subjects are joined by 'and'; as:
1. He **and** his brother **are** clever.
  2. Mona **and** Nada **were** religious.
  3. Ali **and** Salih **have** eaten food.
  4. Nadir **and** Rami **like** milk.
- C. The verb is **singular** if two singular subjects express one idea; as:
1. **Reading and writing is** my daily program.
  2. **Crying and shouting doesn't** solve a problem.
- D. The verb is **singular** if two singular nouns refer to the same person or thing; as:
1. The **greedy and miser is** in prison.
  2. My **neighbor and main companion has** died.
- E. The verb is **singular** if two or more singular subjects joined by 'either.....or' or 'neither.....nor'; as:
1. **Either** Tony **or** George **is** the culprit.
  2. **Neither** Sami **nor** Rami **has** done it.
- F. The verb **agrees** with the first person if two nouns are joined by 'with' or 'as well as'; as:
1. **Hasan with** his brothers **is** liked by all people.
  2. **The boys with** their sister **have** arrived.
  3. **Jamal as well as** his neighbors **was** present.
  4. **The girls as well as** their teacher **were** reading.

- G. The verb **agrees** in person with the subject **placed near** it if two subjects joined by ‘**or**’, ‘**nor**’ are of different persons; as:
1. **Either** they **or** she **is** getting the highest mark.
  2. **Either** she **or** they **are** getting the highest mark.
  3. **Neither** we **nor** she **was** present in the party.
  4. **Neither** she **nor** we **were** present in the party.
- H. A verb in the singular follows ‘**each**’ or ‘**every**’; as:
1. **Each** father and mother **is** kind.
  2. **Every** husband and wife **has** aims.
- I. A collective noun takes a singular verb if it expresses the idea of oneness; as:
1. **The team is** preparing for the match.
  2. **The crowd was** gathering there.
- J. If the plural form of some **quantity** or **amount** is considered to be one whole, the verb is singular; as:
1. **Twenty kilometers is** a long distance.
  2. **Twenty Dinars is** a big amount of money.
- L. The verb is singular if the noun is **plural in form**, but **singular in meaning**; as:
1. **The news is** being broadcasted.
  2. **Her hair was** grey.

**Exercise (148):**

Fill in the blanks with suitable **verbs/helping verbs** provided in brackets:

1. The group .....of thirty persons. (is/are)
2. May .....thirty one days. (have/has)
3. Three and three .....six. (makes/make)
4. Ninety kilometers.....an exhausting distance. (was/were)
5. The baby ..... (cry/cries)
6. She and her husband .....arrogant. (is/are)
7. Rami and Sami .....a good chance. (have/has)
8. Kamal and Jamal .....early. (sleeps/sleep)
9. Syrup and tablet .....her medicine. (is/are)
10. Sleeping and eating.....create a good body. (don't/doesn't)
11. The brave and initiative .....no longer alive. (are/is)
12. Their Boss and director .....left the office. (have/has)
13. Kareem with his brothers .....there. (was/were)

14. Awad as well as his sisters .....reading. (are/is)
15. Either Zaid or Ibaid .....at the door. (were/was)
16. Neither Qasim nor Yasir .....visited us. (have/has)
17. Each horse and donkey .....strong. (is/are)
18. Every room and hall .....two windows. (have/has)
19. Either he or you .....doing such things. (was/were)
20. Neither you nor she .....eating quality food. (are/is)
21. The audience .....enjoyed the performance. (have/has)
22. The herd .....grazing in a green pasture. (were/was)
23. Twenty kilometers ....a formidable distance. (are/is)
24. Fifty Dinars .....gone out of my pocket. (have/has)
25. The news .....received by my friend. (were/was)
26. Her hair .....white. (is/are)

## Punctuation

### علامة الترقيم في الكتابة

The correct use of writing marks such as full stop, comma, etc. is called **Punctuation**. Punctuation is important as it makes the sense, of what is written, clear. The main punctuation marks are as follows:

#### 1. The Comma ( , )

The comma marks the short pause in a sentence. It is used in the following position:

(a) To separate words of the same parts of speech (words in a series); as

- \* I met Sami, Ali, Tariq and Jamal. (Proper nouns)
- \* I bought a house, a car, a TV and a fridge. (Common nouns)
- \* Mona is religious, respectable and intelligent. (Adjectives)
- \* He spoke frankly, briefly and clearly. (Adverbs)
- \* You, he, she and I are brothers. (Pronouns)

(b) To mark the name of the person addressed; as:

- \* Toney, go out from there.
- \* George, mind your words.

(c) Before and after the words in apposition; as:

- \* Khartoum, the capital of Sudan, stands on the confluence of the two Niles.
- \* Mohammed Ahmed El Mahadi, the great Sudanese leader, defeated the Turkish army.

(d) To separate date of the same year; as:

- \* September 11, 2001.

(e) To separate cities and provinces; as:

- \* We visited Bara, Kordofan, on our vacation.

#### 2. The Full Stop ( . )

The full stop is the long pause at the end of an assertive or imperative sentence; as:

- \* Mona is a religious girl.
- \* Pray regularly in the mosque.

### 3. The Question Mark ( ? )

The question mark is placed at the end of an interrogative sentence; as:

- \* Where did you come from?
- \* How old are you?
- \* Did he come yesterday?

### 4. The Exclamation Mark ( ! )

The exclamation mark is placed after an exclamation sentence; as:

- \* What a lovely flower!
- \* How happy he is!

### 5. The Inverted Commas ( “       ” )

The inverted commas are used to mark off the exact words; as:

- \* Ali said, “The Quran teaches us an ideal method of life.”
- \* “Ali was a great man.” said the teacher.

### 6. Semicolon ( ; )

The semicolon is used to mark a pause longer than that indicated by the comma. It is used to separate the clauses of a compound sentence; as:

- \* She is religious; I respect her.

### 7. The colon ( : )

The colon is used to mark a pause longer than that indicated by the semicolon; as:

- \* My father always repeats: Health is wealth.
- \* My sister says: Religiosity is treasure.

### 8. The apostrophe ( ' )

The apostrophe is used to indicate possession; as:

- \* Ali's father borrowed Salih's car.

The apostrophe is also used to mark the omission of a letter; as:

- \* I'm very thankful for what you've done for me.

## The Use of Capital Letter

**Capital letters are used:**

1. To begin a sentence; as:

- \* She is cooking food.                      \* They are playing football.
- \* Did he drink the juice?                   \* Why is the child crying?

2. *To begin the first word of every line in a poem; as:*
  - \* Down with our enemies everywhere,  
For their threat we never care.  
Defeating them is our main aim,  
Achieving martyrdom is our lovely game.
  
3. *To begin the Proper nouns and adjectives that are formed from them; as:*
  - \* **Abbas** is building a house in **Dongola** city.
  - \* **Khartoum** lies at the confluence of the **Blue Nile** and the **White Nile**.
  - \* **Hasan** is a great **Islamic** scholar.
  - \* **Sudan** is a big country and the **Sudanese** are very generous people.
  
4. *To begin the names of the days of the week and months of the year; as:*
  - \* Friday is a festive day.
  - \* Ramadan sometimes comes in July.
  
5. *To begin the names of books, newspaper, magazines, etc; as:*
  - \* Alwan newspaper, the Quran.
  
6. *To begin the first word of a sentence put within the inverted commas; as:*
  - \* Sameer said to me, "You will get the highest mark."
  - \* Mona said, "Scarf is my favorite head-cover."
  
7. *To write the pronoun ' I ' and interjection ' O ' ; as:*
  - \* O Allah, I believe in the Judgment Day.

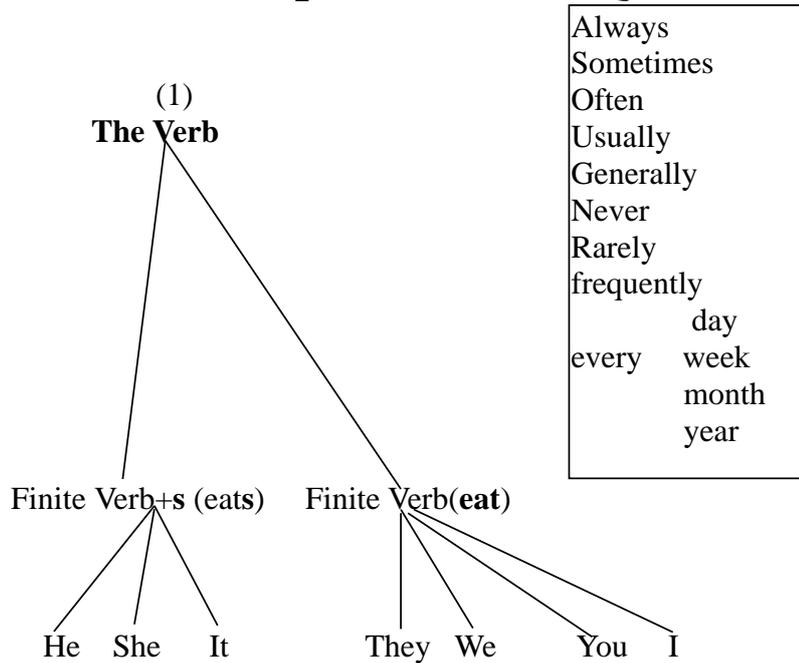
**Exercise (149):**

Punctuate the following, inserting **full stops** and using **capital letters** wherever necessary:

1. she lives in madani and studies in khartoum
2. we have two cities called halfa eljadeeda and halfa elqadeema
3. they said we can help majid if we get the salary of july
4. i ate kisra tagalia meat rice and fish
5. you play with jamal kamal sadig and tariq
6. sami come here
7. stand up and answer my question
8. june 30 1989

9. what is her name
10. the Nile the longest river in the world runs through the Sudan
11. what a beautiful scene
12. Ali is my brother
13. praise Allah the Lord of all people  
praise him everyday and night  
thank Allah the provider of the weak and able  
he sent the Quran as a light
14. Ali resides in Barber
15. she said I'm traveling to Iran
16. he is a real leader I support him
17. my mother always repeats cleanness is from faith
18. Ali's mother is my mother's sister
19. he's coming and you're going
20. may God bless you
21. Zul Hijja sometimes comes in June
22. the Sudanese keep good relations with the Chinese
23. O God I like the Quran
24. Alayyam newspaper is rich in content
25. Dongola in northern province is a fine city to visit
26. the Egyptian mercenaries plotted with the Turkish and British colonial armies to shed the blood of the Sudanese and plunder the natural resources of Sudan
27. re-read the history of Sudan from 1821 to 2000 so as to know the true enemies of Sudan
28. Islamic Republic of Iran developed nuclear science and it'll help other Muslim countries to develop it
29. we mustn't mortgage our natural resources to imperialist circles
30. they will travel from Port Sudan to Jeddah
31. Toot Ankh Aamoon was a black Sudanese.
32. Pharaoh civilization was essentially a Sudanese civilization and not an Egyptian as most of the pyramids are situated in Sudan

## Present Simple Tense ظرف المضارع البسيط



### Read the following sentences:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. He plays every Friday.</li> <li>3. She cooks at night.</li> <li>5. It rains every year.</li> <li>7. The sun sets in the west.</li> <li>9. They do it every day.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. They always <b>swim</b>.</li> <li>4. We usually <b>sleep</b> early.</li> <li>6. You sometimes <b>eat</b> meat.</li> <li>8. I <b>drink</b> juice every week.</li> <li>10. He does it every week.</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

### Learn:

**Present Simple Tense** is used to express:

#### 1. Habitual, repeated or permanent actions:

- (a) He always prays in the mosque.
- (b) They sometimes swim in the river.

It uses adverbs and Adverb-phrases such as always, sometimes, usually, often, generally, occasionally, seldom, rarely, daily, never, everyday.

- The Adverbs (always, sometimes, usually, often, daily, rarely, seldom, generally, occasionally, never) appear after the Noun or Pronoun; as:

Ali (He) **always** eats breakfast.

- The Adverb-phrases such as (every week, once a day, once a week, twice a day, twice a week) appear at the end of the sentence; as:

Ali (He) eats breakfast **everyday**.

**2. Universal/General Truth:**

- (a) Allah is great. (Universal Truth)
- (b) The earth is round. (General Truth)
- (c) The sun rises in the east. (General Truth)

**3. A Proverb:**

- (a) Knowledge is power.
- (b) Health is wealth.
- (c) Honesty is the best policy.

**4. In a subordinate clause of time or condition expressing future action; as:**

- (a) When you **arrive** at Khartoum, inform me by telephone.
- (b) If he **works** hard, he will improve his condition.
- (c) Unless she **wears** the scarf, people will not respect her.

**5. For planned future actions usually associated with travel; as:**

He leaves next week for Tehran and comes back next year.

**6. In place of the present continuous form of certain verbs that are not used in the continuous form such as verbs of opinion (like, doubt, believe, etc.) and verbs of perception such as: see, hear, understand, know, etc.); as:**

- (a) I think George is a liar.
- (b) I know he is a bad man.

**Learn:**

The **Present Simple Tense** is used to express a habitual action or a universal or general truth or a proverb.

**Question-Formation in Present Simple Tense  
Yes, No, Answers of Questions in Present Simple:  
(Helping verbs 'does', 'do')**

<p><b>Verb+s</b></p> <p>He    She    It</p> <p>(Does)</p>	<p><b>Verb (infinitive)</b></p> <p>they    we    you    I</p> <p>(Do)</p>
---	---

**Read the following sentences:**

He plays on Friday. <b>Does</b> he play on Friday? Yes, he plays on Friday.	They always <b>swim</b> . <b>Do</b> they always swim? Yes, they always <b>swim</b> .
---	--

Yes, he <b>does</b> . No, he <b>doesn't play</b> on Friday. No, he <b>does</b> not.	Yes, they <b>do</b> . No, they <b>do</b> not always <b>swim</b> . No, they <b>do</b> not.
She does it everyday. <b>Does</b> she do it everyday? Yes, she does it everyday. Yes, she <b>does</b> . No, she <b>doesn't</b> do it everyday. No, she <b>does</b> not.	We <b>swim</b> on Mondays. <b>Do</b> we swim on Mondays? Yes, you swim on Mondays. Yes, you <b>do</b> . No, you <b>do</b> not <b>swim</b> on Mondays No, you <b>do</b> not.
It drinks milk every night. <b>Does</b> it drink milk every night? Yes, it drinks milk every night. Yes, it <b>does</b> . No, it <b>does</b> not drink milk every night. No, it <b>does</b> not.	I <b>read</b> books. <b>Do</b> I read books? Yes, you read books. Yes, you <b>do</b> . No, you <b>do</b> not read books. No, you <b>do</b> not.
Ali prays in the mosque. <b>Does</b> Ali pray in the mosque? Yes, Ali prays in the mosque. Yes, Ali <b>does</b> . No, Ali <b>does</b> not pray in the mosque. No, Ali <b>does</b> not.	You <b>like</b> apples. <b>Do</b> you like apples? Yes, I like apples. Yes, I <b>do</b> . No, I <b>do</b> not like apples. No, I <b>do</b> not.

### Wh-and How Questions Formation

#### Question in present simple by using Wh- and How:

**Read the following sentences:**

He cooks <u>at night</u> . <b>When does</b> he cook? He cooks (at night).	They sleep <u>in that room</u> . <b>Where do</b> they sleep? They sleep (in that room).
She goes to school <u>by bus</u> . <b>How does</b> she go to school? She goes to school (by bus).	You select <u>the red shirt</u> . <b>Which shirt do</b> you select? You select (the red) shirt.
He goes there <u>to study</u> . <b>Why does</b> he go there? He goes there (to study).	Salih meets <u>Ali</u> . <b>Whom does</b> Salih meet? Salih meets (Ali).
He comes here <u>twice a week</u> . <b>How often does</b> he come here? He comes here (twice a week.)	<u>Ali</u> teaches the students. <b>Who teaches</b> the students? (Ali) teaches the students.
They <u>plant trees</u> every week.	She <u>washes a room</u> everyday.

<b>What do they <u>do</u> every week?</b> They (plant trees) every week.	<b>What does she <u>do</u> everyday?</b> She (washes a room) everyday.
Ali drives <u>Rami's</u> car. <b>Whose</b> car <u>does</u> Ali drive?	They read <u>Dickens'</u> novels. <b>Whose</b> novel <u>do</u> they read?
Ali drives (Rami's) car.	They read (Dickens') novels.
It takes <u>an hour</u> to reach there. <b>How many</b> hours <u>does</u> it take to reach there?	They stay there <u>for two days</u> . <b>How long</b> <u>do</u> they stay there?
It takes (an hour) to reach there.	They stay there (for two days).

### Formation of Negative Sentence (Present Simple Tense)

Read the following sentences:

He plays football.	Ali drinks milk.
He <b>does not</b> play football.	Ali <b>does not</b> drink milk.
She cooks food.	Mona does the job.
She <b>does not</b> cook food.	Mona <b>does not</b> do the job.
It eats grass.	The cat hides there.
It <b>does not</b> eat grass.	The cat <b>does not</b> hide there.
They repair cars.	The boys play well.
They <b>do not</b> repair cars.	The <b>boys do not</b> play well.
We swim in the sea.	I and he eat together.
We <b>do not</b> swim in the sea.	I and he <b>do not</b> eat together.
You feed the horses.	I do the work.
You <b>do not</b> feed the horses.	I <b>do not</b> do the work.

Let's read and parse اعراب the Verbs in the following sentences:

1. They write letters.                      2. She reads books.

**Parsing:** اعراب

Write      Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, present simple tense.

Reads      Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, present simple tense.

#### Exercise (150):

Use the following sentences to form questions with their **Yes, No**, answers:

1. She always cooks food.
2. He sometimes eats meat.
3. The girls always clean the house.
4. It runs after the fox every night.
5. They meet the teacher every morning.

6. Ali writes a letter every month.
7. Fatima always prays.
8. Mona washes the room every day.
9. I give them many gifts every week.
10. He plants a tree every month.
11. You study English lessons daily.
12. It catches a snake every night.
13. They paint their house once year.
14. We prepare an Islamic film every year.
15. She does the job everyday.
16. The child cries every night.
17. A hen sometimes flies.
18. Ablution purifies the body and heart.
19. He has a lecture everyday.
20. They have a game every week.

**Exercise (151):**

Make **Negative** from the following sentences:

1. I entertain the audience.
2. She keeps the book.
3. They drive the car.
4. He smokes cigarette.
5. Mona asks a question.
6. You play chess.
7. They do the work everyday.
8. It runs after the foxes.
9. We visit grandfather every Friday.
10. She does the duty everyday.
11. The imperialist occupies others' land.
12. The Sahara stretches into Sudan.
13. The teacher thrashes the lazy boys.
14. She has a meeting every month.
15. They have a quarrel everyday.

**Exercise (152):**

Make **Wh-How Questions** to the following sentences:

1. She sleeps in the room.
2. They depart the house at 6 o'clock.
3. He goes to the cinema on foot.
4. It hides under the wood to catch a mouse.
5. I drink the cold juice.
6. Rami calls for him.

7. They collect wood.
8. He comes to school by bus.
9. She prays.
10. We meet Ali.
11. It stops there for three hours.
12. She visits the city once a month.
13. He writes books.
14. Sabir repairs Jabir's car.
15. It takes three hours to reach Kasala.

**Exercise (153):**

Choose the most suitable from a, b or c:

1. He often .....juice in the morning.  
(a) drink (b) drinks (c) drinking
2. We always .....chess in the club.  
(a) plays (b) playing (c) play
3. You sometimes.....camping in Karari.  
(a) going (b) goes (c) go
4. Good people generally.....Islamic way of life.  
(a) lives (b) live (c) living
5. I .....to my office everyday.  
(a) driving (b) drives (c) drive
6. My father .....to Tehran every year.  
(a) travel (b) traveling (c) travels
7. Samia and her sister.....go out without dressing scarves.  
(a) does not (b) not (c) do not
8. It frequently.....near the hole to catch mice.  
(a) hiding (b) hides (c) hide
9. He .....English at home.  
(a) does not speak (b) not speak (c) do not speak
10. Muslims often.....each other.  
(a) helping (b) help (c) helps
11. ....he eat breakfast everyday?  
(a) Do (b) Is (c) Does
12. Where does she usually.....the money?  
(a) keeps (b) keep (c) keeping
13. ....they sleep in this room every night?  
(a) Does (b) Do (c) Are
14. It .....not ..... meat everyday.  
(a) do /eat (b) does/eats (c) does/eat
15. Why.....some people always waste time in watching TV?



every morning?

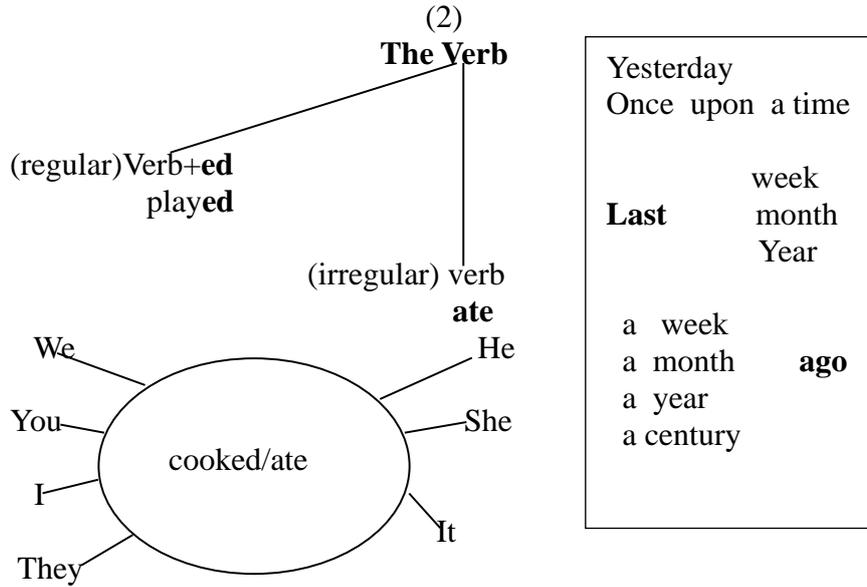
37. How many books .....they.....every week? (read)  
38. Whom .....they .....everyday? (meet)  
39. How often .....you .....there? (come)  
40. What .....she.....everyday? (do)  
41. What.....they.....every week? (do)

**Exercise (155):**

Parse اعراب the **Verbs** in the following sentences:

1. We plant trees. 2. He waters flowers. 3. I wash my clothes.

## Past Simple Tense ظرف الماضي البسيط



**Read the following sentences:**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. He <b>played</b> football last Friday. | 2. We <b>bought</b> a house last year.  |
| 3. She <b>ate</b> fish last night.        | 4. I <b>cleaned</b> the room yesterday. |
| 5. It <b>caught</b> a mouse last week.    | 6. They <b>washed</b> the dishes.       |
| 7. He did it yesterday.                   |   |

**The Past Simple Tense** is used:

- to express a **habitual action in the past**; as:
  - \* We played football **in the evening**.
  - \* He studied many hours **everyday**.
- to express simple action in the past; as:
  - \* Ali built a beautiful house.
  - \* He **never** drank wine.

**Note:** The words ‘in the evening’, ‘everyday’, ‘never’ are again used in the above sentences, but in sentences indicating the Past Simple Tense.

**Learn:**

The **Past Simple Tense** is used to express a habitual action that used to take place in the past or a simple action that took place in the past.

**Question-Formation in the Past Simple Tense**  
**Yes/No answers of questions**  
**(Helping verb 'did')**

**Read the following sentences:**

He played yesterday. <b>Did</b> he play yesterday? Yes, he played yesterday. Yes, he <b>did</b> . No, he <b>did</b> not play yesterday. No, he <b>did</b> not.	We <b>did</b> it last night. <b>Did</b> we do it last night? Yes, you <b>did</b> it last night. Yes, you <b>did</b> . No, you <b>did</b> not do it last night. No, you <b>did</b> not.
We <b>bought</b> a car last year. <b>Did</b> we buy a car last year? Yes, you <b>bought</b> a car last year. Yes, you <b>did</b> . No, you <b>did</b> not buy a car last year. No, you <b>did</b> not.	They <b>swam</b> yesterday. <b>Did</b> they swim yesterday? Yes, they <b>swam</b> yesterday. Yes, they <b>did</b> . No, they <b>did</b> not swim yesterday. No, they <b>did</b> not.
She cleaned it yesterday. <b>Did</b> she clean it yesterday? Yes, she cleaned it yesterday. Yes, she <b>did</b> . No, she <b>did</b> not clean it yesterday. No, she <b>did</b> not.	You watched a film last night. <b>Did</b> you watch a film last night? Yes, I watched a film last night. Yes, I <b>did</b> . No, I <b>did</b> not watch a film last night. No, I <b>did</b> not.

**Wh-and How Questions in the Past Simple Tense**

**Read the following sentences:**

He ate <u>the apples</u> . <b>What did</b> he eat? He ate (the apples).	She slept <u>in the room</u> . <b>Where did</b> she sleep? She slept (in the room).
They came <u>to see the doctor</u> . <b>Why did</b> they come? They came (to see the doctor).	It rained <u>yesterday</u> . <b>When did</b> it rain? It rained (yesterday).
They went <u>on foot</u> . <b>How did</b> they go? They went (on foot).	They <u>dug a well</u> yesterday. <b>What did</b> they do yesterday? They (dug a well) yesterday.
She fed <u>her child</u> . <b>Whom did</b> she feed? She fed (her child).	He selected <u>the white camel</u> . <b>Which camel did</b> he select? He selected (the white) camel.
Ali drove <u>Hasan's</u> car.	<u>Ali</u> wrote the letter.

<b>Whose</b> car <u>did</u> Ali drive? Ali drove (Hasan's) car.	<b>Who wrote</b> the letter? (Ali) wrote the letter.
He translated <u>Dickens'</u> novel. <b>Whose</b> novel <u>did</u> he translate? He translated (Dickens') novel.	It took <u>an hour</u> to make it. <b>How long did</b> it take to make it? It took (an hour) to make it.
They appeared <u>twice a week</u> . <b>How often did</b> they appear? They appeared (twice a week).	She stayed <u>for three hours</u> . <b>How long did</b> she stay? She stayed (for three hours).

### Formation of Negative Sentences (Past Simple Tense)

Read the following sentences:

He played last Friday.	She <b>ate</b> fish last night.
He <b>did not</b> play last Friday.	She <b>did not</b> eat fish last night.
It <b>caught</b> it last week.	They swam yesterday.
It <b>did not</b> catch it last week.	They <b>did not</b> swim yesterday.
I <b>bought</b> a house last year.	You did it last night.
I <b>did not</b> buy a house last year.	You <b>did not do</b> it last night.
Ali saved money.	We <b>cleaned</b> it yesterday.
Ali <b>did not</b> save money.	We <b>did not</b> clean it yesterday.

Let's read and parse اعراب the **Verbs** in the following sentences:

1. They wrote letters.
2. She read books.

**Parsing:** اعراب

Wrote Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, past simple tense.  
Read Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, past simple tense.

### Exercise (156):

Use the following sentences to form questions with **Yes, No**, answers:

1. Ali wrote a letter.
2. Fatima cooked food.
3. They made a car.
4. He ran after the dog.
5. You built a house.
6. She washed the house.
7. The boys completed the lesson.
8. Mona watched the film.
9. He fought the enemies of the country.

10. She broke the glass.
11. It fell down.
12. The boy forgot the lesson.
13. The man did the job.
14. The fox chased the hen.
15. The woman cut her finger.
16. The businessman built a beautiful house.
17. The bad girl committed suicide last night.
18. The bomb exploded.
19. He had an accident yesterday.
20. They had a quarrel last week.

**Exercise (157):**

Make **Negative** from the following sentences:

1. He became a doctor.
2. They planted a tree.
3. Samia cooked food.
4. Rami slept in the room.
5. We drank juice.
6. It chased the rat.
7. She did the task.
8. The snake crept towards the hole.
9. They found some money in the street.
10. The thief fled away.
11. We began our journey.
12. The wind blew through the window.
13. The dog bit him.
14. The boy shut the door.
15. He had a conference last week.

**Exercise (158):**

Make **Wh-How Questions** to the following sentences:

1. She wrote a letter.
2. They won the prize yesterday.
3. They passed the night in the mosque.
4. She came by car.
5. It took three hours to reach here.
6. Ali knocked the door.
7. They remained here for two hours.
8. He prayed.
9. They praised the Prophet Mohammed PBUH.
10. They visited the village thrice a month.

11. She bought Abbas' house.
12. I selected the green shirt.

**Exercise (159):**

Choose the most suitable from a, b or c:

1. They .....camping last month.  
(a) go (b) gone (c) went
2. Our army.....the battle a century ago.  
(a) win (b) won (c) winning
3. They .....their time yesterday.  
(a) did not waste (b) do not waste (c) does not waste
4. He .....early last night.  
(a) does not sleep (b) do not sleep (c) did not sleep
5. The uprising.....the corrupt government three hours ago.  
(a) overthrow (b) overthrew (c) overthrown
6. My father .....a good job last week.  
(a) get (b) getting (c) got
7. The two cars.....into the river last night.  
(a) fell (b) falling (c) fall
8. She .....to Khartoum in 1999.  
(a) comes (b) came (c) coming
9. He .....hard yesterday.  
(a) works (b) working (c) worked
10. The doctor.....the patient last night.  
(a) examined (b) examines (c) examining
11. ....he eat breakfast yesterday?  
(a) Did (b) Is (c) Does
12. Where did she .....the money last night?  
(a) keeps (b) kept (c) keep
13. ....they sleep in this room last week?  
(a) Did (b) Do (c) Are
14. It .....not ..... meat yesterday.  
(a) did /eat (b) does/eats (c) did/ate
15. Why.....some people waste time in watching TV?  
(a) did (b) are (c) does
16. Who.....our country from enemies last decades?  
(a) protected (b) protects (c) protecting

**Exercise (160):**

Fill in blanks with the verbs in the **Past Simple Tense**:

1. A thief.....the money from a bank last week. (steal)
2. They .....the room yesterday. (sweep)

3. Whom .....he.....last night? (meet)
4. He .....the door early last night. (shut)
5. We .....the match and.....the Cup. (win) (get)
6. The boy .....the stones into the river. (not throw)
7. She .....her finger yesterday. (cut)
8. He.....and.....the project a year ago. (start/complete)
9. What.....I.....last week? (do)
10. You .....the rent last month. (not pay)
11. ....he .....to you? (speak)
12. How many hours.....it.....to reach here? (take)
13. The robber .....the bank last night. (rob)
14. I .....the glass of the car yesterday. (rub)
15. The accident.....last week. (occur)
16. A criminal.....a child last month. (kidnap)
17. When.....they.....last night? (finish)
18. Why.....she.....hard last year? (study)
19. Who.....the door yesterday? (knock)
20. Which door.....he.....last year? (repair)

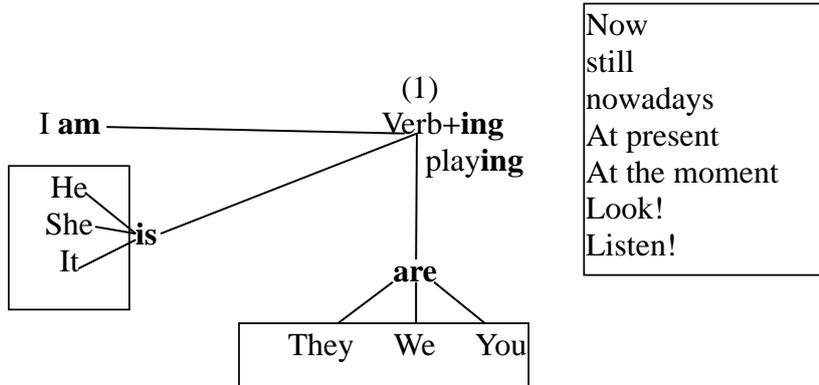
**Exercise (161):**

Parse اعراب the Verbs in the following sentences:

1. I planted trees. 2. He watered flowers. 3. I washed my clothes.

## Present Continuous Tense

### زمن المضارع المستمر



**Read the following sentences:**

1. I <b>am playing</b> now.	2. They <b>are swimming</b> now.
3. He <b>is sleeping</b> at this moment.	4. Listen! We <b>are singing</b> .
5. She <b>is cooking</b> at present.	6. You <b>are singing</b> at the moment.
7. Look! It <b>is eating</b> .	8. Listen! They are crying.

**The Present Continuous** tense is used:

1. To express an **action happening now** (at the moment/at present);  
as:

\* The girl is reading the Quran now.

2. To express **planned future arrangements** especially with verbs of movement: go, come, leave, depart, etc.; as:

\* Ali is leaving for Tehran next week.

\* The students are going to the school tomorrow.

\* I am meeting Ali tomorrow.

**Learn:**

The **Present Continuous Tense** is used to express an action which is going on at the time of speaking.

### Question-Formation in Present Continuous Tense

**Yes, No, answers of questions in present continuous:**

(Helping verbs 'am', 'is', 'are')

**Read the following sentences:****I am** listening now.**Am I** listening now?Yes, **you are** listening now.Yes, **you are**.No, **you aren't** listening now.No, **you are** not.**They are** swimming at present.**Are they** swimming at present?Yes, **they are** swimming at present.Yes, **they are**.No, **they are** not swimming at present.No, **they are** not.**He is** still playing.**Is he** still playing?Yes, **he is** still playing.Yes, **he is**.No, **he is** not playing.No, **he is** not.**You are** writing now.**Are you** writing now?Yes, **I am** writing now.Yes, **I am**.No, **I am** not writing now.No, **I am** not.**Wh-and How Questions in Present Continuous Tense****Read the following sentences:**He is sleeping in the garage.**Where is** he sleeping?

He is sleeping (in the garage).

She is washing dishes.**What is** she washing?

She is washing (dishes).

It is waiting for an hour.**How long is** it waiting?

It is waiting (for an hour).

They are coming by bus.**How are** they coming?

They are coming (by bus).

The pilots are flying a plane.**Who are** flying a plane?

(The pilots) are flying a plane.

They are using Sami's pen.**Whose pen are** they using?

They are using (Sami's) pen.

We are crying because he died.**Why are** we crying?

We are crying (because he died).

He is teaching the boy.**Whom is** he teaching?

He is teaching (the boy).

I am cooking two eggs.**How many eggs am** I cooking?

I am cooking (two) eggs.

It is chasing the brown fox.**Which fox is** it chasing?

It is chasing (the brown) fox.

They are cleaning the room.**What are** they doing?

They are (cleaning the room).

It is taking two hours to reach.**How many hours is** it taking to reach there?

It is taking (two) hours to reach there.

It is two miles away from here.**How far is** it from here?

It is (two miles) away from here.

I am visiting it once a week.**How often am** I visiting it?

I am visiting it (once a week).

## Formation of Negative sentences (Present Continuous Tense)

**Read the following sentences:**

I <b>am</b> eating now.	She <b>is</b> cooking at present.
I <b>am not</b> eating now.	She <b>is not</b> cooking at present.
He <b>is</b> building a house.	It <b>is</b> catching a mouse.
He <b>is not</b> building a house.	It <b>is not</b> catching a mouse.
They <b>are</b> playing now.	We <b>are</b> making bread.
They <b>are not</b> playing now.	We <b>are not</b> making bread.
You <b>are</b> repairing the car.	We <b>are</b> saving money.
You <b>are not</b> repairing the car.	We <b>are not</b> saving money.

Let's read and parse اعراب the Verbs in the following sentences:

1. They are writing letters.
2. She is reading books.

**Parsing:** اعراب

Are writing Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, present continuous tense.

Is reading Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, present continuous tense.

**Exercise (162):**

Use the following sentences to form questions with their **Yes, No**, answers:

1. They are cleaning the house
2. He is washing the room.
3. You are milking the cow.
4. The cat is chasing a mouse.
5. She is reading a book.
6. Ali is drawing a picture.
7. I am writing the lesson.
8. Fatima is praying.
9. It is eating meat.
10. I'm preparing my meal now.
11. She is drinking juice.
12. You are repairing the broken chair at the moment.
13. He is planting a flower at present.
14. They are doing the work now.
15. We are watching an Islamic film at present.
16. The driver is parking the car now.
17. The scorpion is digging a hole in the wall now.

18. The watchman is shutting the door now.
19. The criminal is committing a crime at the moment.
20. The bad boy is hitting the cow at present.

**Exercise (163):**

Make **Negative** from the following sentences:

1. Mona is washing the room now.
2. He is swimming at present.
3. They are writing at the moment.
4. Tariq is opening the door now.
5. She is preparing food at present.
6. Sami is eating now.
7. They are feeding the animals at present.
8. I am making food now.
9. I'm explaining the lesson now.
10. You are playing at present.
11. He is doing the task at the moment.
12. We are traveling now.
13. She is cooking at this moment.
14. They are threatening him now.
15. I am digging a well at present.
16. He is stopping the car at the moment.
17. They are planning a new project now.
18. It is diving into the depth of the sea at present.

**Exercise (164):**

Make **Wh-How Questions** to the following sentences:

1. She is keeping gold in the drawer.
2. They are coming at 5 o'clock.
3. He is traveling by plane.
4. It is coming here to eat food.
5. I am selecting the red pen.
6. Rami is standing at the door.
7. They are catching fish.
8. They are waiting here for five hours.
9. Tariq is watching the actor.
10. You are repairing the car.
11. They are washing Abbas' car.
12. She is going there thrice a month.
13. It is taking two hours to reach the city.
14. The city is five miles away from here.

**Exercises (165):**

Choose the most suitable from a, b or c:

1. Listen! Ali .....the Quran in his room.  
(a) read (b) reading (c) is reading
2. My sister and her friend.....their scarves now.  
(a) is ironing (b) iron (c) are ironing
3. I .....a book at present.  
(a) is writing (b) am writing (c) writing
4. Look! It.....milk at this moment.  
(a) drink (b) are drinking (c) is drinking
5. My father .....to the office now.  
(a) am going (b) go (c) is going
6. The train for Madani.....at this moment.  
(a) is leaving (b) leaving (c) are leaving
7. The teachers.....the exams papers at present.  
(a) is correcting (b) corrects (c) are correcting
8. Watch out! The lion .....at you.  
(a) stare (b) is staring (c) are staring
9. Be quiet! The children .....  
(a) is sleeping (b) are sleeping (c) sleeps
10. The workers .....a house at present.  
(a) is building (b) building (c) are building
11. Who.....our country against enemies now?  
(a) defended (b) defending (c) is defending

**Exercises (166):**

Fill in blanks with the verbs in the **Present Continuous Tense**:

1. Look! He .....a new car. (drive)
2. Listen! She .....the dirty clothes. (wash)
3. The horse .....in the street now. (run)
4. They .....their home work at this moment. (do)
5. You .....to the holy Quran at present. (listen)
6. We ..... English now. (learn)
7. The hunter.....the wolf now. (not shoot)
8. I .....a picture for the exhibition. (draw)
9. He .....a well for the poor people. (dig)
10. ....he ..... the film now? (watch)
11. ....you.....a house at present? (build)
12. ....I.....well in the training course? (perform)
13. Where .....they.....? (sleep)
14. Listen! The bird ..... (sing)
15. Look! Sami.....along the bank of the Nile. (walk)

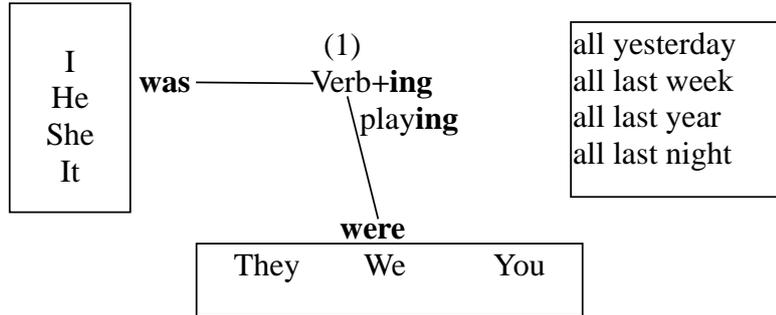
16. Look! I.....a new book about Ali Ibn Abee Talib (PBUH). (read)
17. They .....an Islamic program on the TV now. (watch)
18. What.....you.....now? (do)
19. I .....from Khartoum International Airport. (leave)
20. We .....our new house nowadays. (not paint)
21. Listen! The Mo'azin .....us for prayer. (call)
22. Students.....the school premise at the moment. (clean)
23. Scientists.....their best to find a treatment against cancer. (do)
24. They .....to their new house nowadays. (shift)
25. We...as hard as possible to increase our knowledge. (try)
26. Look! The farmer .....the tree. (cut)
27. The thief .....the bank now. (rob)
28. I.....my shoes at the moment. (not rub)
29. Look! The carpenters.....the wood. (split)
30. He.....a letter now. (write)
31. When.....they.....the shop nowadays? (close)
32. Why.....she still.....? (wait)
33. Who.....the door now? (knock)
34. Which door.....I.....at present? (repair)
35. How many workers.....now? (work)
36. Whom.....they..... now? (meet)

**Exercise (167):**

Parse اعراب the Verbs in the following sentences:

1. We are planting trees.
2. He is watering flowers.
3. I am washing my clothes.

## Past Continuous Tense ظرف الماضي المستمر



**Read the following sentences:**

1. She <b>was</b> writing a letter.	2. I <b>was</b> playing all yesterday morning.
3. He <b>was</b> reading all yesterday night.	4. You <b>were</b> sleeping all last night.
5. It <b>was</b> drinking milk.	6. They <b>were</b> swimming all last Thursday.
7. He <b>was</b> watching the TV all the evening.	8. We <b>were</b> cooking today morning.

**Learn:**

The **Past Continuous Tense** is used to express an action that began and continued for some time in the past.

### Question-Formation in the Past Continuous Tense

**Yes, No, answers of questions in the past continuous:  
(Helping verb 'was' , 'were')**

**Read the following sentences:**

<b>I was playing.</b> Was <b>I</b> playing? Yes, <b>You were</b> playing. Yes, <b>You were</b> . No, <b>you were</b> not playing. No, <b>you were</b> not.	<b>He was reading.</b> Was <b>he</b> reading? Yes, <b>he was</b> reading. Yes, <b>he was</b> . No, <b>he was</b> not reading. No, <b>he was</b> not.
She <b>was</b> doing the task. Was <b>she</b> doing the task? Yes, <b>she was</b> doing the task. Yes, <b>she was</b> . No, <b>she was</b> not doing the task.	<b>It was drinking.</b> Was <b>it</b> drinking? Yes, <b>it was</b> drinking. Yes, <b>it was</b> . No, <b>it was</b> not drinking.

No, <b>she was</b> not.	No, <b>it was</b> not.
You <b>were</b> sleeping. <b>Were you</b> sleeping?	We <b>were</b> cooking. <b>Were we</b> cooking?
Yes, <b>I was</b> sleeping.	Yes, <b>you were</b> cooking.
Yes, <b>I was</b> .	Yes, <b>you were</b> .
No, <b>I was</b> not sleeping.	No, <b>you were</b> not cooking.
No, <b>I was</b> not ( <b>we were</b> not).	No, <b>you were</b> not.

### Wh-and How questions in the Past Continuous Tense

#### Read the following sentences:

He was eating <u>in the kitchen</u> . <b>Where was</b> he eating? He was eating (in the kitchen).	They were playing <u>football</u> . <b>What were</b> they playing? They were playing (football).
She was here <u>to see them</u> . <b>Why was</b> she here? She was here (to see them).	Ali was meeting <u>Sami</u> . <b>Whom was</b> Ali meeting? Ali was meeting (Sami).
I was drinking <u>the cold juice</u> . <b>Which juice was</b> I drinking? I was drinking (the cold) juice.	<u>The boys</u> were playing. <b>Who were</b> playing? (The boys) were playing.
They were <u>baking a cake</u> . <b>What were</b> they <u>doing</u> ? They were (baking a cake).	It was <u>eating a piece of meat</u> . <b>What was</b> it <u>doing</u> ? It was (eating a piece of meat).
We were chasing <u>Tom's dog</u> . <b>Whose dog were</b> we chasing? We were chasing (Tom's) dog.	She was cleaning <u>Ali's room</u> . <b>Whose room was</b> she cleaning? She was cleaning (Ali's) room.
I was sitting <u>for hours</u> here. <b>How long was</b> I sitting here? I was sitting (for hours) here.	I was visiting him <u>frequently</u> . <b>How often was</b> I visiting him? I was visiting him (frequently).
She was sleeping <u>at evening</u> . <b>When was</b> she sleeping? She was sleeping (at evening).	We were traveling <u>by bus</u> . <b>How were</b> we traveling? We were traveling (by bus).
It was <u>a mile</u> away from here. <b>How far was</b> it from here? It was (a mile) away from here.	I was eating <u>two</u> eggs. <b>How many</b> eggs <u>was</u> I eating? I was eating (two) eggs.

### Formation of Negative Sentence (Past Continuous Tense)

#### Read the following sentences:

I was playing.	He was reading.
----------------	-----------------

I <b>was not</b> playing.	He <b>was not</b> reading.
She was writing.	It was drinking.
She <b>was not</b> writing.	It <b>was not</b> drinking.
They were swimming.	We were cooking.
They <b>were not</b> swimming.	We <b>were not</b> cooking.

Let's read and parse اعراب the Verbs in the following sentences:

1. They were writing letters.
2. She was reading books.

**Parsing:** اعراب

were writing Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, past continuous tense.

was reading Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, past continuous tense.

**Exercise (168):**

Use the following sentences to form questions with their **Yes, No**, answers:

1. He was swimming in the river.
2. Ali was drawing a picture.
3. The boys were learning the lesson.
4. I was reading a book.
5. It was running fast.
6. They were making juice.
7. Fatima was praying.
8. You were washing the room.
9. It was chasing a rat.
10. You were sleeping deeply.
11. He was shooting the fox.
12. She was singing a song.
13. It was drinking milk.
14. I was speaking to Ali.
15. We were sitting in the room.
16. They were thinking about the matter.
17. You were sweeping the room.
18. Sami was spelling the words.
19. The child was watering the flowers.
20. The girls were doing the work.

**Exercise (169):**

Make **Negative** from the following sentences:

1. He was taking medicine.
2. You were washing the dishes.

3. She was telling a story.
4. We were making food.
5. It was eating meat.
6. Ali was reading the Quran.
7. They were repairing the car.
8. Fatima was drawing a picture.
9. I was doing my duty.
10. You were stealing fruits.
11. They were swimming in the river.
12. We were sticking the pictures on the wall.
13. The thief was jumping over the wall.
14. The farmers were sowing seeds.
15. The guest was sleeping in the room.

**Exercise (170):**

Make **Wh-How Questions** to the following sentences:

1. He was grinding the wheat.
2. They were hiding the gold in the drawer.
3. It was sleeping with me at night.
4. It was taking three days to reach Elgolid.
5. He was visiting us to see his grandmother.
6. The boy was playing in the room.
7. We were ringing the bell.
8. He was washing the white shirt.
9. Husain was teaching the students.
10. She was traveling to Iran thrice a year.
11. He was repairing the TV.
12. They were building Ali's tower.
13. He was waiting for three days to see them.
14. They were traveling by plane.
15. The cars were five miles away from here.

**Exercises (171):**

Choose the most suitable from a, b or c:

1. The learners wrote the notes as the lecturer.....the lesson.  
(a) explains            (b) were explaining    (c) was explaining
2. The servant broke the plate while he ..... food.  
(a) heated            (b) was heating        (c) were heating
3. They could not go out because it .....  
(a) was raining        (b) were raining        (c) rains
4. While the children....., their father came.  
(a) are studying        (b) were studying        (c) will study

5. A boy.....when the teacher entered the class.  
(a) are shouting (b) were shouting (c) was shouting
6. I ..... a book when the telephone rang.  
(a) is reading (b) am reading (c) was reading
7. The child fell asleep while his mother .....a story.  
(a) is reading (b) were reading (c) was reading
8. Bakers.....sweets when customers bought from them.  
(a) was making (b) are making (c) were making
9. While Sami.....a film, Rami went to the market.  
(a) is watching (b) were watching (c) was watching
10. We .....food when they arrived.  
(a) was eating (b) were eating (c) are eating
11. Who.....the enemies when they invaded Sudan?  
(a) was confronting (b) is confronting (c) are confronting

**Exercise (172):**

Fill in blanks with the verbs in the **Past Continuous Tense**:

1. The dog .....the fox. (bite)
2. The birds .....in the sky. (fly)
3. The Mill workers .....the wheat. (grind)
4. My mother .....my small brother. (feed)
5. She .....the wet clothes. (hang)
6. Students.....the flag on the Independence Day. (hoist)
7. The rabbit .....over the bushes. (jump)
8. ....he .....the window? (shut)
- 9.....they.....their homework? (do)
10. What.....she.....all the day? (clean)
11. Why.....you.....all the day? (cry)
12. When.....they.....the shop all last week? (close)
- 13 Why.....she .....all the day? (wait)
14. Who.....the door all the night? (knock)
15. Which door.....I.....all yesterday? (repair)
16. How many pictures .....he .....all the day? (draw)
17. Whom .....Ali.....all the night? (teach)
18. How often.....they.....us all last year? (visit)
19. What.....he.....all the day? (do)
20. What .....you.....all the night? (do)

**Exercise (173):**

Parse اعراب the **Verbs** in the following sentences:

1. We were planting trees.
2. He was watering flowers.
3. I was washing my clothes.

**Remember:**

Some clauses which are formed by using (when, while and as) depend, partly or wholly, on Past Continuous Tense.

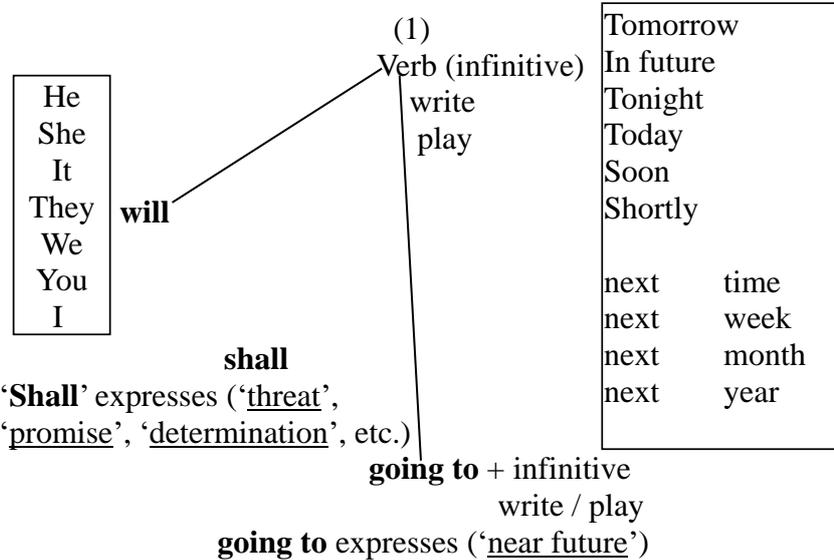
**Read the following sentences and examine the underlined parts:**

1. She was cooking food when her mother came home.
2. They played football while we were playing chess.
3. He wrote a letter as she was praying
4. We were eating food while she was cleaning the room.

For further details and practice, refer to the Adverb Clause of Time with *when, while, as*.

# Future Tense

## الزمن المستقبل



**Read the following sentences:**

1. He will write the letter tomorrow.	2. They will play football next week.
3. She shall build a house in future.	4. He is going to read the book tonight.
5. It will rain tonight.	6. I will receive a letter soon.

**Learn:**

The **Future Tense** is used to express an action that will happen in future.

*Note: There is growing tendency to use 'will' and 'going to' and avoid using 'shall' to express the future. 'Shall' is used to express 'threat', 'promise', 'determination', etc.*

### Question-Formation in the Future Tense

#### Yes, No, answers of questions (Helping verb 'will')

**Read the following sentences:**

She will sleep tomorrow.	They will win next time.
Will she sleep tomorrow?	Will they win next time?
Yes, she will sleep tomorrow.	Yes, they will win next time.
Yes, she will.	Yes, they will.
No, she will not sleep tomorrow.	No, they won't win next time.
No, she will not.	No, they will not.

He will go next year. Will he go next year? Yes, he will go next year. Yes, he will. No, he will not go next year. No, he <b>will not</b> .	You will come tomorrow. Will you come tomorrow? Yes, I will come tomorrow. Yes, I will. No, I will not come tomorrow. No, you <b>will not</b> .
--	--

### Wh-and How questions in the Future Tense

Read the following sentences:

He will sleep <u>in the room</u> . <b>Where will</b> he sleep? He will sleep (in the room).	She will come <u>at 5 o'clock</u> . <b>When will</b> she come? She will come (at 5 o'clock).
They will travel <u>by taxi</u> . <b>How will</b> they travel? They will travel (by taxi).	We will come <u>to see him</u> . <b>Why will</b> we come? We will come (to see him).
He will choose <u>the red pen</u> . <b>Which pen will</b> he choose? He will choose (the red) pen.	She will cook <u>vegetables</u> . <b>What will</b> she cook? She will cook (vegetables).
She will eat <u>three eggs</u> . <b>How many eggs will</b> she eat? She will eat (three) eggs.	I will ride <u>Sami's horse</u> . <b>Whose horse will</b> I ride? I will ride (Sami's) horse.
They will stay here <u>for a day</u> . <b>How long will</b> they stay here? They will stay here (for a day).	Ali will meet <u>Salih</u> . <b>Whom will</b> Ali meet? Ali will meet (Salih).
We will <u>study</u> . <b>What will</b> we do? We will (study).	I will go there <u>once a day</u> . <b>How often will</b> I go there? I will go there (once a day).

### Formation of Negative Sentences (Future Tense)

Read the following sentences:

She will prepare the food. She <b>will not</b> prepare the food.	They will win the match. They <b>will not</b> win the match.
He will do it next year. He <b>will not</b> do it next year.	You will study hard. You <b>will not</b> study hard.

Let's read and parse اعراب the Verbs in the following sentences:

1. They will write letters.
2. She will read books.

**Parsing:** اعراب

- Will write    Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood,  
future tense.
- Will read     Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood,  
future tense.

**Exercise (174):**

Use the following to form questions with their **Yes, No**, answers:

1. He will meet them tomorrow.
2. Ali will read the Quran today.
3. They will take medicine at night.
4. She will prepare food next time.
5. The boys will play football next week.
6. Fatima will help her mother in future.
7. I will bring water next time.
8. He will get the first prize next year.
9. She shall come tomorrow.
10. The teacher will teach students today.
11. Students will pass in exams next year.
12. It will rain today.
13. They will travel next week.
14. We shall help old men and women.
15. I will keep the money.
16. You will dine with the guest.
17. The boys will win the prize.
18. The girls will do the task.
19. I will sell the car.
20. She will have a lecture tomorrow.

**Exercise (175):**

Make **Negative** from the following sentences:

1. The dog will run after the fox.
2. The fox will jump over the wall.
3. You will make tea.
4. Fatima will pray.
5. They will clean the room.
6. She will wash the room.
7. It will catch the mice.
8. They will go to the park.
9. We shall repair our car.
10. You will do the work.
11. I will ride the horse.

12. The businessman will buy the villa.
13. The farmer will plant the tree.
14. The teacher will test us.
15. He will have a conference next week.

**Exercise (176):**

Make **Wh-How Questions** to the following sentences:

1. He will keep the goods in the store.
2. She will come at 5 o'clock am.
3. It will take three hours to reach Madani.
4. They will play football.
5. We will repair the machine.
6. You will visit El Hijaz to perform Haj.
7. I will travel by car.
8. She will drive Abbas' car.
9. The driver will drive the car.
10. The police will catch the thief.
11. He will visit them once a year.
12. Tariq will wash Salih's car.
13. They will select the green shirts.
14. We will wait for three days.

**Exercise (177):**

Choose the most suitable from a, b or c:

1. The student .....to school tomorrow.  
(a) going                      (b) will go                      (c) go
2. They .....the doctor tonight.  
(a) going to                      (b) is going to                      (c) are going to
3. We ..... you next month.  
(a) visit                      (b) shall visit                      (c) visiting
4. She .....fish tonight.  
(a) cooks                      (b) is going to cook                      (c) cooking
5. It .....tomorrow.  
(a) will rain                      (b) rains                      (c) raining
6. I .....read a book today afternoon.  
(a) going to                      (b) am going to                      (c) goes
7. He .....some money next month.  
(a) saving                      (b) will save                      (c) saved
8. I .....a new business next year.  
(a) start                      (b) starting                      (c) will start
9. You .....fail in today's exam.  
(a) are going to                      (b) goes to                      (c) going to

10. You .....in future.  
 (a) suffering (b) will suffer (c) suffers
11. Who .....us from future invaders?  
 (a) was protecting (b) will protect (c) protected

**Exercise (178):**

Fill in blanks with the verbs in the **Future Tense**:

1. We .....the poor people in future. (help)
2. I .....a new house next year. (buy)
3. He .....to me tomorrow early morning. (come)
4. She .....the highest mark in next exam. (get)
5. It .....fruits next season. (bear)
6. They .....the rent next week. (pay)
7. My mother .....me a story tonight. (tell)
8. ....I .....you tomorrow morning? (see)
9. ....he .....me English? (teach)
10. Where .....they.....the well? (dig)
11. Who.....the door tomorrow? (repair)
12. Which car.....I.....next week? (drive)
13. How many tables .....he.....tomorrow? (make)
14. Whom.....he.....next week? (meet)
15. What.....you.....tomorrow? (do)

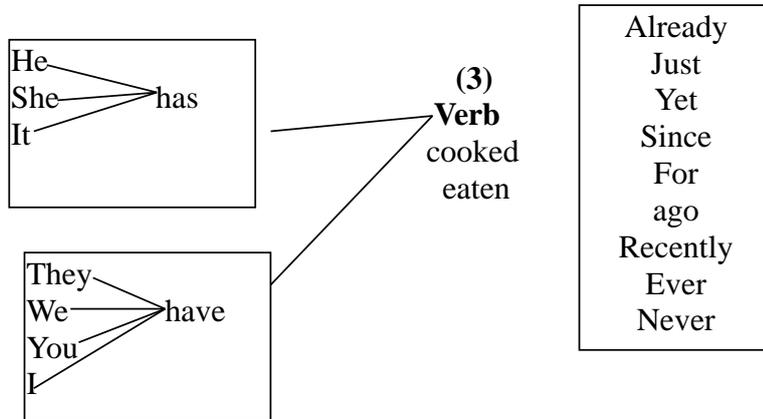
**Exercise (179):**

Parse اعراب the **Verbs** in the following sentences:

1. We will plant trees.
2. He will water flowers.
3. I will wash my clothes.

## Present Perfect Tense

### المضارع التام



**Read the following sentences:**

He has already eaten.	We have lived there for five years.
She has just gone out.	I have not played since last July.
Ali has been to Iran.	They have slept for three hours.
He has settled here recently.	You have come a week ago.
It has not yet appeared.	Have you ever seen a crocodile?
She has never watched TV.	She has been ill since last Sunday.

**Learn:**

The **Present Perfect Tense** is used to express an action that took place in the past and has just now been completed.

### Question-Formation in the Present Perfect Tense

#### Yes, No, answers of questions (Helping verbs 'has' , 'have')

**Read the following sentences:**

He has eaten food.	It has broken the glass.
Has he eaten food?	Has it broken the glass?
Yes, he has eaten food.	Yes, it has broken the glass.
Yes, he has.	Yes, it has.
No, he <b>has not</b> eaten food.	No, it <b>has not</b> broken the glass.
No, he <b>has not</b> .	No, it <b>has not</b> .
We have sold a house.	They have driven cars.
Have we sold a house?	Have they driven cars?
Yes, you have sold a house.	Yes, they have driven cars.
Yes, you have.	Yes, they have.

No, you <b>have not</b> sold a house. No, you <b>have not</b> .	No, they <b>have not</b> driven cars. No, they <b>have not</b> .
I have sung a song. Have I sung a song? Yes, you have sung a song. Yes, you have. No, you <b>have not</b> sung a song. No, you <b>have not</b> .	You have spoken fluently. Have you spoken fluently? Yes, I have spoken fluently. Yes, I have. No, I <b>have not</b> spoken fluently. No, I <b>have not</b> .

### Wh-and How Questions in the Present Perfect Tense

Read the following sentences:

He has traveled <u>by train</u> . <b>How has</b> he traveled? He has traveled (by train).	They have come <u>at 5 o'clock</u> . <b>When have</b> they come? They have come (at 5 o'clock).
<u>Ali</u> has met Hasan. <b>Who has</b> met Hasan? (Ali) has met Hasan.	They have taken <u>Jabir's pen</u> . <b>Whose pen have</b> they taken? They have taken (Jabir's) pen.
It has stopped <u>for an hour</u> . <b>How long has</b> it stopped? It has stopped (for an hour).	You have come <u>frequently</u> . <b>How often have</b> you come? You have come (frequently).

### Formation of Negative Sentence (Present Perfect Tense)

Read the following sentences:

He has eaten the apples. He <b>has not</b> eaten the apples. It has broken the glass. It <b>has not</b> broken the glass. We have sold the house. We <b>have not</b> sold the house.	She has done the work. She <b>has not</b> done the work. They have driven the cars. They <b>have not</b> driven the cars. You have spoken fluently. You <b>have not</b> spoken fluently.
---	---

Let's read and parse اعراب the Verbs in the following sentences:

1. They have written letters.
2. She has read books.

**Parsing:** اعراب

Have Written	Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, present perfect tense.
Has read	Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, present perfect tense.

**Exercise (180):**

Use the following sentences to form questions with their **Yes, No**, answers:

1. He has learnt English language.
2. We have bought a house.
3. The patient has taken the medicine.
4. Ali has prayed.
5. It has run after the mouse.
6. I have washed the dishes.
7. Sami has driven the car.
8. The boys have swum in the river.
9. The lion has caught a deer.
10. They have won the prize.
11. She has eaten the apples.
12. The cat has drunk milk.
13. Fatima has written the lesson.
14. They have frozen the meat.
15. I have sent the message.
16. We have ridden the horses.
17. You have done the job.
18. The girl has swept the room.
19. The man has spoken to the manager.
20. The children have slept in the room.

**Exercise (181):**

Make **Negative** from the following sentences:

1. They have fed the horse.
2. Ali has read the Quran.
3. We have driven the car.
4. Fatima has helped her mother.
5. I have drunk the juice.
6. He has taken his breakfast.
7. She has done the work.
8. The camel has eaten the grass.
9. They have understood the lesson.
10. We have beaten the thief.
11. You have begun the project.
12. The dog has bitten the boy.
13. I have broken the glass.
14. The fisherman has caught a big fish.
15. The rich man has built a nice villa.

**Exercise (182):**

Make **Wh-How Questions** to the following sentences:

1. He has drunk juice.
2. She has waited for three hours.
3. The dog has chased the fox to catch it.
4. They have fought the enemy in the battlefield.
5. We have traveled by the plane.
6. I have arrived at 6 o'clock.
7. You have driven the bus.
8. Tariq has repaired the car.
9. Jabir has met Sabir.
10. He has chosen the white car.
11. She has eaten.
12. They have received father's letter.
13. He has visited them once a month.
14. It has taken two hours to reach there.

**Exercise (183):**

Choose the most suitable from a, b or c:

1. They .....the meeting.  
(a) has cancelled (b) have cancelled (c) cancels
2. He .....the conference.  
(a) attend (b) have attended (c) has attended
3. I .....a terrible accident on my way to Madani.  
(a) have seen (b) see (c) has seen
4. It .....a mouse from that hole.  
(a) catch (b) has caught (c) have caught
5. I admit that you .....me.  
(a) helps (b) has helped (c) have helped
6. We.....our best to help her.  
(a) have done (b) doing (c) has done
7. Ali .....the enemy.  
(a) defeat (b) has defeated (c) have defeated
8. The boys .....that wall.  
(a) builds (b) have built (c) has built
9. They .....their old car.  
(a) repairs (b) has repaired (c) have repaired
10. I .....a delicious food.  
(a) has cooked (b) have cooked (c) cooks
11. Who.....already.....the work?  
(a) has /completed (b) was /completing (c) is /completing

12. What .....he.....?  
 (a) has /done (b) were/doing (c) have /done

**Exercise (184):**

Fill in blanks with the verbs in the **Present Perfect Tense**:

1. The scorpion ..... that man. (sting)
2. They .....to the park. (go)
3. She .....the food. (cook)
4. I .....about the idea. (think)
5. The foolish student .....the lesson. (forget)
6. We .....a new car. (repair)
7. You .....me about that matter. (tell)
8. ....I .....the money? (give)
9. ....she .....the fish? (fry)
10. Where .....you .....the gold? (keep)
11. When .....he.....the glass? (break)
12. Whom .....they .....? (meet)
13. How many cars.....he.....? (buy)
14. Which donkey.....you.....? (sell)
15. What .....I.....? (do)

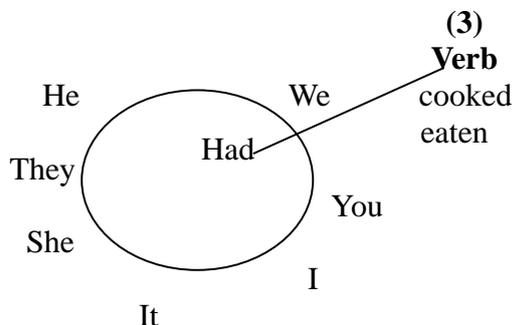
**Exercise (185):**

Parse اعراب the **Verbs** in the following sentences:

1. We have planted trees.
2. He has watered flowers.
3. I have washed my clothes.

## Past Perfect Tense

### الماضي التام



**Read the following sentences:**

She <u>had gone</u> out <b>before</b> he came.	They reached the airport <b>after</b> the plane <u>had taken off</u> .
He <u>had finished</u> the work <b>when</b> they came to him.	<b>By</b> the time she arrived, he <u>had left</u> the house.

**Learn:**

The **Past Perfect Tense** is used to express an action that had been completed or taken place before another was started or took place.

### Question-Formation in the Past Perfect Tense

#### Yes, No, answers of questions (Helping verb 'had')

**Read the following sentences:**

It had caught a rat. Had it caught a rat? Yes, it had caught a rat. Yes, it had. No, it <b>had</b> not caught a rat. No, it <b>had</b> not.	She had gone. Had she gone? Yes, she had gone. Yes, she had. No, she <b>had</b> not gone. No, she had not.
We had bought a car. Had we bought a car? Yes, you had bought a car. Yes, you had. No, you <b>had</b> not bought a car. No, you <b>had</b> not.	They had slept early. Had they slept early? Yes, they had slept early. Yes, they had. No, they <b>had</b> not slept early. No, they <b>had</b> not.
I had learnt English. Had I learnt English?	You had cooked fish. Had you cooked fish?

Yes, you had learnt English.	Yes, I had cooked fish.
Yes, you had.	Yes, I had.
No, you <b>hadn't</b> learnt English.	No, I <b>had not</b> cooked food.
No, you <b>had not</b> .	No, I <b>had not</b> .

### Wh-and How Questions in the Past Perfect Tense

#### Read the following sentences:

She had slept <u>in the room</u> .	They had eaten <u>eggs</u> .
<b>Where</b> <u>had</u> she slept?	<b>What</b> <u>had</u> they eaten?
She had slept (in the room).	They had eaten (eggs).
They had come <u>to visit her</u> .	<u>Mona</u> had eaten food.
<b>Why</b> <u>had</u> they come?	<b>Who</b> <u>had</u> eaten food?
They had come (to visit her).	(Mona) had eaten food.
You had seen <u>Sami's house</u> .	Ali had defeated <u>the enemy</u> .
<b>Whose</b> house <u>had</u> you seen?	<b>Whom</b> <u>had</u> Ali defeated?
You had seen (Sami's) house.	Ali had defeated (the enemy).
He had appeared <u>frequently</u> .	He had taken <u>an hour</u> to eat.
<b>How often</b> <u>had</u> he appeared?	<b>How many</b> hours <u>had</u> he taken to eat?
He had appeared (frequently).	He had taken (an hour) to eat.
I had waited here <u>for a day</u> .	They had sold <u>the red car</u> .
<b>How long</b> <u>had</u> I waited here?	<b>Which</b> car <u>had</u> they sold?
I had waited here (for a day).	They had sold (the red) car.

### Formation of Negative Sentence (Past Perfect Tense)

#### Read the following sentences:

He had eaten food.	She had done the task.
He <b>had not</b> eaten food.	She <b>had not</b> done the task.
We had bought a car.	They had slept early.
We <b>had not</b> bought a car.	They <b>had not</b> slept early.
I had learnt English.	You had cooked fish.
I <b>had not</b> learnt English.	You <b>had not</b> cooked fish.

Let's read and parse اعراب the Verbs in the following sentences:

1. They had written letters.
2. She had read books.

#### Parsing: اعراب

Had written Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, past perfect tense.

Had read Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, past perfect tense.

**Exercise (186):**

Use the following sentences to form questions with their **Yes, No**, answers:

1. She had become a doctor before I came to Sudan.
2. He had flown a kite when I reached the house.
3. It had fallen down by the time he entered the room.
4. I had driven the car when she asked me to park it.
5. They had dug a well before the extension of the public water pipe-line reached their house.
6. We had cut the fruits when he completed cooking.
7. You had bought a shirt before she stitched her blouse.
8. He had met Salih by the time they went to buy coal.
9. The army had defeated the enemy when they attacked the city.
10. Nadir had given the key to Jabir before he left.

**Exercise (187):**

Make **Negative** from the following sentences:

1. He had sent the letter.
2. She had sold her car.
3. It had seen a mouse.
4. I had rung the bell.
5. They had done the work.
6. We had made a table.
7. You had leapt over the wall.
8. The woman had cut her finger.
9. The police had caught the thief.
10. The boys had played chess.

**Exercise (188):**

Make **Wh-How Questions** to the following sentences:

1. He had shut the cat in the room.
2. She had cooked.
3. I had come by train.
4. It had taken five hours to reach Kasala.
5. They had left the city on Monday.
6. We had understood the lesson.
7. You had worked hard to get some money.
8. Fatima had fed her sister.
9. Mona had drunk juice.
10. She had cleaned the big room.
11. I had found Moosa's money.
12. She had come to the office once a week.



1. They **have** a **house**.
3. You **have** a **table**.

2. We **have** **pens**.
4. I **have** a **pencil**.

1. He **had** a **horse**.

2. They **had** **donkeys**.

## Present/Past Perfect Continuous Tense

### المضارع/الماضي التام المستمر

<b>Has</b> <b>Have + been + Verb + ing</b> <b>Had</b>
---

### 1. Present Perfect Continuous Tense

#### المضارع التام المستمر

**Read the following sentences:**

He has been waiting here since 6 o'clock am.	They have been playing tennis since early morning.
She has been cooking food for three hours.	We have been studying English for seven years.
It has been chasing a fox for the whole day.	You have been sleeping since yesterday night.
He has been swimming for two hours.	I have been writing a letter for an hour.

**Learn:**

<b>Present Perfect Continuous Tense</b> is used to express an action that began in the past and still going on.
---

### Question-Formation in the Present Perfect Continuous

**Yes, No, answers of questions in the Present Perfect Continuous (has/have + been + V+ ing )**

**Read the following sentences:**

He has been waiting since 1 o'clock.

Has he been waiting since 1 o'clock?

Yes, he has been waiting since 1 o'clock.

Yes, he has been.

No, he **hasn't been** waiting since 1 o'clock.

No, he **has not been**.

It has been chasing a fox for an hour.

Has it been chasing a fox for an hour?  
Yes, it has been chasing a fox for an hour.  
Yes, it has been.  
No, it **hasn't been** chasing a fox for an hour.  
No, it **has not been**.

We have been studying since morning.  
Have we been studying since morning?  
Yes, you have been studying since morning.  
Yes, you have been.  
No, you **haven't been** studying since morning.  
No, you **have not been**.

She has been doing it for an hour.  
Has she been doing it for an hour?  
Yes, she has been doing it for an hour.  
Yes, she has been.  
No, she **has not been** doing it for an hour.  
No, she **has not been**.

They have been playing since morning.  
Have they been playing since morning?  
Yes, they have been playing since morning.  
Yes, they have been.  
No, they **haven't been** playing since morning.  
No, they **have not been**.

You have been sleeping for two hours.  
Have you been sleeping for two hours?  
Yes, I have been sleeping for two hours.  
Yes, I have been.  
No, I **have not been** sleeping for two hours.  
No, I **have not been**.

### **Wh-and How Questions in the Present Perfect Continuous Tense**

**Read the following sentences:**

It has been chasing a fox for an hour.  
**What has** it been chasing for an hour?  
It has been chasing (a fox) for an hour.

They have been studying for three hours.  
**How long have** they been studying?  
 They have been studying (for three hours).

### Formation of Negative Sentence (Present Perfect Continuous Tense)

**Read the following sentences:**

They have been playing since morning.  
 They have not been playing since morning.

Let's read and parse اعراب the Verbs in the following sentences:

1. They have been writing letters for three hours.
2. She has been reading books for two days.

**Parsing:** اعراب

Have been writing	Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, present perfect continuous tense.
Has been reading	Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, present perfect continuous tense.

**Exercise (192):**

Fill in blanks with the verbs in the **Present Perfect Continuous Tense**:

1. I .....since 3 o'clock am. (study)
2. She .....for an hour. (work)
3. They .....English since 1999. (learn)
4. He .....bread for three hours. (make)
5. You .....me since last year. (promise)
6. We..... an intensive course for a week. (undergo)
7. The dog .....the fox since last night. (chase)
8. ....he .....for me for an hour? (wait)
9. ....they.....since 4 o'clock pm? (swim)
10. How long .....she .....? (sleep)
11. How long.....you .....with us? (stay)
12. What.....he.....for an hour? (do)
13. Whom.....they.....since morning? (meet)
14. Who.....here for an hour? (stand)
15. What.....we.....for a week? (do)

**Exercise (193):**

Use the following sentences to form questions with their **Yes, No**, answers:

1. He has been writing a letter since early morning.
2. She has been cleaning the kitchen for two hours.
3. It has been chasing a mouse since the dawn.
4. They have been playing football for three hours.
5. We have been reading a story since ten o'clock.
6. You have been doing a good work for three months.
7. I have been sleeping all the day.
8. The pilots have been flying the planes since 1978.
9. The cat has been sleeping on the bed an hour ago.
10. The girls have been wearing scarves since they were infants.

**Exercise (194):**

Make **Negative** from the following sentences:

1. He has been digging a well since last month.
2. She has been selling vegetables for ten years.
3. It has been drinking milk for ten minutes.
4. They have been stitching shirts for two days.
5. We have been watering the flowers since early morning.
6. You have been polishing the glass three hours ago.
7. I have been operating the computer for four years.
8. The nurse has been looking after the patient since yesterday.
9. The doctor has been in the surgery section for three hours.
10. The fishermen have been sailing their boats all the day.

**Exercise (195):**

Make **Wh-How Questions** to the following sentences:

1. He has been going to school on foot.
2. She has been frying fish when he came home.
3. It has been catching a mouse.
4. They have been coming here to visit us.
5. You have been sleeping in the room.
6. We have been visiting him during our annual holidays.
7. I have been watching the film when he came.
8. She has been cleaning the house for two hours.
9. He has been teaching in schools for three years.
10. I have been building the house for two years.

**Exercise (196):**

Parse اعراب the **Verbs** in the following sentences:

1. We have been planting trees since 5 o'clock.

2. He has been watering flowers for three hours.
3. I have been washing my clothes since early morning.

## 2. Past Perfect Continuous Tense

### الماضي التام المستمر

**Read the following sentences:**

1. He had been washing the room when the child fell down.
2. It had been standing here for three hours.
3. They had been attending the meeting since the morning.

**Learn:**

**Past Perfect Continuous Tense** is used to denote an action which had been going on before another action in the past.  
(had + been + V+ ing)

### Question-Formation in the Past Perfect Continuous

#### Yes, No, answers of questions in the Past Perfect Continuous

**Read the following sentences:**

---

He had **been** swimming for an hour when she came.

Had he **been** swimming for an hour when she came?

Yes, he had **been** swimming for an hour when she came.

Yes, he had **been**.

No, he **had** not **been** swimming for an hour when she came.

No, he **had** not **been**.

---

They had **been** catching fish for two hours when he left us.

Had they **been** catching fish for two hours when he left us?

Yes, they had **been** catching fish for two hours when he left us.

Yes, they had **been**.

No, they had not **been** catching fish for two hours when he left us.

No, they had not **been**.

---

### Wh-and How Questions in the Past Perfect Continuous Tense

**Read the following sentences:**

He had been washing the room when the child fell down.

**What had** he been doing when the child fell down?

He had been (washing the room) when the child fell down.

They had been studying for three hours.  
**How long had** they been studying?  
 They had been studying (for three hours.)

### Formation of Negative Sentence (Past Perfect Continuous Tense)

**Read the following sentences:**

They had been attending the meeting since the morning.  
 They had not been attending the meeting since the morning.

Let's read and parse اعراب the Verbs in the following sentences:

1. They had been writing letters when I visited them.
2. She had been reading books when I phoned her.

**Parsing:** اعراب

Had been writing      Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, past perfect continuous tense.

Had been reading      Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, past perfect continuous tense.

**Exercise (197):**

Fill in blanks with the verbs in the **Past Perfect Continuous Tense:**

1. I .....for half an hour when you phoned me.      (sleep)
2. She .....since 5 o'clock am when I reached there.      (cook)
3. They .....chess for three hours when I left them.      (play)
4. The child .....since early morning when I heard him.      (weep)
5. You .....there for three hours when I came.      (wait)
6. How long .....she .....?      (study)
7. How long.....you .....with us?      (work)
8. Which room .....they.....for an hour?      (clean)
9. What.....she.....for an hour?      (do)
10. Whom.....you.....since morning?      (meet)
- 11 Who.....here for an hour?      (stand)
12. What.....they.....for a week?      (do)

**Exercise (198):**

Use the following sentences to form questions with **Yes, No**, answers:

- 1.He had been fighting enemies for a year when I met him.
- 2.She had been washing the curtains for an hour when we came in.
3. It had been hiding to catch a rat for an hour when we expelled it

from the room.

4. They had been walking in the street for two hours when the accident happened.
5. We had been repairing the car for an hour when it fell down.
6. I had been planting trees for three years when we received the prize.
7. You had been painting the wall for three days when it collapsed.
8. Students had been undergoing tests for a week when teachers went on a strike.
9. The laborers had been loading the car for an hour when it exploded.
10. The sailors had been dropping anchors into the water when they saw sharks.

**Exercise (199):**

Make **Negative** from the following sentences:

1. He had been buying some shirts when I entered the shop.
2. She had been feeding the hens by the time they came in.
3. It had been building its nest when the eagle attacked it.
4. They had been washing cars when the ship sailed by them.
5. We had been binding books for two hours when he left us.
6. You had been watering flowers for an hour when he arrived.
7. I had been programming the Hard Disc for three hours when I phoned him.
8. The engineers had been building the villa when the government stopped them.
9. The policeman had been arresting a criminal when they found the drug.
10. The judge had been interrogating the culprits when he tried to run away.

**Exercise (200):**

Make **Wh-How Questions** to the following sentences:

1. He had been teaching in the school for five years.
2. She had been making cakes.
3. It had been hiding to catch the fox.
4. They had been swimming in the sea.
5. I had been practicing sports for ten years.
6. They had been weeping last night.
7. We had been traveling by a lorry.
8. She had been cleaning the house for two hours.
9. He had been teaching in schools for three years.

10. I had been building the house for two years.

**Exercise (201):**

Parse اعراب the **Verbs** in the following sentences:

1. We had been planting trees when the autumn season started.
2. He had been watering flowers when it rained.
3. I had been washing my clothes when he came.

## Future Continuous Tense

### المستقبل المستمر

**Read the following sentences:**

He shall be sleeping in the room tonight.

She shall be reading the story book tomorrow.

I will be eating my breakfast tomorrow.

They will be playing football next week.

**Learn:**

The **Future Continuous Tense** is used to denote an action that will be continuing in future. (will/shall + be +V+ ing)

### Question-Formation in the Future Continuous Tense

#### Yes, No, answers of questions in the Future Continuous Tense

**Read the following sentences:**

I will **be eating** breakfast tomorrow.

Will I **be eating** breakfast tomorrow?

Yes, you will **be eating** breakfast tomorrow.

Yes, you will **be**.

No, you will not **be eating** breakfast tomorrow.

No, you will not **be**.

He shall **be sleeping** in the room tonight.

Shall he **be sleeping** in the room tonight?

Yes, he shall **be sleeping** in the room tonight.

Yes, he shall **be**.

No, he shall not **be sleeping** in the room tonight.

No, he shall not **be**.

### Wh-and How Questions in the Future Continuous Tense

**Read the following sentences:**

She shall be reading the story-book tomorrow.

**When shall** she be reading the story-book?

She shall be reading the story-book (tomorrow).

## Formation of Negative Sentence: Future Continuous Tense

**Read the following sentences:**

They will be playing football next week.

They will not be playing football next week.

Let's read and parse اعراب the Verbs in the following sentences:

1. They will be writing the letters tonight.

2. She will be reading the books next week.

**Parsing:** اعراب

Will be writing      Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, future continuous tense.

Will be reading      Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, future continuous tense.

**Exercise (202):**

Fill in blanks with the verbs in the **Future Continuous Tense**:

1. I .....the conference tonight.      (attend)
2. He.....the cow tomorrow morning.      (milk)
3. They .....the match today evening.      (play)
4. She .....medicine next year.      (study)
5. We .....for you next holiday.      (wait)
6. You .....the new house next month.      (build)
7. ....he.....when I come today?      (sleep)
8. ....you.....tomorrow morning?      (study)
9. Where.....she.....next time?      (stay)
10. Who.....the guests tonight?      (receive)
11. Whom .....they.....tomorrow?      (meet)
12. Which car.....he.....next week?      (drive)
13. I .....trees next autumn.      (plant)
14. We.....at the gate tomorrow morning.      (stand)
15. She .....food tonight.      (cook)

**Exercise (203):**

Use the following sentences to form questions with their **Yes, No**, answers:

1. He shall be hunting rabbits tomorrow.
2. She will be cooking fish.
3. It will be waiting for the mouse.
4. They shall be playing football.
5. We shall be watching the football match.

6. I will be doing the homework.
7. You shall be swimming in the river.
8. The shopkeeper will be waiting for the customers.
9. The builder will be putting the final touch on the plan tomorrow.
10. The actors will be performing on the theater at night.

**Exercise (204):**

Make **Negative** from the following sentences:

1. He will be preparing his land for cultivation next week.
2. She will be baking the cakes tomorrow.
3. It will be raining tonight.
4. They shall be waiting for him tomorrow.
5. We shall be walking along the bank of the river today evening.
6. I will be sleeping when you arrive at mid night.
7. You will be cooking food tonight.
8. The woman will be cleaning the house tomorrow morning.
9. The man will be sowing seeds before sun-setting today.
10. The boy will be helping his father next cultivation season.

**Exercise (205):**

Make **Wh-How Questions** to the following sentences:

1. He will be studying in the room.
2. She shall be washing clothes in the bathroom.
3. It will be waiting for the mouse.
4. They shall be watching TV at 5 o'clock.
5. We will be traveling by train tomorrow.
6. I will be staying there to meet him.
7. You will be visiting them next week.
8. They will be meeting the headmaster.
9. The policeman will be standing at the gate.
10. He will be going there twice a week.

**Exercise (206):**

Parse اعراب the **Verbs** in the following sentences:

1. We will be planting trees next season.
2. He will be watering flowers tomorrow.
3. I will be washing my clothes tonight.

## Future Perfect Tense

### المستقبل التام

**Read the following sentences:**

1. By the end of June, I will have completed the project.
2. Before she comes, he will have finished his work.

**Learn:**

The **Future Perfect Tense** is used to denote an action which, at some time in future, will be in the past or will just have completed. (will have/shall have +Past Participle)

### Question-Formation in the Future Perfect Tense Yes, No, answers of questions in the Future Perfect Tense

**Read the following sentences:**

- By the end of June, I will **have completed** the work.  
Will **have I completed** the work by the end of June?  
Yes, you **will have completed** the work by the end of June.  
Yes, you will **have**.  
No, you will **have not completed** the work by the end of June.  
No, you will **have not**.
- 

### Wh-and How Questions in the Future Perfect Tense

**Read the following sentences:**

- Before she comes, he will have finished his work.  
**When will have** he completed his work?  
He will have finished his work (before she comes).
- 

### Formation of Negative Sentence (Future Perfect Tense)

**Read the following sentences:**

- He will have finished his work before she comes.  
He **will have not finished** his work before she comes.
-

Let's read and parse اعراب the underlined Verbs in the following sentences:

1. They will have written letters before you come.
2. She will have read books by the end of this week.

**Parsing:** اعراب

Will have written Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, future perfect tense.

Will have read Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, future perfect tense.

**Exercise (207):**

Fill in blanks with the verbs in the **Future Perfect Tense**:

1. The police .....him by now. (release)
2. I .....the project by next June. (finalize)
3. The wind .....when they move from here. (stop)
4. The academic year.....by next May. (finish)
5. He .....the mosque before the dawn. (reach)
6. She .....the room before 1 o'clock pm. (clean)
7. We .....our homework by 6 o'clock pm. (do)
8. ....they.....to the market before our arrival? (go)
- 9.....he.....into the class before the bell rings? (enter)
10. We.....him by the time he leaves his office. (meet)
11. Where.....he.....it by night? (hide)
12. What.....it.....by now? (catch)
13. Whom.....they.....by morning? (arrest)

**Exercise (208):**

Supply the correct tense of the **Verb** enclosed in brackets:

1. I (eat) my breakfast by the time the driver arrives.
2. She (finish) cooking food before I come.
3. They (complete) swimming by the time I reach the beach.
4. It (kill) the deer before you save it.
5. The ship (sink) by the time the rescue team arrives.
6. He (take) medicine before I advise him.
7. She (stitch) the shirt by the time they come to us.
8. It (reach) the station before we inquiry about them.
9. They (complete) the project by tomorrow.
10. We (catch) a big fish before sun setting.
11. He (repair) the car before you come.
12. She (put) the table in the dining-room before they arrive.
13. The fire (burn) the huts by the time we reached the village.
14. I (recite) the whole Quran before I reach the age of nine.
15. They (visit) us to see their friend before next June.

**Exercise (209):**

Parse اعراب the underlined **Verbs** in the following sentences:

1. We will have planted trees by the end of the summer season.
2. He will have watered flowers before the sun rises.
3. I will have washed my clothes by evening.

## Future Perfect Continuous Tense

### المستقبل التام المستمر

**Read the following sentences:**

1. By the end of this month, I shall have been cultivating that farm for ten years.
2. By the end of this week, he shall have been staying with us for a month.
3. We shall have been swimming in the Nile for three hours before they come.

**Learn:**

The **Future Perfect Continuous Tense** is used to denote an action which, at some time in future, will have been going on for some time. (will have/shall have +been +V+ ing)

### Question-Formation in the Future Perfect Continuous Tense

#### Yes, No, answers of questions in the Future Perfect Continuous Tense

**Read the following sentences:**

We shall have **been swimming** in the Nile for three hours before they come.

Shall have we **been swimming** in the river for three hours before they come?

Yes, you shall have **been swimming** in the Nile for three hours before they come.

Yes, you shall have **been**.

No, you shall have not **been swimming** in the Nile for three hours before they come.

No, you shall have not **been**.

### Formation of Negative Sentence: Future Perfect Continuous Tense

**Read the following sentences:**

By the end of this week, he shall have been staying with us for a month.

By the end of this week, he shall have not been staying with us for a month.

Let's read and parse اعراب the underlined Verbs in the following sentences:

1. By next hour they will have been writing letters for three hours.
2. She will have been reading books for an hour before we reach.

**Parsing:** اعراب

Will have been writing Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, future perfect continuous tense.

Will have been reading Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood, future perfect continuous tense.

**Exercise (210):**

Fill in blanks with the verbs in the **Future Perfect Continuous Tense:**

1. I ..... my homework before you come. (do)
2. He .....for an hour after she leaves. (study)
3. They .....in the sea since early morning. (swim)
4. She .....before her husband arrives. (cook)
5. We .....the items of program before the bus comes. (finalize)
6. They.....for two hours when she finishes cooking. (play)
7. You ....the laboratory before I complete the course. (set up)
8. Ali .....at the gate when I leave the house. (stand)
9. ....he.....when I come to your house? (wait)
10. ....they.....before I distribute the exam paper? (revise)

**Exercise (211):**

Supply the correct tense of the **Verb** enclosed in brackets:

1. That teacher (mark) the papers for a month by next week.
2. Ali (study) the holy Quran for a year by tomorrow.
3. Mona (do) the research for a year by next month.
4. They (wait) for you for an hour before you reach.
5. He (do) his work for an hour by the time they arrive.
6. When I (come) home, she will have been cooking food.
7. He (do) homework for an hour by the time we go to him.
8. She (paint) the picture for a week by tomorrow.
9. It (rain) for three hours by 7 o'clock pm.
10. We (buy) some gifts when you meet us in the market.

**Exercise (212):**

Parse اعراب the underlined **Verbs** in the following sentences:

1. By the end of this season we will have been planting trees for two months.
2. He will have been watering flowers for three hours before we reach.
3. When you reach, I will have been washing clothes for an hour.

## Since, For, Ago

**‘Since’** denotes **“from a definite point in the past till now”**; as:

		Point of time
1. He has been waiting since 6 o'clock.	since	6 o'clock
2. I have not seen him since Friday.		Friday
3. She had been staying here since 1990.		July
4. They had not seen the zoo since 1999.		1999

**‘For’** denotes **“a period of time till now”**; as:

		Period of time
1. He has been waiting for 3 hours.	for	3 hours
2. I have not seen him for 2 days.		2 days
3. She had been staying here for 14 years.		4 months
4. They had not seen the zoo for 6 years.		6 years

**‘Ago’** denotes **“from now and back to a point of time in the past”**; as:

		Point of time in the past	ago
1. He has been waiting an hour ago.		an hour	
2. I have not seen him 2 days ago.		2 days	
3. She had been staying here 14 years ago.		a month	
4. They had not seen the zoo 6 years ago.		6 years	

**Exercise (213):**

Add **‘since’**, **‘for’**, **‘ago’** where suitable:

1. She has been helping me .....ten years.
2. He has been writing to them.....1999.
3. I have been living here .....2000.
4. They have been in Tehran a year.....
5. He has not seen you.....a long time.
6. I have not drunk water three hours.....
7. She has not cooked any food .....two days.
8. We have written to him a year.....
9. You have been occupying this land ..... 1990.
10. It has been hiding to catch the mouse.....two days.

**Exercise (214):**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c:

1. I have not seen Ali .....he left to Iran.  
 (a) for (b) since (c) ago
2. We have not seen such a flood .....ages.  
 (a) for (b) since (c) ago
3. I have not seen an Indian film .....a long time.  
 (a) ago (b) since (c) for
4. The dog has been chasing the fox .....the morning.  
 (a) ago (b) since (c) for
5. I have not been to Dongola .....1999.  
 (a) for (b) since (c) ago
6. He has been talking to me .....three hours.  
 (a) ago (b) since (c) for
7. Ali has bought this house a year.....  
 (a) ago (b) since (c) for
8. Rami has been living in Kasala .....1990.  
 (a) for (b) since (c) ago
9. Rami has been living in Kasala .....ten years.  
 (a) ago (b) since (c) for
10. Jabir has left Niala three years.....  
 (a) ago (b) since (c) for

**Exercise (215):**

Rewrite as required between brackets:

1. The wind has been blowing since three o'clock. (use 'for')  
 .....
2. We have been waiting the arrival of the plane for ten hours.  
 (use 'since')  
 .....
3. Mona has been working in this company for ten years.  
 (use 'ago')  
 .....
4. They have been planting trees since 1990. (use 'for')  
 .....
5. We have not caught a deer for ten years. (use 'since')  
 .....
6. She has been taking-care of her parents since 2001.  
 (use 'for')  
 .....
7. It has been standing here for three hours. (use 'since')  
 .....

## Wh/How Question-Formation

### Learn:

What (things)	How (condition, manner)
When (time)	How long (length of time)
Where (place)	How far (distance)
Why (reason)	How often (frequency)
Whose (possession)	How much (money/uncountable nouns)
Who (people- subject)	How many (number/countable nouns)
Whom (people- object)	
Which (choosing)	

### Examine the following sentences:

1. You met Ali in the mosque.  
Whom did you meet in the mosque?
2. He goes to school at 6 o'clock.  
When does he go to school?
3. The students will come home by 3 o'clock.  
When will students come home?
4. Ali will go to Iran to visit Qum.  
Why will Ali go to Iran?
5. The child is crying because his mother went out.  
Why is the child crying?
6. He has bought the red car.  
Which car has he bought?
- 7 She was cooking meat.  
What was she cooking?
8. The weather was fine yesterday.  
What was the weather like yesterday?
9. Sami is washing Rami's car.  
Whose car is Sami washing?

10. He comes to school by car.  
How does he come to school?
11. They were sleeping in this room.  
Where were they sleeping?
12. He operated the machine carefully.  
How did he operate the machine?
13. Muslims pray five times a day.  
How many times do Muslims pray a day?
14. There are three beds in that room.  
How many beds are there in that room?
15. I bought two donkeys.  
How many donkeys did I buy?
16. A kilo of tomatoes is five Dinars.  
How much is a kilo of tomatoes?
17. I want a lot of sugar.  
How much sugar do you want?
18. He comes here twice a week.  
How often does he come here?
19. She had slept for five hours.  
How long had she slept?
20. He is looking for his book.  
What is he looking for?
21. Madani is five hundred Kilometers far from Dongola.  
How far is Madani from Dongola?
22. Ali is training hard so as to break the record.  
Why is Ali training hard?
23. I prefer the smaller cake.  
Which cake do I prefer?

**Exercise (216):**

Write **questions** to the underlined words:

1. I have seen Tariq yesterday.  
.....?
2. They come home at 9 o'clock.  
.....?
3. He will reach Madani by 6 o'clock.  
.....?
4. Fatima was coming to see her mother.  
.....?
5. The deer ran because it had seen a lion.  
.....?
6. They have lost the black boat.  
.....?
7. We were writing letters.  
.....?
8. The weather was cold last night.  
.....?
9. The police found Salih's money.  
.....?
10. I go to Dongola by plane.  
.....?
11. It sleeps in the kitchen.  
.....?
12. It rained heavily.  
.....?
13. She eats four times a day.  
.....?
14. Sinnar is two hundred Kilometers from here.  
.....?
15. There are sixty students in the class.  
.....?
16. We sold three cars.  
.....?
17. A kilo of onion is four Dinars.  
.....?
18. She drinks a lot of water.  
.....?
19. They will come here thrice a month.  
.....?
20. They had waited there for three hours.  
.....?

21. It is looking for its child.  
.....?
22. Sabir prefers the bigger house.  
.....?
23. Jabir practiced exercise so as to remain healthy.  
.....?

## Adverb Clause of Condition

شبه الجملة الظرفية الشرطية

### [Conditional Clause Type (0), If (1), Unless, Parallel Comparison, If (2), If (3)]

### Conditional Clause - Type (0)

شبه الجملة الشرطية- النوع (0)

**Read the following sentences:**

1. If you boil water, it turns into vapor.
2. If she freezes water, it turns into ice.

In sentence 1, 'it turns into vapor' is the **Principal Clause**. 'it turns into vapor' on the condition that 'you boil water.' 'If you boil water' is the **Subordinate Clause**. It is an **Adverb Clause of Condition Type (0)**.

In sentence 2, 'it turns into ice' is the **Principal Clause**. 'it turns into ice' on the condition that 'she freezes water.' 'If she freezes water' is the **Subordinate Clause**. It is an **Adverb Clause of Condition Type (0)**.

**Learn:**

**Zero Conditional Statement** is used to express universal truth, facts, obvious things and causes and consequences. It is formed by **Present Simple** in both; the Subordinate clause and the Principal clause.

If	+	<b>Present simple</b>	<b>Present simple</b>
		Subordinate Clause	Principal Clause

**The following sentences would give further explanation:**

1. If you put ice on fire, it melts.
2. Butter melts if you heat it.
3. If you do not study, you fail.
4. If it rains, the ground gets wet.
5. If you heat steel, it expands.
6. You get hungry if you do not eat.
7. If you drop a glass on the floor, it breaks.
8. You get fat if you eat fatty food.
9. If you lose a library book, you pay fine.
10. If you smoke, you damage your lungs.

## Conditional Clause - Type (1)

### شبه الجملة الظرفية الشرطية - النوع (1)

**Read the following sentences:**

2. If he goes to Iran, he will visit Qum.
3. She will cook if she gets cooking material.
4. If you are wise, then I am mad.
5. If he has a car, he will go to Madani.

In sentence 1, 'he will visit Qum' is the **Principal Clause**. 'he will visit Qum' on the condition that 'he goes to Iran'. 'If he goes to Iran' is the **Subordinate Clause**. It is an **Adverb Clause of Condition Type (1)**.

In sentence 2, 'She will cook' is the **Principal Clause**. 'She will cook' on the condition that 'she gets cooking material'. 'if she gets cooking material' is the **Subordinate Clause**. It is an **Adverb Clause of Condition type (1)**.

In sentence 3, 'I am mad' is the **Principal Clause**. 'I am mad' on the condition that 'you are wise'. 'If you are wise' is the **Subordinate Clause**. It is an **Adverb Clause of Condition type (1)**.

In Sentence 4, 'he will go to Madani' is the **Principal Clause**. 'he will go to Madani' on the condition that 'he has a car'. 'If he has a car' is the **Subordinate Clause**. It is an **Adverb Clause of Condition Type (1)**.

**Learn:**

**The Conditional Statement type (1)** is used to indicate that the condition is **possible** to be fulfilled and the result can take place. An Adverb Clause of Condition with If (1) is formed by Present simple in the Subordinate clause and the Future tense in the Principal clause.

If + <b>Present simple,</b>	<b>Future/modals(form 1) tense,</b>
<b>or</b>	
<b>Present form</b>	<b>Present form</b>
Subordinate Clause	Principal Clause

**The following sentences would give further explanation:**

If he comes, he will visit you.	If they play well, they will win.
He will visit you if he comes.	They will win if they play well.
If she studies, she can pass.	If clouds gather, it may rain.
She can pass if she studies.	It may rain if clouds gather.
If we are ready, he will come.	If I have a car, I will go there.
He will come if we are ready.	I will go there if I have a car.
If he is right, then I am wrong.	If she has a pen, she will write.
If <b>he</b> doesn't <b>have</b> a taxi, he will have a lorry.	If I don't have it, I will have another.

**Exercise (217):**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c:

1. If you .....hard, you will pass the exam.  
(a) works (b) worked (c) work
2. If he .....a taxi, he will reach the train.  
a. take b. takes c. took
3. If she doesn't .....proper dress, nobody will marry her.  
(a) wear (b) wore (c) wears
4. You.....sleepy in the morning if you go to bed late.  
(a) will feel (b) would feel (c) feeling
5. I will phone him if I .....his mobile number.  
(a) gets (b) got (c) get
6. If they don't practice well, they.....the match.  
(a) doesn't win (b) wouldn't win (c) won't win
7. If drivers are not careful, they.....a lot of accidents.  
(a) make (b) will make (c) made
8. If it rains tomorrow, we .....indoors.  
(a) stay (b) stayed (c) will stay
9. If she.....on time, she will catch the bus.  
(a) come (b) comes (c) came
10. He .....soundly, if he avoids drinking coffee.  
(a) would sleep (b) slept (c) will sleep
11. If they unite together, they.....the enemy.  
(a) could defeat (b) can defeat (c) defeated
12. We .....if she cooks a delicious food.  
(a) shall eat (b) eats (c) ate
13. If he sends his car for them, they.....  
(a) came (b) may come (c) coming
14. It can do the job if he .....it.  
(a) repaired (b) repairs (c) repair
15. We may come if you .....us.  
(a) invited (b) invites (c) invite
16. If they.....time, they will come to visit us.  
(a) has (b) have (c) had
17. She will prepare our meal if she .....not busy.  
(a) was (b) is (c) does
18. If he .....the book, he will get it for you.  
(a) had (b) have (c) has
18. If it enters the forest, it will .....a place to hide in.  
(a) had (b) have (c) has

**Exercise (218):**

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the **Verbs** given in the brackets:

1. If he drives very fast, he .....an accident. (make)
2. I will give him the money if he .....me. (meet)
3. If you.....mosquito net, you will sleep. (use)
4. If I .....in need, I will seek your help. (be)
5. We will not reach the bus if we .....up. (not hurry)
6. Pollution.....if we don't protect the environment. (increase)
7. He will attend it if he .....his duty early. (finish)
8. If she .....her English, she may fail. (not improve)
9. They .....him if he has the required qualifications. (help)
10. If I have time, I .....your marriage party. (attend)
11. If he ....., he will come. (know)
12. If we cooperate, we .....strong. (be)
13. They will run away if we .....them. (not tie)
14. I will wash my clothes if there .....water in the tank. (be)
15. Your fever .....if you take a tablet. (disappear)
16. You will ask for my support if you ..... in trouble. (be)
17. If we.....Allah, we will scare the enemy. (obey)
18. Sam .....us if we are strong. (not touch)
19. If a girl.....to Islam, she will get a good husband. (adhere)
20. We .....intellectually poor if we read a lot of books. (not remain)
21. He will reduce his weight if he.....physical exercises. (practice)
22. It will fall into the well if it .....to the garden. (go)
23. If he has time, he.....here. (come)
24. If they have money, they.....to India. (travel)
25. If you.....ready, I will take you with me. (be)
26. If I .....time, I will visit them. (has)
27. If he.....a car, he will sleep at home. (has)
28. If she.....money, she will not go. (not has)
29. If they.....land, they will buy a house. (not has)
30. If we.....strong, he will defeat us. (be not)
31. If she sleeps in the room, she will.....fever. (has)

- 32. If I start now, I will.....enough time there.      (has)
- 33. If he doesn't.....food, he will die of hunger.      (has)
- 34. If we don't.....proof, we will have claims.      (has)

## Adverb Clause of Condition

شبه الجملة الظرفية الشرطية

مالم/إذا لم Unless

**Read the following sentences:**

1. He will not get sufficient money unless he works very hard.
2. Unless they take him to the hospital, he will not survive.

In sentence 1, 'He will not get sufficient money' is the **Principal Clause**. 'unless he works very hard' is the **Subordinate Clause**. 'Unless' refers to a **negative condition**. It means 'if.....not'.

Unless he works very hard = If he does not work very hard.  
It is an **Adverb Clause of Condition with 'Unless'**.

In sentence 2, 'he will not survive' is the **Principal Clause**. 'Unless they take him to the hospital' is the **Subordinate Clause of Condition**.

Unless they take him to the hospital = If they do not take him to the hospital.

It is an **Adverb Clause of Condition with 'Unless'**.

**Learn:**

**The Conditional Clause type (Unless)** is used to refer to a negative condition. It means 'if.....not'. The result (or consequence) is either going to take place or not going to take place if the condition is either fulfilled or not fulfilled. An Adverb Clause of Condition with (unless) is formed by (Present simple + not) in the Subordinate clause and the Future form (can, may,) in the Principal clause.

If	+ he/she/it does not + <b>Infinitive</b> ,	<b>Future tense or will/won't + infinitive</b>
Unless	+ he /she/it + <b>Verb+s</b> ,	<b>Future tense or will/won't + infinitive</b>
	Subordinate Clause	Principal Clause

---

If	+ I /you/they/we do not + <b>Infinitive</b> ,	<b>Future tense or will/won't + infinitive</b>
Unless	+ I /you/they/we + <b>Infinitive</b> ,	<b>Future tense or will/won't + infinitive</b>
	Subordinate Clause	Principal Clause

**The following sentences would give further explanation:**

1. Unless she cleans the room, it will remain dirty.  
(If she does not clean the room, it will remain dirty.)
2. Unless he takes tablets, he will not recover.  
(If he does not take tablets, he will not recover.)
3. They will not come early unless they start early from there.  
(They will not come early if they do not start early from there.)
4. You will go bankrupt unless you save some money.  
(You will go bankrupt if you do not save some money.)
5. It will not catch the mouse unless it hides itself properly.  
(It will not catch the mouse if it does not hide itself properly.)
6. Unless I sell the old car, I will not be able to buy a new one.  
(If I do not sell the old car, I will not be able to buy a new one.)
7. Unless he is angry, he will speak to you.  
(If he is not angry, he will speak to you)
8. Unless they have morality, they will not be human beings.  
(If they don't have morality, they will not be human beings.)
9. Unless he has manner, I will not speak to him.  
(If he doesn't have manner, I will not speak to him.)

**Exercise (219):**

Rewrite the following clauses with (**if**) as shown in the examples below:

Example: Unless he works,

Answer: If he does not work,

Example: Unless he has a car,

Answer: If he does not have a car,

Example: Unless I am busy,

Answer: If I am not busy,

1. Unless they do it carefully,
2. Unless he goes to the office,
3. Unless she cleans her child,
4. Unless we are poor,
5. Unless I attend the class,
6. Unless we save energy,
7. Unless they grow wheat,
8. Unless food is available,
9. Unless he is intelligent,
10. Unless she calls us,
11. Unless they do their duty,
12. Unless he has time,

13. Unless they hide it,
14. Unless she feeds him,
15. Unless you find it,
16. Unless I forbid him,
17. Unless he forgives you,
18. Unless it is frozen,
19. Unless they have sense,
20. Unless they are found today,
21. Unless he challenges me,
22. Unless he does it,

**Exercise (220):**

Rewrite the following sentences using **(if)** as shown in the examples below:

Example: Unless you pay me the money, I will call the police.

Answer: If you do not pay me the money, I will call the police.

Example: Unless they are ill, they will come in time.

Answer: If they are not ill, they will come in time.

1. I should not pay a visit to you unless you visit us first,
2. Unless I do the job, they will not give me money.
3. You can't learn English well unless you study very hard.
4. Unless we use water resources carefully, we will face water shortage.
5. Unless she comes in time, she will miss the lecture.
6. Unless you possess sufficient vocabulary, you will not speak fluently.
7. He can't get admission unless he gets higher than 90%.
8. Unless I find the course effective, I will not opt for it.
9. Unless she disciplines herself, she will marry a bad husband.
10. It will not enter the room unless it finds it opened.
11. Unless we are disintegrated, they can't defeat us.
12. Unless he does the work, he will not depart the office.

**Exercise (221):**

Rewrite the following sentences using **(unless)** as shown in the examples below:

Example: Sleep early and you will catch the bus.

Answer: Unless you sleep early, you won't catch the bus.

Example: Go from here, otherwise (or) I call the police.

Answer: Unless you go from here, I will call the police.

1. Work hard and you will earn much.
2. Inform him now or he will not know what has happened.
3. If she does not cook, we will not find anything to eat.
4. Move at once, otherwise you will not reach the train.
5. If you do not apply now, you will not get the job.
6. Go slowly, otherwise you will fall down.
7. If I do not pay the electricity bill, they will disconnect it.
8. Drive carefully, otherwise you make an accident.
9. She will not wash it if she doesn't find the soap.
10. Attend the lectures regularly, or the teacher will be angry.
11. Wear hand-gloves, otherwise it will harm your hands.
12. Open the door, otherwise I will break it.
13. If they do not hang him, he will commit murder again.
14. Mend up your behavior, otherwise all people will avoid you.
15. He will not regain his health if he does not take the medicine.

**Exercise (222):**

Join each of the following pairs of sentences using (**if**) as shown in the examples below:

Example: Come early. You will find me.

Answer: If you come early, you will find me.

Example: He must attend my lectures. Otherwise he will not pass.

Answer: If he does not attend my lectures, he will not pass.

Example: Do you want to be respected? Respect others.

Answer: If you want to be respected, you must respect others.

1. He must leave now, otherwise he will not reach the symposium.
2. Take these tablets. You will get relieved from headache.
3. See a doctor immediately, otherwise the disease will spread all over your body.
4. Don't eat too much meat, otherwise you will have more cholesterol in your blood.
5. Go to Jabal Marra. You will enjoy its beautiful landscape.
6. Practice physical exercises. You will remain healthy.
7. Don't smoke. You will spoil your lungs.
8. Do you want to increase your knowledge? Read the holy Quran.
9. Drive slowly. You will reach your destination safely.
10. Call the police immediately. They will come to protect us.

## Parallel Comparison

### المقارنة المتوازية

**Read the following sentences:**

1. If we leave **early**, we will reach **early**.  
[The] **earlier** we leave, [the] **earlier** we reach.
2. If the weather is **warm**, I will feel **healthy**.  
The **warmer** the weather is, the **healthier** I feel.
3. If he studies **hard**, he will become **cultured**.  
The **harder** he studies, the **more cultured** he becomes.
4. If the milk is **pure**, its price will be **high**.  
The **purier** the milk is, the **higher** its price **is**.
5. If the books are **smaller**, they will be **easier**.  
The **smaller** the books are, the **easier** they **are**.
6. If I am stronger, I will be more famous.  
The stronger I am. The more famous I **am**.
7. If you train **well**, you will score **more** points.  
The **better** you train, the **more** points you score.
8. If he moves carefully, he will reach safely.  
The more careful he drives, the safer he reaches.
9. As he talks more, I become more bored.  
The more he talks, the more bored I become.

In each of the above sentences, there are adjectives or adverbs. The adjective may be in the positive form or in the comparative form and preceded by 'the'. When we use the sentence to create a **Parallel Comparison**, the adjectives must be in the comparative form. Thus, 'early' becomes 'earlier', 'warm.....healthy' becomes 'warmer.....healthier', 'hard....cultured' becomes 'harder.....more cultured', and so on. The form is as follows:

The + comparative word ---- the + comparative word  
(more/less-er) (more/less-er)

**Remember:** The verb 'be' becomes (**is, are, am**) according to the number or person of the subject. (See examples No. 4,5,6 in the above sentences)

**Exercise (223):**

Complete the second sentence without changing the meaning:

1. If the field is green, it will produce more grain.

The greener .....

2. If you practice more exercises, you will become strong.  
The more exercises .....
3. If the mobile call is longer, the bill will be high.  
The longer.....
4. If it rains heavily, it will be colder./The heavier.....
5. If the house is more luxurious, it will be more expensive.  
The more luxurious.....
6. If the weather is cold, I will feel hungry./The colder.....
7. If the axe is heavy, it will cut better./.....
8. If you leave soon, you will arrive early./.....
9. If you become weak, they will be aggressive./.....
10. As you wait more, you feel more impatient./ The .....
11. As he thinks deep, he becomes exhausted./.....
12. If a journey is long, it will be tiring./.....
13. If my gains are good, I will be ambitious./.....
14. If she is religious, she will feel secured./.....
15. If his intellect is poor, he will remain shallow./.....
16. If he becomes courageous, he will be famous./.....
17. If they are rebellious, they will be cruel./.....
18. If you are tall, you will become attractive./.....
19. If she remains silent, he will become suspicious./.....
20. If it is fierce, it will become dangerous./.....

**Exercise (224):**

Complete the second sentence without changing the meaning:

1. The more factories we establish, the more pollution they cause./  
If we establish more.....
2. The less fuel we burn, the less pollution it causes.  
If we burn.....
3. The more electricity we consume, the higher our bills are.  
If we .....
4. The more you eat, the fatter you become./If.....
5. The hotter the weather is, the more uncomfortable I feel./.....
6. The more books you read, the broader your mind is./.....
7. The cleaner our society is, the better our life is./.....
8. The better your playing is, the more goals you score./.....
9. The easier the lesson is, the faster we understand it./.....
10. The deeper your thinking is, the more convincing your ideas  
become./ .....
11. The more generous he is, the more popular he becomes.  
.....
12. The shorter her answers are, the more curious I am./.....

13. The wider the room is, the colder it is./.....
14. The ruder his reaction is, the angrier we are./.....
15. The worse its quality is, the cheaper it becomes./.....
16. The more they suffer, the more restless they are./.....
17. The more tents I provide, the more refugees I protect./.....

## Adverb Clause of Condition - Type (2)

### شبه الجملة الظرفية الشرطية - النوع (2)

**Read the following sentences:**

- 1.If he **had** money, he would give you.
- 2.If I **saw** him, I would tell him the fact.
- 3.If he **were** in the bus, she would see him.
- 4.If **I were** a king, I would jail you.
- 5.If they **were** generous, they would help the poor.

In sentence 1, 'he would give you' is the **Principal Clause**. He would give you on the condition that 'he had money'. 'If he had money' is the **Subordinate Clause**. It is an **Adverb Clause of Condition If (2)**.

In sentence 2, 'I would tell you' is the **Principal Clause**. I would tell you on the condition that 'I saw him'. 'If I saw him' is the **Subordinate Clause**. It is an **Adverb Clause of Condition If (2)**.

Similarly, in sentence 3, 4, 5, 'she would see him' 'I would jail you', 'they would help the poor' are the **Principal Clauses**. 'If he were in the bus', 'If I were a king', 'If they were generous' are the **Subordinate Clauses**. They are examples of **Adverb Clause of Condition If (2)**.

#### **Remember:**

In Adverb Clause of Condition If (2) it is possible to use the singular noun or the pronouns ('he', 'she', 'it' and 'I') with 'were'. (see examples: 3 & 4).

#### **Learn:**

**The Conditional Clause type (2)** expresses hypothetical condition, a supposition or a situation contrary to fact or not thought of as a fact. It is used to indicate that the result is impossible to take place because the condition is impossible to be fulfilled. An Adverb Clause of Condition with If (2) is formed by:

1. (had) in its possessive case; e.g. (Noun/pronoun+had+noun)+(would +infinitive).
2. Past simple: (Noun/pronoun + past simple + would + infinitive without to).

3. ('he', 'she', 'it' and 'I') + were:		
* (he/she/it[were]+noun/adj./verb)+(would+infinitive without to).		
* (They/we/you/I[were]+noun/adj./verb)+(would+infinitive without to).		
Pronoun/noun	<b>had + noun</b>	<b>would</b>
If + Pronoun/noun	<b>past simple +</b>	<b>could + infinitive without 'to'</b>
(he/ she /it [were])	<b>adj./verb</b>	<b>should</b>
(they/you/we/I [were])	<b>adj./verb</b>	<b>might</b>

**Inversion in conditional clause-Type 2:** Instead of using 'if' an auxiliary verb can be put before the subject: It is called 'inversion'.

e.g.:

Were he my father,.....(=If he were my father,.....).

e.g.: Were he my father, I would help him.

Moreover, if it is required to use a "verb to be", we say "I wish (**I/she/he/it were**)" and not "I wish (I/she/he/it) was" because we are speaking about something that has not actually occurred; the same as the rule in the above lesson of "If 2".

**Exercise (225):** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c:

- If he .....money, he would buy a plane.  
(a) had (b) have (c) has
- They would come if you .....them.  
(a) had invited (b) invite (c) invited
- If he ..... a leader, he would support Islamic views.  
(a) is (b) were (c) are
- They .....happy if we were with them.  
(a) would be (b) will be (c) are
- If I .....a soldier, I would defend my country.  
(a) am (b) were (c) are
- She .....food if you got the raw material.  
(a) will prepare (b) would prepare (c) prepared
- He .....repair the car if he found the keys.  
(a) could (b) can (c) will
- If they searched for him, they .....him.  
(a) may find (b) will find (c) might find
- They .....if they had enough time.  
(a) shall study (b) should study (c) will study
- If you.....earlier you would attend the meeting.  
(a) came a bit (b) come a bit (c) coming a bit
- If they united together, they.....the enemy.  
(a) could defeat (b) can defeat (c) defeated
- We .....if she cooked a delicious food.  
(a) should eat (b) eats (c) ate

13. If he sent his car for them, they.....  
 (a) came (b) might come (c) coming
14. It could do the job if he .....it.  
 (a) repaired (b) repairs (c) repair
15. We might come if you .....us to attend it.  
 (a) wanted (b) wants (c) want
16. Were you my son, I .....you all my property.  
 (a) would give (b) give (c) gave
17. Were she at my home, I.....her.  
 (a) protect (b) protected (c) would protect
18. ....he busy, he would inform us.  
 (a) was (b) were (c) is
19. ....they his neighbors, he would treat them respectfully.  
 (a) are (b) was (c) were

**Exercise (226):**

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the **Verbs** given in the brackets:

1. If you asked him politely, he .....the work for you. (do)
2. If I .....the thief, I would call the police. (catch)
3. I would remind him if he .....it. (forget)
4. If you studied hard, you .....the exams easily. (pass)
5. If I were you, I .....him. (help)
6. If she .....money, she would buy a house. (has)
7. You would study Medicine if you.....I. (be)
8. If he worked hard, he .....more money. (get)
9. He would learn English if he.....in  
 England for some time. (stay)
10. If she.....you, she would join an Islamic college. (be)
11. If drivers obeyed traffic rules, traffic  
 accidents..... (not occur)
12. If I knew his telephone number, I .....it to you. (give)
13. If they.....you, they would accept the offer. (be)
14. I would be grateful to her if she .....me. (help)
15. If they had time, they .....the meeting. (attend)
16. They.....us if we possessed  
 Atomic Bomb. (not attack)
17. I would live happily if I .....a good wife. (has)
18. She .....mad if she lost her honor. (be)
19. If we went there we.....him. (visit)
20. Were they in the party, they.....you. (see)
21. We could defeat them if we .....well. (do)

- 22. He should come early if he.....early. (start)
- 23. She might wash them if we.....soap for her. (buy)
- 24. Were she my daughter, I .....her. (help)
- 25. If it.....here, we would find it. (be)
- 26. ....he you, he would welcome us. (be)
- 27. ....they my friend, I would respect them. (be)
- 28. I would be comfortable if I .....money. (not has)
- 29. She would meet us if she.....classes. (not has)
- 30. If he did not have a car, he .....at home. (be)
- 31. I wish he .....my brother, but he is my friend. (be)
- 32. I wish she .....my mother, but she is my aunt. (be)

**Exercise (227):**

Rewrite the following sentences as shown in the example below:

Example: If he is a poor man, he will ask for help.

Answer If he were a poor man, he would ask for help.

Were he a poor man, he would ask for help.

Example: If he throws fruits, I will take them.

Answer: If he threw fruits, I would take them.

Example: If she has food, she will have dignity.

Answer: If she had food, she would have dignity.

1. If I buy a ship, I will sail it.

.....

2. If they save money, they will not suffer in future.

.....

3. If I am a soldier, I shall obey the officer.

.....

Were.....

4. If he has money, he will go to China.

.....

5. If she is a queen, she will conquer other countries.

.....

.....

6. If he does his work, he can join us.

.....

7. If they do well, they will be the best performers.

.....

8. If they have authority over us, they will kill us.

.....

9. If you leave early, you can avoid him.

.....

10. If she makes a cake, we will eat it.

- .....  
11. If I am rich, I will help the people in need.  
.....  
.....  
12. If he has knowledge, he will have social status.  
.....  
.....  
13. If it has a good engine, they will have a chance to buy it.  
.....  
.....  
14. If he is comfortable, he will stay for a long time.  
.....  
.....  
.....  
15. If it is there, we will take it.  
.....  
.....  
.....  
16. If I am well, I will do the work.  
.....  
.....  
.....  
17. If he doesn't have a meeting, we will meet him.  
.....  
.....  
.....  
18. He will help them, if they don't have money.  
.....  
.....

## Adverb Clause of Condition- Type (3)

### شبه الجملة الظرفية الشرطية - النوع (3)

**Read the following sentences:**

1. If he **had taken** medicine, he **would have recovered**.
2. If she **had eaten** food, she **would have slept** comfortably.

In sentence 1, 'he would have recovered' is the **Principal Clause**. He would have recovered on the condition that 'he had taken medicine'. 'If he had taken medicine' is the **Subordinate Clause**. It is an **Adverb Clause of Condition type (3)**.

In sentence 2, 'she would have slept comfortably' is the **Principal Clause**. She would have slept comfortably on the condition that 'she had eaten food'. 'If she had eaten food' is the **Subordinate Clause**. It is an **Adverb Clause of Condition type (3)**.

**Learn:**

**The Conditional Clause type (3)** expresses an implied negative. It is used to indicate that something ought to have happened in the past, but it did not. An Adverb Clause of Condition type (3) is formed by: Noun/pronoun+ past perfect+(would + have + Verb3).

**would**

If + Pronoun/noun + **had** + Verb3 + **could** + **have** + Verb3

**should**

**might**

**Inversion in conditional clause 3:** Instead of using 'if' an auxiliary verb can be put before the subject: It is called '**inversion**': e.g.:

Had I taken tablets,.....(=If I had taken tablets,.....).

e.g.: Had he eaten food, he would have taken tablets.

Moreover, if I am dealing with an event that **had happened**, and I wanted somebody to attend it, but he did not attend it, we say: I **wish** he **had attended** the event.

**Exercise (228):** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c:

1. If he.....food, we would have given him tablets.  
(a) eats (b) had eaten (c) ate
2. They .....him if he had asked for help.  
(a) can save (b) could save (c) could have saved
3. If she .....a car, I would have seen it.  
(a) bought (b) buys (c) had bought

4. You .....the job if he had given you a good offer.  
 (a) shall accept (b) should have accepted (c) accept
5. If he had told me about the matter, I.....about it.  
 (a) might have thought (b) may think (c) might think
6. The thief would have stolen it if I .....it outside.  
 (a) left (b) leave (c) had left
7. If we had not taken proper measures, the ship.....in the sea.  
 (a) sinks (b) would sink (c) would have sunk
8. I would have congratulated him if I .....him.  
 (a) meet (b) had met (c) met
9. If they had driven slowly, they ..... the accident.  
 (a) would not make (b) will not make (c) would have not made
10. It would have caught the mouse if it .....into the room.  
 (a) had entered (b) enters (c) entered
11. We .....something if we had tried hard.  
 (a) can get (b) could get (c) could have got
12. She might have accepted if he.....to her.  
 (a) proposes (b) had proposed (c) proposed
13. I .....it if you had told me yesterday.  
 (a) shall do (b) should do (c) should have done
14. If you..... money, you would have worked hard.  
 (a) have not had (b) had (c) had not had
15. They would have hung him if he .....  
 (a) did not escape (b) had not escaped (c) have not escaped
16. Had she gone there, she ..... him.  
 (a) will see (b) would see (c) would have seen

**Exercise (229):**

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of **Verbs** given in the brackets:

1. If he had eaten vegetables, he .....healthy. (stay)
2. If we.....rules, we would have avoided troubles. (obey)
3. If I had had enough money, I..... a new car. (buy)
4. If she had known Hindi, she .....India. (visit)
5. If he had not driven fast, he.....an accident. (not make)
6. We should have seen the film if we.....early. (arrive)
7. If he had.....about it, he.....an arrangement. (know/make)
8. We would have enjoyed the match if it ..... (not rain)
9. If I .....money, I would have bought a new shirt. (have)
10. It would have fallen down if you .....it. (not catch)
11. If she had come here, she .....you. (visit)
12. If he had paid money, he .....it. (get)

- 13. They would have won if they .....well. (play)
- 14. If he had got training, he.....the record. (break)
- 15. If he.....time, he would have left earlier. (not...has)
- 16. They might have taken it if they .....it. (find)
- 17. I could have done it if I .....money. (save)
- 18. You should have eaten if he.....food. (bring)
- 19. Had we seen him, we.....him. (tell)
- 20. ....I eaten, I would have slept comfortably. (has)
- 21. ....he had a house, I would have rented it. (has)
- 22. I wish he ....., but the food is still there. (eat)
- 23. I wish she .....in exam, but she failed. (pass)

**Exercise (230):**

Rewrite the following sentences as shown in the example below:

Example: If they attack us, we will defeat them.

Answer: If they attacked us, we would defeat them.

If they had attacked us, we would have defeated them.

Had they attacked us, we would have defeated them.

1. If he beats me, I will call the police.

.....  
.....

Had he.....

2. If she repairs it, it will run smoothly.

.....  
.....

Had she.....

3. If I am a king, I shall imprison you.

.....  
.....

Had I .....

4. If they have money, they will buy the farm.

.....  
.....

Had they .....

5. If he is the manager, he will help you.

.....  
.....

.....

6. If they do such things, he can dismiss them.

.....  
.....  
.....

7. If she doesn't know it, you will inform her.

.....  
.....  
.....

8. If he has a chance, he will visit you.

.....  
.....  
.....

9. If they go at night, they can catch a deer.

.....  
.....  
.....

10. If she gets some money, she may visit Iran.

.....  
.....  
.....

## Active and Passive Voice

**Remember:**

Before dealing with the lessons of Active and Passive Voice, the learner must be well conversant with the subject and object pronouns.

Subject pronouns	Object pronouns
He	Him
She	Her
It	It
I	Me
They	Them
We	Us
You	you

### From Active to Passive (Present Simple Tense) (*am, is, are*)

**Read the following sentences:**

1. She **went** to the school.
2. The cup **falls** on the floor.

In the above sentences, the verbs '**went**', '**falls**' have no object. They are called **Intransitive Verbs**. Such verbs have only one voice.

However, some verbs can be transitive in a sentence and intransitive in another; as:

\* A kite **flies** in the sky. (Intransitive)

Rami **flies** a kite. (Transitive)

A kite is flown by Rami (Passive)

\* Sugar melts in water. (Intransitive)

Water melts sugar. (Transitive)

Sugar is melted by water. (Passive)

**Note: Only transitive verbs have two voices.**

**Read the following sentences:**

1. Sami eats apples.  
 (subject) (verb) (object/plural)

2. Apples are eaten by Sami.  
 (object/plural)

In sentence 1, the Subject (Sami) of the transitive verb (eat) is the doer of the action. Therefore, the verb is in the **Active Voice**.

In sentences 2, the Object (Apples) of the transitive verb (eaten) does not act. It is acted upon. Therefore, the verb is in the **Passive Voice**.

Sami eats apples.  
 Apples are eaten by Sami.

**Note:**

1. The object of the verb in the Active Voice becomes the Subject of the verb in the Passive Voice; The Object (apples) in the sentence 1, becomes the Subject in sentence 2.

2. When the subject in the Active Voice is in the form of a pronoun, it turns into its object pronoun in the Passive Voice. Similarly, when the object in the Active Voice is in the form of a pronoun, it turns into its subject pronoun in the Passive Voice.

She helps them.  
They are helped by her.

3. In the Passive Voice, the third form of the verb is always used with the verb 'be'. The tense of the verb 'be' should agree in number and person with the subject.

We break the egg.  
 The egg is broken by us.

4. In the Passive Voice, the preposition 'by' must be placed before the subject.

He teaches us.  
 We are taught by him.

5. The Passive Voice in the present simple borrows the helping verbs of the present continuous tense (am, is, are) depending on the number of the object of the verb in the Active Voice.

They help me.  
 I **am** helped by them.

We break the egg.  
The egg **is broken** by us.

He teaches us.  
We **are taught** by him.

**Learn:**

The Passive Voice in the **Present Simple** borrows the helping verbs of the present continuous tense (**am, is, are**) depending on the number of the object of the verb in the Active Voice.

**Am**

Object + **is** + *Verb3* + by + **Subject**

**Are****More Examples:**

<b>Active</b>	<b>Passive</b>
He makes tea.	Tea <b>is</b> made by him.
It breaks the cups.	The cups <b>are</b> broken by it.
I do not like it.	It <b>is</b> not liked by me.
She does not eat them.	They <b>are</b> not eaten by her.
Do dogs kill foxes?	<b>Are</b> foxes killed by dogs?
Does she cook food?	<b>Is</b> food cooked by her?
Do they help me?	<b>Am</b> I helped by them?
Where do they keep the money?	Where <b>is</b> the money kept by them?
When does he eat eggs?	When <b>are</b> eggs eaten by him?
Who meets you?	By whom <b>are</b> you met?
Which pens does he select?	Which pens <b>are</b> selected by him?
Whose car does he drive?	Whose car <b>is</b> driven by him?

When parsing a verb, mention whether it is transitive or intransitive; and, if transitive, whether it is in the active voice or in the passive voice.

Now, let's read and parse اعراب the Verbs in the following sentences:

Dogs bark.

The food was eaten by the beggar.

**Parsing:** اعراب

Bark Verb, intransitive, active voice

Was eaten Verb, transitive, passive voice.

**Exercises (231):**

Change the following sentences into the **Passive Voice: (Present Simple)**: Use ‘**am, is, are**’ with the third form of the verb)

- |                                |                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. We eat food.                | 2. Do we play football?       |
| 3. They help me.               | 4. Does Mona clean the rooms? |
| 5. He solves the problems.     | 6. Do I write letters?        |
| 7. Does Ali drink tea?         | 8. She does not waste time.   |
| 9. Do they make cakes?         | 10. He does not read books.   |
| 11. Does she see me?           | 12. They repair the car.      |
| 13. I do not pay them.         | 14. It swallows eggs.         |
| 15. She washes the dish.       | 16. We teach students.        |
| 17. You ring the bell.         | 18. I draw a picture.         |
| 19. She keeps it.              | 20. Whose cat do we feed?     |
| 21. Which picture do we paint? | 22. Who washes them?          |
| 23. Why does it chase you?     | 24. When do we meet them?     |

**Exercises (232):**

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the **Verbs** given in the brackets to form **Passive Voice** sentences in **Present Simple**:

1. Eggs.....by him everyday. (eat)
2. Football.....by them every week. (play)
3. I .....by you every season. (help)
4. They.....by us every night. (keep)
5. He .....by me everyday. (chase)
6. We .....by her every night. (feed)
7. ....food.....by him every week? (cook)
8. ....cars .....by them every year? (buy)
9. Where.....the lions.....by them every night? (watch)
10. By whom.....he.....? (tell)
11. Which cars .....by her? (sell)
- 12.....chairs.....by him every year? (repair)

**Exercises (233):**

Change the following sentences into the **Active Voice: (Present Simple)**:

- |                                 |                                |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. It is broken by her.         | 2. They are attacked by it.    |
| 3. I am insulted by him.        | 4. He is called by them.       |
| 5. You are chased by it.        | 6. She is taught by me.        |
| 7. They are not cleaned by her. | 8. It is not repaired by them. |
| 9. By whom is he invited?       | 10. Why are they broken by us? |
| 11. Are we seen by him?         | 12. Is he brought by them?     |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 13. Which wall is built by him?         | 14. Where are the cups washed by them? |
| 15. Why is the deer eaten by the lions? | 16. When is food made by them?         |

**Exercise (234):**

Parse اعراب the **Verbs** in the following sentences:

1. The fish swims.
2. The foxes were chased by the dogs.
3. The cat drinks milk.

## From Active to Passive

### (Past Simple Tense)

(was, were)

**Read the following sentences:**

1. **She**                      drank                      tea.  
     (subject)                      (verb)                      (object)

Tea                      was drunk                      by **her**.

2. **He**                                      broke                      glasses.  
     Glasses                      were broken                      by him

**Learn:**

The Passive Voice in the **Past Simple** borrows the helping verbs of the past continuous tense (**was, were**) depending on the number of the object of the verb in the Active Voice.

**Was**

Object +                      + Verb3 + by + Subject

**Were**

**More Examples:**

Active	Passive
He made tea.	Tea <b>was</b> made by him.
It broke the cups.	The cups <b>were</b> broken by it.
I did not like it.	It <b>was</b> not liked by me.
She did not eat them.	They <b>were</b> not eaten by her.
Did dogs kill foxes?	<b>Were</b> foxes killed by dogs?
Did she cook food?	<b>Was</b> food cooked by her?
Did they help me?	<b>Was</b> I helped by them?
Where did they keep money?	Where <b>was</b> money kept by them?
When did he eat apples?	When <b>were</b> apples eaten by him?
Who met you?	By whom <b>were</b> you met?
Which pens did he select?	Which pens <b>were</b> selected by him?

**Exercises (235):**

Change the following sentences into the **Passive Voice: (Past Simple: Use 'was, were' with the third form of the verb)**

- |                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. He bought a donkey.  | 2. She brought bananas.    |
| 3. They drove the cars. | 4. We did not forget them. |

- |                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 5. I planted a tree.              | 6. He saw us.                     |
| 7. Did I teach them?              | 8. Did they build the house?      |
| 9. Where did he repair machines?  | 10. Why did they make it?         |
| 11. It left him.                  | 12. Ali paid Ahmed.               |
| 13. When did he tell them?        | 14. She did not write the letter. |
| 15. Did we take it?               | 16. Did you ring it?              |
| 17. The scorpion stung him.       | 18. It tore them.                 |
| 19. They jailed you.              | 20. Whose book did he read?       |
| 21. We did it.                    | 22. She read the books.           |
| 23. Which picture did they paint? | 24. Who repaired them?            |
| 25. They did not complete it.     | 26. She did not detect them.      |

**Exercises (236):**

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the **Verbs** given in the brackets to form **Passive Voice** sentences in **Past Simple**:

1. Eggs.....by him yesterday. (eat)
2. Football.....by them last week. (play)
3. I .....by you a month ago. (help)
4. They.....by us last night. (keep)
5. He .....by me yesterday. (chase)
6. We .....by her last night. (feed)
7. ....food.....by him last week? (cook)
8. ....cars.....by them a year ago? (sell)
9. Where.....the lions.....by them last night? (watch)
10. By whom .....she .....in the market? (meet)
11. By whom.....they.....? (tell)
12. Which cars.....by her? (buy)
13. Whose money.....by him? (find)
- 14.....chairs.....by him last year? (repair)

**Exercises (237):**

Change the following sentences into the **Active Voice: (Past Simple)**:

- |                                 |                                 |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. It was broken by her.        | 2. They were attacked by it.    |
| 3. I was insulted by him.       | 4. He was called by them.       |
| 5. You were chased by it.       | 6. She was taught by me.        |
| 7. They were not cleaned by me. | 8. It was not repaired by them. |
| 9. By whom was he invited?      | 10. Why were they broken by us? |

- |                              |                                    |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 11. Were we seen by him?     | 12. Was he brought by them?        |
| 13. Which shirt was made us? | 14. Where was it hidden by<br>you? |



Which dog are they feeding?	Which dog <b>is being</b> fed by them?
Whose bus are we renting?	Whose bus <b>is being</b> rented by us?

**Exercises (238):**

Change the following sentences into the **Passive Voice**:  
**(Present Continuous and Past Continuous Tenses: Use 'being'**  
 with the third form of the verb)

- |                                |                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. I am frying eggs.           | 2. They are playing football. |
| 3. He is not catching birds.   | 4. You are not meeting him.   |
| 5. She is teaching them.       | 6. You are eating it.         |
| 7. Is he repairing the cars?   | 8. Are they calling me?       |
| 9. Where are they planting it? | 10. When is he getting them?  |
| 11. Who is teaching you?       | 12. You were not shooting me. |
| 13. I was not reading stories. | 14. He was writing a letter.  |
| 15. She was holding the flag.  | 16. It was chasing foxes.     |
| 17. Was she washing rooms?     | 18. Were we drawing it?       |
| 19. Was I speaking the truth?  | 20. Was he throwing stones?   |
| 21. Were they seeing me?       | 22. Where was he feeding it?  |
| 23. Who was meeting her?       | 24. When were you eating it?  |
| 25. Which door is he painting? | 26. Why was she making them?  |
| 27. Whose door am I knocking?  | 28. Are they doing the work?  |

**Exercises (239):**

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the **Verbs** given in the brackets to form **Passive Voice** sentences in **Present Continuous Tense**:

1. Eggs.....by him now. (eat)
2. Football.....by them at present. (play)
3. I .....by you at the moment. (help)
5. They.....by us now. (keep)
6. Look! He .....by me. (chase)
7. We .....by her at present. (feed)
8. ....food.....by him at present? (cook)
9. ....cars.....by them now? (sell)
10. Where.....the lions.....by them now? (watch)
11. By whom .....he.....now? (tell)
12. Which tables.....by them now? (make)
- 13.....chairs.....by him now? (repair)
- 14.....I.....by her now? (expel)
- 15.....she.....by them now? (cheat)
- 16.....they.....by me now? (clean)
17. ....it.....by us now? (water)

- 18.....you.....by him now? (search)  
 19.....I.....by you now? (hide)

**Exercises (240):**

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the **Verbs** given in the brackets to form **Passive Voice** sentences in **Past Continuous Tense**:

1. Eggs.....by him all the day. (eat)
2. Football.....by them all the day. (play)
3. I .....by you all yesterday. (help)
4. They.....by us all last night. (keep)
5. He .....by me all last week. (chase)
6. We .....by her all last year. (feed)
7. ....food.....by him all yesterday? (cook)
8. ....cars .....by them all last year? (sell)
9. Where.....the lions.....by them all the day? (watch)
10. By whom .....he.....? (tell)
11. Which books.....by them? (write)
12. Whose TV.....by her all the day? (buy)
- 13.....chairs.....by him all yesterday? (repair)
- 14.....I.....by her all the day? (expel)
- 15.....she.....by them all the day? (cheat)
- 16.....they.....by me all the day? (clean)
17. ....it.....by us all the day? (water)
- 18.....you.....by him all the day? (search)
- 19.....I.....by you all the day? (hide)

**Exercises (241):**

Change the following sentences into the **Active Voice: (Present Continuous and Past Continuous Tense)**:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. It is being broken by her.</li> <li>3. I am being insulted by him.</li> <li>5. You are being chased by it.</li> <li>7. They are not being cleaned by her.</li> <li>9. By whom is he being invited?</li> <li>11. Are we being seen by him?</li> <li>13. We were being addressed by her.</li> <li>15. Were you being treated by him?</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. They are being attacked by it.</li> <li>4. He is being called by them.</li> <li>6. She is being taught by me.</li> <li>8. It is not being repaired by them.</li> <li>10. Why are they being broken by us?</li> <li>12. Is he being hidden by them?</li> <li>14. He was being rescued by them.</li> <li>16. Was she being honored by us?</li> </ol> |
|---|--|

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 17. By whom was he being threatened?         | 18. Where were you being imprisoned by him? |
| 19. Which mouse was being eaten by the cats? | 20. When are they being driven by him?      |

## From Active to Passive (Future Tense and the Modals) (be)

Read the following sentences:

Active	Passive
He will repair the cars.	Cars will <b>be</b> repaired by him.
She would cook food.	Food would <b>be</b> cooked by her.
We shall pay the money.	The money shall <b>be</b> paid by us.
I should attend the class.	The class should <b>be</b> attended by me.
You can teach English.	English can <b>be</b> taught by you.
I could spell the words.	The words could <b>be</b> spelt by me.
He may sell the house.	The house may <b>be</b> sold by him.
They might hunt a deer.	A deer might <b>be</b> hunted by them.
It must catch the rat.	The rat must <b>be</b> caught by it.
He has to pay the rents	The rents have to <b>be</b> paid by him.
We have to collect money.	Money has to <b>be</b> collected by us.
She needn't speak a word.	A word needn't <b>be</b> spoken by her.
You daren't attack me.	I daren't <b>be</b> attacked by you.
He ought to see them.	They ought to <b>be</b> seen by him.
I had to remove him.	He had to <b>be</b> removed by me.
He has got to eat them.	They have got to <b>be</b> eaten by him.
I am going to clean them.	They are going to <b>be</b> cleaned by me.

**Learn:**

The Passive Voice in the **Future/Modals** gets the helping verb (**be**) before the third form of the verb.

Will/would/can/could

Object + shall/should/may/might + **be**+Verb3 + by + Subject

Must/had to

**More Examples:**

Active	Passive
He will make tea.	Tea will <b>be</b> made by him.
I may like it.	It may <b>be</b> liked by me.
They can eat apples.	Apples can <b>be</b> eaten by them.
She shall call me.	I shall <b>be</b> called by her.
Will they help me?	Will I <b>be</b> helped by them?
Where might they keep money?	Where might money <b>be</b> kept by them?
When would he eat eggs?	When would eggs <b>be</b> eaten by him?

It can break the cup.	The cup can <b>be</b> broken by it.
She must not eat them.	They must not <b>be</b> eaten by her.
Could dogs kill foxes?	<b>Could</b> foxes <b>be</b> killed by dogs?
Will she cook food?	<b>Will</b> food <b>be</b> cooked by her?
Who shall meet you?	By whom shall you <b>be</b> met?
Which film will he watch?	Which film will <b>be</b> watched by him?
Whose shirt will he wear?	Whose shirt will <b>be</b> worn by him?

**Exercises (242):**

Change the following sentences into the **Passive Voice**:

(**Future Tense and modal verbs (can/could, may/might, must/had to, will/would, shall/should, ought to)**, in addition to (**used to, has to, have to, dare/dare not, need, going to, have got to, has got to, had got to**): Use 'be' with the third form of the verb)

- |                                 |                                |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. He will beat the drums.      | 2. They can repair the car.    |
| 3. She had to eat food.         | 4. We should inform them.      |
| 5. I would tell you.            | 6. You could clean it.         |
| 7. It shall guard the house.    | 8. He must attend the meeting. |
| 9. Will you save money?         | 10. Can he speak English?      |
| 11. Must they jail you?         | 12. Would I break the promise? |
| 13. Where will he build it?     | 14. Which lion can they feed?  |
| 15. Who may help you?           | 16. Why must he take them?     |
| 17. I have to declare the news. | 18. She has to help them.      |
| 19. It dare not catch them.     | 20. He ought to burn it.       |
| 21. They must serve you.        | 22. We had to open it.         |
| 23. Can they defeat him?        | 24. Will he win the battle?    |
| 25. You needn't obey her.       | 26. They used to approach it.  |
| 27. I have to do it.            | 28. It has to catch them.      |
| 29. Whose dog will he chase?    | 30. Could they defeat us?      |
| 31. They have got to drink it.  | 32. She is going to save them. |
| 33. They will not detect him.   | 34. She can not bring him.     |
| 35. We may not clean it.        | 36. They must not remove it.   |

**Exercises (243):**

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the **Verbs** given in the brackets to form Passive Voice sentences in **Future Tense (will)**:

- Eggs.....by him tomorrow. (eat)
- Football.....by them next week. (play)
- I .....by you next season. (help)
- They.....by us next night. (keep)
- He .....by me tomorrow. (chase)
- We .....by her next night. (feed)

7. ....food.....by him next week? (cook)
8. ....cars .....by them next year? (sell)
9. Where.....the lions.....by them next night? (watch)
10. By whom.....he.....? (tell)
11. Whose horse.....by them? (ride)
12. Which pen.....by her? (take)
13. She.....by him. (change)
- 14.....chairs.....by him next week? (repair)
- 15.....I.....by her tomorrow? (expel)
- 16.....she.....by them next year? (cheat)
- 17.....they.....by me next week? (clean)
18. ....it.....by us tomorrow? (water)
- 19.....you.....by him next night? (search)
- 20.....I.....by you tomorrow? (hide)

**Exercises (244):**

Change the following sentences into the **Active Voice**:

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. It will be broken by her.          | 2. They shall be attacked by it.          |
| 3. I may be insulted by him.          | 4. He can be called by them.              |
| 5. You would be chased by it.         | 6. She should be taught by me.            |
| 7. They might not be cleaned by her.  | 8. It could not be repaired by them.      |
| 9. By whom must he be invited?        | 10. Why will they be broken by us?        |
| 11. Will we be seen by him?           | 12. Can he be brought by them?            |
| 13. We would be addressed by her.     | 14. He might be interrogated by them.     |
| 15. Should you be treated by him?     | 16. Could she be honored by us?           |
| 17. By whom may he be threatened?     | 18. Where might you be imprisoned by him? |
| 19. Which enemy must be shot by them? | 20. Why must it be caught by it?          |
| 21. She daren't be seen by him.       | 22. He used to be abused by her.          |
| 23. I ought to be seen by him.        | 24. They have to be punished by us.       |
| 25. It has to be chased by it.        | 26. I had to be forgiven by them.         |
| 27. He has got to be beaten by me.    | 28. I am going to be protected by them.   |

## From Active to Passive (Present/Past Perfect) (*been*)

Read the following sentences:

Active	Passive
He has released the prisoners.	The prisoners have <b>been</b> released by him.
She has eaten an apple.	An apple has <b>been</b> eaten by her.
It has caught mice.	Mice have <b>been</b> caught by it.
They have played football.	Football has <b>been</b> played by them.
We have driven cars.	Cars have <b>been</b> driven by us.
You have repaired it.	It has <b>been</b> repaired by you.
I have written the letters.	The letters have <b>been</b> written by me.
He had read the books.	The books had <b>been</b> read by him.
She had prepared the dishes.	The dishes had <b>been</b> prepared by her.
He had jumped the wall.	The wall had <b>been</b> jumped by him.
I had developed the software.	The software had <b>been</b> developed by me.

**Learn:**

The Passive Voice in the **Present/Past Perfect** gets the helping verb (**been**) before the third form of the verb.

Object + has/have/had + **been** + Verb3 + by + Subject

**More Examples:**

Active	Passive
He has made tea.	Tea has <b>been</b> made by him.
I have liked it.	It has <b>been</b> liked by me.
They have eaten an apple.	An apple has <b>been</b> eaten by them.
She had called me.	I had <b>been</b> called by her.
It had broken the cup.	The cup had <b>been</b> broken by it.
We had not eaten them.	They had not <b>been</b> eaten by us.
Have they helped me?	Have I <b>been</b> helped by them?
Has he played football?	Has football <b>been</b> played by him?
Had dogs killed foxes?	<b>Had</b> foxes <b>been</b> killed by dogs?
Had she cooked food?	<b>Had</b> food <b>been</b> cooked by her?

Where have I kept money?	Where has money <b>been</b> kept by me?
When has he eaten eggs?	When have eggs <b>been</b> eaten by him?
Who had met you?	By whom had you <b>been</b> met?
Which book have I written?	Which book has <b>been</b> written by me?
Whose bags has he stolen?	Whose bags have <b>been</b> stolen by him?

**Exercises (245):**

Change the following sentences into the **Passive Voice**:

**(Present Perfect and Past Perfect Tense):** Use 'been' with the third form of the verb)

- |                                   |                                |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. He has brought many gifts.     | 2. They have repaired the car. |
| 3. We have caught it.             | 4. She has written it.         |
| 5. I have not broken the wall.    | 6. You have informed me.       |
| 7. He had made tea.               | 8. They had not seen the deer. |
| 9. Has he bought vegetables?      | 10. Have you sold the house?   |
| 11. Have I said it?               | 12. Has it chased them?        |
| 13. Has she served him?           | 14. Have they sent the letter? |
| 15. Had it eaten them?            | 16. Had they promised him?     |
| 17. Had we told her?              | 18. Where have I left the car? |
| 19. When has he cleaned them?     | 20. Who has called you?        |
| 21. Who had met her?              | 22. Why has she fried them?    |
| 23. Which tree have they planted? | 24. Which cups has she washed? |
| 25. They have not detected it.    | 26. He has not served them.    |
| 27. We had not created it.        | 28. You have mastered it.      |

**Exercises (246):**

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the **Verbs** given in the brackets to form Passive Voice sentences in **Present Perfect Tense**:

1. Eggs.....by him. (eat)
2. Football.....by them. (play)
3. I .....by you. (help)
4. They.....by us. (keep)
5. He .....by me. (chase)
6. We .....by her. (feed)
7. ....food.....by him? (cook)
8. ....cars .....by them? (sell)
9. Where.....the lions.....by them? (watch)
10. By whom.....it.....? (buy)
11. Which letter .....by them? (receive)
- 12.....I.....by her? (expel)

- 13.....she.....by them? (cheat)
- 14.....they.....by me? (clean)
- 15.....it.....by us? (water)
- 16.....you.....by him? (search)
- 17.....he.....by you? (hide)

**Exercises (247):**

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the **Verbs** given in the brackets to form Passive Voice sentences in **Past Perfect Tense**:

1. Eggs.....by him. (eat)
2. Football.....by them. (play)
3. I .....by you. (help)
4. They.....by us. (keep)
5. He .....by me. (chase)
6. We .....by her. (feed)
7. ....food.....by him? (cook)
8. ....cars .....by them? (sell)
9. Where.....the lions.....by them? (watch)
10. By whom.....it.....? (buy)
11. Which machine.....by him? (repair)
- 12.....I.....by her? (expel)
- 13.....she.....by them? (cheat)

**Exercises (248):**

Change the following sentences into the **Active Voice: (Present Perfect and Past Perfect Tense)**:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. It has been broken by her.           | 2. They have been attacked by it.         |
| 3. I have been insulted by him.         | 4. He has been called by them.            |
| 5. You have been chased by it.          | 6. She has been taught by me.             |
| 7. They had not been cleaned by her.    | 8. It had not been repaired by them.      |
| 9. By whom has he been invited?         | 10. Why have they been broken by us?      |
| 11. Have we been seen by him?           | 12. Has it been got by them?              |
| 13. We had been addressed by her.       | 14. He had been interrogated by them.     |
| 15. Had you been treated by him?        | 16. Had she been honored by us?           |
| 17. By whom had he been threatened?     | 18. Where had you been imprisoned by him? |
| 19. Which lion has been caught by them? | 20. Which rooms had been cleaned by him?  |

## From Active to Passive

### (A Verb with A Preposition After it)

For a verb with a preposition coming after it, consider the preposition as part of the verb; as:

**Read the following sentences:**

Active	Passive
I look for a job.	A job is looked for by me.
They spoke to us.	We were spoken to by them.
She laughed at him.	He was laughed at by her.

**Learn:**

Object + suitable helping verb+Verb3+Preposition+ by+ Subject
---

**Exercises (249):**

Change the following sentences into the **Passive Voice**:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. I have sent for the driver.<br><br>3. He acted upon their advice.<br>5. You must take care of your health.<br><br>7. The trader can deal in sugar.<br>9. He prays to Allah.<br>11. It is sitting by me.<br>13. She treads upon our drawings.<br>15. We will write down the instructions.<br>17. They can lean upon the wall.<br>19. She took away the papers.<br>21. I switched off the current. | 2. The wicked man has aimed at the bird.<br><br>4. She was speaking to him.<br>6. They long for wealth.<br><br>8. She inquired after my health.<br>10. They are playing with her.<br>12. He is switching off the TV.<br>14. He gave up smoking.<br><br>16. It had sat on the chair.<br><br>18. They have spoken out the truth.<br><br>20. He puts on the shirt.<br>22. He looks after his mother. |
|---|---|

**Exercises (250):**

Change the following sentences into the **Passive Voice**:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. The hunter aims at the deer.<br><br>3. They are acting upon my advice.<br><br>5. I have called on him. | 2. She asked for a leave.<br><br>4. The greedy longs for wealth.<br><br>6. Police will deal with criminals. |
|---|---|

- |                                       |                                      |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 7. The old man must feed on milk.     | 8. They laughed at the clown.        |
| 9. It is jumping into the well.       | 10. They entered into the room.      |
| 11. She is looking for a job.         | 12. He is looking after his parents. |
| 13. I participated in the discussion. | 14. She is taking care of her son.   |

**Exercises (251):**

Change the following sentences into the **Active Voice: (A Verb with a preposition after it):**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Patients are looked after by him.           | 2. The child was taken care of by them.   |
| 3. He has been laughed at by them.             | 4. They have been depended on by her.     |
| 5. His advice was acted upon by you.           | 6. A visit to Makka is longed for by her. |
| 7. The criminal will be dealt with by the law. | 8. It is being played with by you.        |
| 9. The birds are being aimed at by him.        | 10. Laws are abided <i>by</i> by me.      |

## **From Active to Passive** **(A Verb with Two Objects)**

**For a verb with two objects, make any object as the subject; as:**

Active	Passive
My father gave me books.	I was given books by my father. Books were given to me by my father.
She offered them juice.	They were offered juice by her. Juice was offered to them by her.
They granted us a chance.	We were granted a chance by them. A chance was granted to us by them.

**Learn:**

In forming a passive voice from a verb with **Two Objects**, begin with the first or second object, but the word (to) is added after the third form of the verb in case of dealing with the second object.

(1) First obj.(suitable helping verb)+verb3+ 2<sup>nd</sup>. object + by+ Subject

(2) Second obj.(suitable helping verb)+verb3 **to**+ 1<sup>st</sup>. object+ by+Sub.

**Exercises (252):**

\* Change the following sentences into the **Passive Voice** by using both the first object and the second object:

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. He gave her a watch.             | 2. They offer him many chances.        |
| 3. We have granted him scholarship. | 4. I am giving them the car.           |
| 5. She was offering him the meal.   | 6. You will offer him full support.    |
| 7. They can grant me a loan.        | 8. This book gave me a lot of details. |
| 9. She offered us many books.       | 10. He has given them the keys.        |

**Exercises (253):**

Change the following sentences into the **Active Voice: (A Verb with Two Objects):**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. She was given a book by him.          | 2. A book has been given to me by them. |
| 3. Services are provided to them by me.  | 4. Help will be granted to her by us.   |
| 5. Apples have been given to him by her. | 6. Gifts were offered to him by them.   |

\* For more examples refer to exercises No.: (34) & (35).

## From Active to Passive (Request /Order)

**Read the following sentences:**

Active	Passive
Open the door.	<b>Let</b> the door <b>be</b> opened by you. The door <b>should be</b> opened by you.
Close the window.	<b>Let</b> the window <b>be</b> closed. The window <b>should be</b> closed.
Do not cook food.	<b>Let</b> food not <b>be</b> cooked. Food <b>should not be</b> cooked.
Never smoke cigarette.	<b>Let</b> cigarette never <b>be</b> smoked. Cigarette <b>should never be</b> smoked.

**Learn:**

In forming a passive voice from a **Request** or **Order**, use 'Let.....be' or 'should be' before the third form of the verb.

- (1) Let + Object + be + Verb3 + by subject  
(2) Object + should be + Verb3 + by subject

**Note:**

The subject of the verb in the active voice is not mentioned, but understood.

**Exercises (254):**

Change the following sentences into the **Passive Voice**:

- |                                |                            |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Paint the pictures.         | 2. Draw the map.           |
| 3. Do not touch the fire.      | 4. Never waste time.       |
| 5. Repair the car.             | 6. Read the book.          |
| 7. Write the letters.          | 8. Build the wall.         |
| 9. Do not tell a lie.          | 10. Never eat pork meat.   |
| 11. Do not kill the innocents. | 12. Never break a glass.   |
| 13. Buy the cake.              | 14. Save money.            |
| 15. Shake the bottle.          | 16. Ride the horse.        |
| 17. Do not make noise.         | 18. Never throw stones.    |
| 19. Help the poor.             | 20. Clean the room.        |
| 21. Propagate Islam.           | 22. Fight the Imperialist. |

**Exercises (255):**

Change the following sentences into the **Active Voice: (Request and Order)**:

1. Let the flower be watered by | 2. Let bad boys not be

- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| you.  |  | accompanied by you.                         |
| 3. The car should be washed.                    |  | 4. Let electricity never be touched by you. |
| 5. Let the money be paid.                       |  | 6. Let prayers never be neglected.          |
| 7. Football should not be played in the street. |  | 8. Teachers should not be disobeyed.        |
| 9. Let orphans be helped by you.                |  | 10. Let Allah be worshiped.                 |

**Remember:** There are 12 tense-forms in the active voice and only 8 in the passive voice.

## Mood صيغة الفعل

### Read the following sentences:

1. The Quran *guides* human beings for the best way of life.
2. *Read* the Quran.
3. If I *were* a king, I would *rule* according to Islamic ideals.
4. *To lead* an Islamic way of life is good.

In the first sentence the verb 'guides' states a **fact**.

In the second sentence the verb 'read' expresses a **command**.

In the third sentence the verbs 'were' and 'rule' express mere **supposition**.

In the fourth sentence the verb 'to lead' names an **action**, but it doesn't mention any subject.

Each of the above four manners in which a verb is used to express an action is called its **Mood**.

## Kinds of Mood

### Read the following sentences:

1. Ali read the holy Quran.
2. The holy Quran was read by Ali.
3. What did Ali do?

The verbs in the above sentences state a **fact** or **ask a question**. Therefore, the verbs in the above sentences are in the **Indicative Mood**.

### Read the following sentences:

1. Close the window.
2. Come here.
3. Worship Allah.
4. Help the poor.

The verbs in the above sentences are in the **Imperative Mood**. The subject of the verb in the Imperative Mood is not mentioned, but understood.

### Read the following sentences:

1. If I were a fish, I would not be caught.
2. Perhaps he may not come in time.
3. May Allah bless you.

4. Long live our beloved movement.

The verbs in the above sentences express a **supposition** or **doubt** or a **wish**. Therefore, they are in the **Subjunctive Mood**.

**Read the following sentences:**

1. To have an aim in life is important.
2. To wake up early is a good thing.
3. I let him go.
4. She can write.

The verb in each of the above sentences has no subject. It is partly a noun and partly a verb. Therefore, it is in the **Infinitive Mood**.

Now, let's read and parse اعراب the Verbs in the following sentences:

1. She sells milk.
2. Give me some water.
3. Take care, lest you vomit.

**Parsing:** اعراب

- |       |  |
|-------|--|
| Sells | Verb, transitive, active voice, indicative mood.   |
| Give  | Verb, transitive, active voice, imperative mood.   |
| Vomit | Verb, intransitive, active voice, subjunctive mood |

**Exercise (256):**

State the **Mood** of each verb in the following sentences:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Mona teaches the students.                      | 2. Go there!  |
| 3. If I were a policeman, I would arrest you.      | 4. Long live our leader.                                |
| 5. To write a book is a formidable task.           | 6. Illegal sexual conducts are the main causes of AIDS. |
| 7. Sameer is taught by the teacher.                | 8. How did he make it?                                  |
| 9. Sit down.                                       | 10. I wish to go with him.                              |
| 11. Be kind to the orphans.                        | 12. Perhaps she may not accept his proposal.            |
| 13. May Allah help him.                            | 14. To drive a car is not something difficult.          |
| 15. They can swim.                                 | 16. Let's play.   |
| 17. She saw him eat.                               | 18. We must leave immediately.                          |
| 19. Mind how you talk lest I will call the police. | 20. Respect your teacher.                               |

**Exercise (257):**

Parse اعراب the **Verbs** in the following sentences:

1. Shut the window.
2. Prayer comforts me.
3. To heap money is difficult.
4. Allah be with you.

## Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech

### *Assertive Sentences*

**There are two ways of reporting what another person said:-**

**1. Quoting the actual words uttered by the speaker; as:**

\* Sami said, "Cats are eating rats in this room."

In the above sentence, we used the actual words of the Speaker (Sami). This is called **Direct Speech**.

**Observe the structure of the Direct Speech:**

- (a) The word 'said' is called the **Reporting (Introductory) Verb**.
- (b) There is a comma after the Reporting (**Introductory**) Verb.
- (c) The sentence 'Cats are eating rats in this room' is the actual words of the speaker. It is called the **Direct Speech**.
- (d) The Direct Speech is put within inverted commas (" ").
- (e) The first word of the Direct Speech (Cats) begins with a capital letter.

**2. Giving an account of what the speaker said:-**

\* Sami said that cats were eating rats in that room.

In the above sentence, we gave only an account of what the speaker (Sami) said. This is called **Indirect (or Reported) Speech**.

**Observe the changes that take place when converting a Direct Speech into Reported Speech:**

- a) No comma is put after the Reporting (Introductory) Verb. It is omitted.
- b) The word 'that' is used after the Reporting (Introductory) Verb.
- c) The tense of the verb in the Reported Speech is changed from present to past 'are' is changed to 'were'.
- d) The Demonstrative Adjective 'this' in the Direct Speech is changed to 'that' in the Indirect (Reported) Speech.

**The following examples would give further explanation:**

Rami said, "The poor man doesn't have anything." Rami said that the poor man did not have anything.
"Ali can't help the lazy people." said Kamal. Kamal said that Ali could not help the lazy people.
"The girls have never gone to a cinema." said Husain. Husain said that the girls had never gone to a cinema.
Mona said, "If boys do not study hard, they will not get high

marks.”  
Mona said that if boys did not study hard, they would not get high marks.

### \* Rules for dealing with Reporting Verbs in Present or Future tense:

\* Examine the following sentences:

1. Mona says, “Ali writes letters.”  
Mona says that Ali writes letters.
2. Tariq will say, “Rami is eating food.”  
Tariq will say that Rami is eating food.
3. They say, “Rami was happy.”  
They say that Rami was happy.
4. The men will say, “Nada has broken the glass.”  
The men will say that Nada has broken the glass.

**Learn:**

If the Reporting (Introductory) Verb is in the **Present** (says, say) or **Future Tense** (will say), the tense is not changed in the Indirect (Reported) Speech.

**Exercise (258):**

Change the following sentences into the **Indirect (Reported) Speech**:

1. He says, “Ali is a clever student.”
2. She will say, “Mona likes cooking.”
3. The man says, “Hayder wanted to be the best engineer.”
4. The woman will say, “Hala can prepare food.”
5. They say, “The boys are reading the Quran.”
6. We will say, “Basheer has a car.”
7. You say, “Ameen has written the letter.”
8. He will say, “The girls were wearing Islamic uniform.”
9. She says, “The cat ate food after I had come home.”
10. They will say, “The dogs have not eaten meat since morning.”

## **Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech** *Change of Tenses*

**\* Examine the following sentences:**

1. \* Jamal said, "Hani eats the banana."  
Jamal said that Hani ate the banana.  
\* Shareef said, "The horses eat grasses."  
Shareef said that the horses ate grasses.
  
2. \* Ahmed said, "The girl is reading the Quran."  
Ahmed said that the girl was reading the Quran.  
\* Zakareyya said, "The horses are running."  
Zakareyya said that the horses were running.
  
3. \* Hisham said, "The cow has eaten the grass."  
Hisham said that the cow had eaten the grass.  
\* Kamal said, "The drivers have driven the cars."  
Kamal said that the drivers had driven the cars.
  
4. \* El Sadiq said, "The donkey has been running in the street."  
El Sadiq said that the donkey had been running in the street.  
\* Aabdeen said, "The goats have been grazing in the field."  
Aabdeen said that the goats had been grazing in the field.
  
5. \* Ashraf said, "Ali spoke in English language."  
Ashraf said that Ali had spoken in English language.
  
6. \* Taha said, "Toney was staggering in the street."  
Taha said that Toney had been staggering in the street.  
\* Qasim said, "The bad boys were smoking."  
Qasim said that the bad boys had been smoking."
  
7. \* Aadil said, "Sanaa will clean the house."  
Aadil said that Sanaa would clean the house.  
\* Hasan said, "Nemairi shall stay at home."  
Hasan said that Nemairi should stay at home.
  
8. \* Hana said, "Hajir can treat patients."  
Hana said that Hajir could treat patients.  
\* The teacher said, "Exams may start in March."

- The teacher said that exams might start in March.
- \* The manager said, “The workers must come early.”  
The teacher said that the workers had to come early.
9. \* The engineer said, “The workers do not get time to eat.”  
The engineer said that the workers did not get time to eat.
- \* The teacher said, “Toney does not attend the class.”  
The teacher said that Toney did not attend the class.
10. \* Jabir said, “Salwa did not eat Kebab.”  
Jabir said that Salwa had not eaten Kebab.
11. \* He said, “The servant had eaten the whole cake.”  
\* He said that the servant had eaten the whole cake.”
12. \* The Head master said, “The teacher had been working for five hours.”  
\* The headmaster said that the teacher had been working for five hours.
13. \* He said, “The rich should help the poor.”  
He said that the rich should help the poor.
- \* She said, “Good students would get good marks.”  
She said that good students would get good marks.
  - \* I said, “The plane could fly through the clouds.”  
I said that the plane could fly through the clouds.
  - \* They said, “The teacher might put a difficult exam.”  
They said that the teacher might put a difficult exam.

**Learn:**

If the Reporting (Introductory) Verb is in the **past** (said), the Tense of the verb in the Reported Speech is converted into the **Past Tense**.

**Remember the following summary of change of tenses**

Direct Speech	Indirect (Reported) Speech
Present Simple (eats, eat)	Past Simple (ate)
Present Continuous (am/is/are eating)	Past Continuous (was/were eating)
Present Perfect	Past Perfect

(has/have eaten)	(had eaten)
Present Perfect Continuous (has been /have been eating)	Past Perfect Continuous (had been eating)
Past Simple (ate)	Past Perfect (had eaten)
Past Continuous (was/were eating)	Past Perfect Continuous (had been eating)
will eat shall eat	would eat should eat
can eat may eat must	could eat might eat had to
do not eat does not eat	Did not eat
did not eat	Had not eaten
Past Perfect (had + Verb3) <i>Remains unchanged</i>	
Past Perfect Continuous (had + been + Verb + ing) <i>Remains unchanged</i>	
should/would/could/might <i>Remains unchanged</i>	

**Exceptions to the above rules:**

The Present Tense is not changed to the Past Tense if the Direct Speech expresses a **Universal truth or Fact or a Permanent Habit**. Examine the following sentences:

**Universal Truth (Eternal Truth)**

1. Ali said, "The Almighty Allah **is** great."  
Ali said that the Almighty Allah **is** great.

Hasan said, "Ieesa (PBUH) **is** the Prophet of Allah."  
Hasan said that Ieesa (PBUH) **is** the Prophet of Allah.

Husain said, "Mohammed (PBUH) **is** the final Prophet of Allah."  
Husain said that Mohammed (PBUH) **is** the final Prophet of Allah.

**Universal Fact**

2. The scientists said, "The earth **is** round."  
The scientists said that the earth **is** round.

The teacher said, "Three and three **make** six."

The teacher said that three and three **make** six.

### **Permanent Habit**

3. Salih said, "Ali prays in the mosque everyday."

Salih said that Ali prays in the mosque everyday.

### **Exercise (259):**

Change the following sentences into **Indirect (Reported) Speech**:

1. Her brother said, "Mona does not go out without wearing the scarf."
2. Samia said, "Ali sleeps early and wakes up early."
3. The teacher said, "The students must do the homework regularly."
4. The farmer said, "The cows have drunk water."
5. Ali said, "Hasan is reading the Quran."
6. Toney said, "George has killed the innocent."
7. The man said, "The boys are playing football."
8. Rami said, "The donkey has eaten the grass."
9. Jamal said, "The girls do not speak too much."
10. The station officer said, "The train left the station."
11. Imran said, "Sami was writing a letter."
12. The woman said, "The milkman did not come."
13. The boy said, "The dogs were chasing a fox."
14. Kamal said, "The boys have been swimming in the river."
15. Kamal said, "The driver can repair the car."
16. Jamal said, "The thief has been moving in the darkness."
17. The announcer said, "The plane will arrive late."
18. The advocate said, "The criminal shall remain in prison."
19. The secretary said, "The manager may come after an hour."
20. The teacher said, "The children sing an Islamic song in the morning session."
21. Hamza said, "Allah is great, Allah helps the Faithful."
22. The teacher said, "The sun sets in the west."
23. Rami said, "Mona recites one part of the Quran everyday."
24. Jabir said, "Eleven and nine make twenty."
25. John said, "Ieesa is not a son of God. He is the Prophet of God."
26. Khamees said, "Sabir would do this work."
27. Sawsan said, "Ali had helped Hasan for three years."
28. Fatima said, "Tariq had been painting this picture for two months."

## Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech *Change of Pronouns*

### *Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech*

#### First-Person Pronouns:

**First-Person Pronouns are:** I, my, me, myself.

we, our, us, ourselves.

**Examine the change of First-Person pronouns in the following sentences from Direct to Indirect Speech:**

Direct	Indirect (Reported) Speech
1. <b>He</b> said, "I am the top of my class."	He said that <b>he</b> was the top of <b>his</b> class.
2. <b>She</b> said, "I was in my kitchen."	She said that <b>she</b> had been in <b>her</b> kitchen.
3. <b>You</b> said, "I have my juice at 7 am."*	You said that <b>you</b> had <b>your</b> juice at 7 am.
4. <b>I</b> said, "I will visit my aunt."	I said that <b>I</b> would visit <b>my</b> aunt.
5. <b>We</b> said, "We can make money by our efforts."*	We said that <b>we</b> could make money by <b>our</b> efforts.
6. <b>They</b> said, "We ate our food."	They said that <b>they</b> had eaten <b>their</b> food.

**Learn:**

The **First-Person Pronouns (I , We)** in Direct Speech are changed to Indirect (Reported) Speech in the same person as that of the Subject of the Reporting Verb. The pronouns '**He**', '**She**', '**You**', '**I**', '**We**' and '**They**' in the above Direct Speech sentences are the Subjects of the Reporting Verbs '**said**'.

### *Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech*

#### Second-Person Pronoun:

**The Second-Person Pronouns are:** you, your, yourself, yourselves.

**Examine the change of Second-Person pronoun in the following sentences from Direct to Indirect Speech:**

Direct	Indirect (Reported) Speech
1. I <u>said to</u> <b>him</b> , "You are lucky."	I <u>told</u> <b>him</b> that <b>he</b> was lucky.
2. He <u>said to</u> <b>her</b> , "You are a	He <u>told</u> her that <b>she</b> was a good

good girl.”	girl.
3. She <u>said to me</u> , “You injured your finger.”	She <u>told</u> me that <b>I</b> had injured <b>my</b> finger.
4. He said to <b>you</b> , “You have a car that troubles you.”	He told you that <b>you</b> had a car that troubled <b>you</b> .
5. I said to <b>Ali</b> , “You are religious.”	I told Ali that <b>he</b> was religious.
6. They said to <b>him</b> , “You will teach yourself English.”	They told him that <b>he</b> would teach <b>himself</b> English.
7. She said to <b>him</b> , “You can give me your book and I will give you my pencil.”	She told him that <b>he</b> could give her <b>his</b> book and she would give <b>him</b> her pencil.
8. You said to <b>them</b> , “You shall tell me your names and I will tell you mine.”	You told them that <b>they</b> should tell you <b>their</b> names and you would tell <b>them</b> yours.

**Learn:**

The **Second-Person Pronoun (You)** in Direct Speech is changed to Indirect (Reported) Speech in the same person as that of the Noun or Object Pronoun that comes after the Reporting Verb. The Reporting Verb ‘**said**’ in Direct Speech is changed to ‘**told**’ in Indirect Speech and the Preposition ‘**to**’ is omitted.

***Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech******Third-Person Pronouns:***

**Third-Person Pronouns are:** He, she, it, they, his, her, its, their, him, her, it, them, himself, herself, itself, themselves.

**Examine the change of Third-Person pronouns in the following sentences from Direct to Indirect Speech:**

Direct	Indirect (Reported) Speech
1. I said, “ <b>He</b> is eating food.”	I said that <b>he</b> was eating food.
2. You said to me, “ <b>She</b> can cook fish.”*	You told me that <b>she</b> could cook fish.
3. She said, “ <b>It</b> will catch a mouse.”	She said that <b>it</b> would catch a mouse.
4. I said to her, “ <b>They</b> have a big villa.”*	I told her that <b>they</b> had a big villa.

**Learn:**

The **Third-Person Pronouns** in Direct Speech remain unchanged in the Indirect (Reported) Speech.

## Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech

### *Change of Words Showing Nearness*

Examine the following sentences which show the change of words showing nearness of Time and Place in Indirect Speech to words showing distance of Time and Place in Indirect (Reported) Speech:

Direct	Indirect (Reported) Speech
1. She said, "I am going <b>tomorrow</b> ."	She said that she was going <b>the next day</b> .
2. He said, "They are happy <b>now</b> ."	They said that they were happy <b>then</b> .
3. I said, "I came <b>yesterday</b> ."	I said that I had come <b>the previous day</b> .
4. Mona said to me, "I am ill <b>today</b> ."*	Mona told me that she was ill <b>that day</b> .
5. I said, "He left <b>last night</b> ."	I said that he had left <b>the previous night</b> .
6. Ali said, "It died <b>a year ago</b> ."	Ali said that it had died <b>a year before</b> .
7. She said to him, "I keep it <b>here</b> ."*	She told him that she kept it <b>there</b> .
8. I said, "I want <b>this</b> shirt."	I said that I wanted <b>that</b> shirt.
9. He said, "I don't like <b>these</b> pens."	He said that he didn't like <b>those</b> pens.

### Remember the following summary of Change of Words Showing Nearness

Word Showing Nearness in Direct Speech	Words Showing Distance in Indirect Speech
Now	Then
Tomorrow	The next day
Yesterday	The previous day or The day before
Last night	The previous night Or The night before
Today	That day
Tonight	That night

Ago	Before
Next week	The following week
Here	There
This	That
These	Those

Now **remember** the following while changing from Direct Speech to Indirect (Reported) Speech:

1. All nouns or pronouns that are in the third person pronouns, remain unchanged.
2. In Assertive sentences, the Reported Speech is introduced by the Conjunction **'that'**.
3. 'said to' is changed to 'told'. If 'said' is not followed by a noun or pronoun, it remains unchanged.
4. No inverted commas are used in Indirect (Reported) Speech.
5. Words indicating Nearness in Direct Speech are changed to words indicating distance in Indirect (Reported) Speech.

\* Studying the change of pronouns in the sentences where the symbol (\*) is placed will enable the learner to know the following:

- (i) Who is the speaker,
- (ii) Who is spoken to,
- (iii) Who (what) is spoken about.

**Exercise (260):**

Change the following sentences into **Indirect (Reported) Speech**:

1. He said, "I am sorry."
2. I said, "I like apples."
3. She said, "I am cleaning the room."
4. Ali said, "I know it."\*
5. Nada said, "I am in the kitchen."
6. You said, "I have finished the work."
7. We said, "We can play chess."\*
8. They said, "We are ready for the journey."
9. The hunters said, "We will catch a deer."
10. The girls said, "We may cook fish."
11. He said, "I can't repair my car."
12. She said, "I may build my house."
13. Nadir said, "I did not clean my room."
14. Mona said, "I have completed my homework."
15. They said, "We are keeping our money in the bank."
16. You said, "I was eating my cake."
17. The boys said, "We are not washing our shirts."

18. We said, "We were doing our duty."
19. I said, "I did what I liked."
20. They said, "We have done what our conscience had dictated on us."

**Exercise (261):**

Change the following sentences into **Indirect (Reported) Speech**:

1. He said to me, "You are very lazy."
2. She said to him, "You can study English in England."
3. I said to her, "You are a good cook."
4. We said to you, "You were very angry."
5. You said to us, "You do not like smoking."
6. Hamid said to Mona, "You will clean the room."
7. Hajir said to Hani, "You got vegetables from the market."
8. The manager said to the workers, "You did not work properly."
9. I said to them, "You may come at anytime."
10. He said to us, "You are clever students."
11. He said to her, "You can't drive your car by yourself."
12. She said to him, "You must keep yourself away from bad boys."
13. They said to us, "You disappeared, therefore, we could not find you."
14. We said to them, "You must come to us in our office and we will come to you in your office."

**Exercise (262):**

Change the following sentences into **Indirect (Reported) Speech**:

1. He said, "They came from Iran."
2. She said, "He likes eating meat."
3. I said, "She will wash the dishes."
4. They said, "It chased the foxes."
5. Rami said to us, "She is a perfect student."\*
6. You said, "They are writing a letter."
7. Marwa said to him, "It can operate automatically."
8. We said, "He was sitting in the front row."
9. I said, "The cook is preparing the delicious dish."
10. Teachers said, "Good students will get high marks."
11. The hunter said, "The lioness protected its cubs."
12. The farmer said, "The cows did not eat their grass."
13. He said to me, "She wore her scarf because she did not like anybody to see her without a scarf."

14. The mechanic said to them, "Its engine makes sound."

**Exercise (263):**

Change the following sentences into **Indirect (Reported) Speech**:

1. He said to her, "These cars are new."
2. She said to him, "I like this scarf."
3. You said, "I stay here in this village with my father."
4. We said to them, "We will come tomorrow."
5. They said, "He completed his work yesterday."
6. You said to us, "They are coming tonight."
7. She said to them, "He has been staying here a year ago."
8. I said to her, "He is sleeping now."
9. We said, "We are traveling next month."
10. They said, "It is going to rain today."
11. She said, "I do not like these bad girls."

**Exercise (264):**

Turn the following sentences into **Indirect (Reported) Speech**:

1. I said to him, "You sold your car to my brother."
2. Rami said to me, "I am going to bring my sister from her school."
3. You said, "They were living in their old house till a year ago."
4. Mona said, "I will protect myself from the evils around me."
5. They said to us, "You have helped us and our duty is to help you."
6. I said to her, "My uncle bought a car for me and I will give it to you."
7. We said to you, "We are going to invite you to our marriage party."
8. They said to him, "We exhausted ourselves in waiting for your arrival."
9. He said, "Mona, I will go to my shop and then I will meet you at your home."
10. He said to them, "My son was ill, therefore, I did not attend your party."

**Exercise (265):**

Change the following sentences into **Direct Speech**:

1. She said that she did not cook their food.
2. He said that he might go the following day.
3. I told him that he was a good runner.

4. We said that they were playing chess in the club.
5. You told us that we could do our homework and play football later on.
6. They said that she preferred death to dishonor.
7. He told them that they had the right to get their property from him.
8. She said that she had been cleaning the house for three hours.
9. I told her that its maintenance exhausted my pocket and body.
10. We told him that he would pass with flying-colors.

## **Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech** *Interrogative Sentences*

**Read the following sentences:**

1. He **said**, “Is Ali in the mosque?”  
    He **asked if** *Ali was* in the mosque.
  
2. She said to him, “Does it eat meat?” (**Present Simple Tense**)  
    She asked him if it ate meat.
  
3. They said to me, “Do you know him?” (**Present Simple Tense**)  
    They asked me if I knew him.
  
4. We said to them, “Did you drink juice?” (**Past Simple Tense**)  
    We asked them if they had drunk juice.

Sentence 1, is an interrogative sentence in the form of Direct Speech. It begins with a helping verb. Therefore, in changing it to Indirect (Reported) Speech, we used the conjunction ‘**if**’. The Reporting Verb ‘**said**’ is changed to ‘**asked**’. The Interrogative form of the verb (Is Ali) is changed to Assertive form (*Ali was*) and Question Mark is omitted in the Indirect (Reported) Speech.

**Note:**

Present Simple and Past Simple Sentences need special attention. Sentences 2, 3, and 4 are interrogative sentences in the form of Direct Speech.

- Sentences 2 and 3 are in Present Simple. They are changed to Past Simple Tense and therefore the helping verbs ‘Does’ and ‘Do’ are omitted.
- Sentence 4, is in the Past Simple. It is changed to the Past Perfect Tense and therefore the helping verb ‘Did’ is omitted.

**Read the following sentences:**

1. She said to me, “Will you go to Dongola **if** you get a job there?”  
    She asked me **whether** I would go to Dongola if I got a job there.
2. He said to her, “Do you want to go to Juba by air **or** by bus?”

He asked her **whether** she wanted to go to Juba by air or by bus.  
 3. He said to the teacher, “May I come in, **Sir**?”  
 He **respectfully** asked the teacher if he might come in.

Sentence 1, is a **Direct Speech Interrogative** that begins with a helping verb and in the form of **Conditional Clause**. Therefore, in changing it to the Indirect (Reported) Speech, we used the conjunction ‘**whether**’.

Sentence 2, is a Direct Speech Interrogative that begins with a helping verb and contains the conjunction ‘**or**’ indicating **choice**. Therefore, in changing it to Indirect (Reported) Speech, we used the conjunction ‘**whether**’.

Sentences 3, is an Interrogative Direct Speech that contains the word ‘**Sir**’ indicating politeness. Therefore, in changing it to Indirect (Reported) Speech, we changed ‘**sir**’ to ‘**respectfully**’.

**Read the following sentences:**

1. She said to him, “**Why are they** playing now?”  
 She asked him **why they were** playing then.

The above sentence shows that the interrogative sentence, in the form of Direct Speech, begins with the Interrogative words ‘**Why**’. Therefore, in changing it to Indirect (Reported) Speech, we used the same Interrogative word used in the Direct Speech. The Reporting Verb ‘said’ is changed to ‘asked’. The Interrogative form of the verb (Why are they) is changed to Assertive form (*why they were*) and Question Mark is omitted in the Indirect (Reported) Speech.

**Read the following sentences:**

1. He said to me, “What **is your name**?”  
 He asked me what *my name was*.  
 2. They said, “Where **are our cars**?”  
 They asked where *their cars were*.  
 3. She said, “Who **is that man**?”  
 She asked who *that man was*.

Sentences 1, 2, and 3 are Interrogatives Direct Speech that contain ‘is’ and ‘are’ which act as verbs and not as helping verbs. As usual, the Interrogative forms of these verbs are changed as follows:

- \* (is ....noun/adjective) is changed to the Assertive form  
(.....noun/adjective + was)
- \* (are....noun/adjective) is changed to the Assertive form  
(...noun/adjective + were)
- \* (is ....noun/adjective) is changed to the Assertive form  
(.....noun/adjective + was)

**The following sentences would give further explanation:**

1. "Do we work to get money only?" Sami said to Hani.  
Sami asked Hani if they worked to get money only.
2. "Why does the child walk slowly?" he said to the woman.  
The man asked the woman why the child walked slowly.
3. Mubarak said, "Jabir, what is the matter?"  
Mubarak asked Jabir what the matter was.
4. Sayyed said to Yasir, "Who is making noise?"  
Sayyed asked Yasir who was making noise.
5. Nadia said to Salim, "Whom have you met in the market?"  
Nadia asked Salim whom he had met in the market.

**Remember** the following summary of rule for changing Interrogative Sentences from Direct to Indirect (Reported) Speech

- a) If the **interrogative** sentence begins with a Helping Verb, the Conjunction '**if**' or '**whether**' is used.
- b) If the interrogative sentence begins with Interrogative Words 'what', 'when', 'where', 'why', 'who' 'which', 'how', etc, no conjunction is used.
- c) The Reporting Verb '**said**' is changed to '**asked**' or '**inquired**'.
- d) The interrogative form of the verb is changed to the assertive form; e.g. (**Is he**) is changed to (**he was**).
- e) Tenses, pronouns and adverbs of time and place (showing nearness) change as in the assertive sentences.
- f) The question mark is omitted in the Indirect (Reported) Speech.
- g) '**Sir**' is changed to '**respectfully**'.

**Exercise (266):**

Turn the following into **Indirect (Reported) Speech**:

1. They said to him, "Do you play football?"
2. He said to them, "Does the cat drink milk?"
3. We said to them, "Did he write the letter yesterday?"
4. The employee said to the manager, "Can I go home, Sir?"

5. They said to him, "Can you do this?"
6. She said to us, "Is the child sleeping now?"
7. I said to them, "Are you attending the party next week?"
8. We said to her, "Will they come tomorrow?"
9. He said, "Am I doing my duty properly?"
10. Ali said to Mona, "Will you cook for me if I get vegetables for you?"
11. The waiter said to the customer, "Do you want the fish grilled or fried?"
12. We said to them, "Have you begun the project?"
13. The girl said, "Uncle, will you go to Dongola tomorrow?"
14. "Can you find out the answer?" the teacher said to the students.

**Exercise (267):**

Turn the following into **Indirect (Reported) Speech**:

1. He said to them, "What is her name?"
2. She said to him, "How is your mother?"
3. They said to us, "Who are those women?"
4. We said to her, "Where are the keys?"
5. He said to me, "Why are they crying now?"
6. Nada said to them, "Where has Sami kept my pen?"
7. I said to them, "How do you know that?"
8. "Where have they found the money?" the police said to Rami.
9. "What is the matter?" Yahya said to Arwa.
10. He said to me, "Which shirt do you like most?"
11. The girl said to the boy, "What will you gain by wasting your time?"
12. "Why did the worker decide to leave the job?" the manager said to the secretary.
13. We said to the shopkeeper, "How much is that TV?"
14. He said, "What will I do here?"
15. Salih said, "Nadir, where is my shirt?"
16. Ali said to Isam, "Where are you planning to go?"
17. Sami said to Tariq, "What are you doing tomorrow?"
18. Kareem said to Hasan, "How much would the car be?"
19. Aamir said, "What had the thief been doing in the store?"
20. Sanhoori said to Jibreel, "Who was watering the garden?"
21. The woman said to him, "Whom were you talking to?"
22. I said to Hajir, "When will the dinner be ready?"
23. Hani said, "Ali, what did my mother get from the market?"

24. The doctor said to the patient, “What had you eaten yesterday?”
25. The student said, “What will I do if I fail in exams?”

## Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech *Imperative Sentences*

**Read the following sentences:**

1. He **said** to me, "Give me the bag." (Affirmative Command)  
He **told** me to give him the bag.
  
2. The officer **said** to the soldiers, "**Sit** down on the sand."  
(Affirmative Command)  
The officer **ordered** the soldiers **to sit** down on the sand.
  
3. The man **said** to his friend, "*Please* lend me some money."  
The man **requested** his friend **to lend** him some money.
  
4. The doctor **said to** the patient, "**Drink** warm water."  
The doctor **advised** the patient **to drink** warm water.
  
5. He **said to** his friend, "**Let's visit** the zoo."  
He **suggested to** his friend **that they should visit** the zoo.
  
6. I **said**, "Let her come with us, father."  
I **asked** father **to let her come** with us.
  
7. Mother **said to** father, "**Let Tariq do** as he likes."  
Mother **told** father **to let Tariq do** as he liked.
  
8. The poor woman **said to** a passer-by, "**Please, help** me."  
The poor woman **begged** a passer-by **to help** her.
  
9. He **said to** her, "**Go** out from here now, **you shameless.**"  
He **scornfully shouted at** her **to go** out from there then.
  
10. She **said to** him, "**Be** bold and confront the enemies."  
She **urged** him **to be** bold and confront the enemies.
  
11. They **said to** him, "**Don't come** here again." (Negative Command)  
They **ordered** him **not to come** there again.
  
12. He **said to** his son, "**Don't accompany** bad boys."  
(Negative Command)

He **advised** his son **not to accompany** bad boys.

13. He **said to** his friend, “**Don’t drink** this juice.” (Negative Command)

He **told** his friend **not to drink** that juice.

**Learn:**

1. In changing **Imperatives** from Direct to Indirect (Reported) Speech, the Reporting Verb (**said**) is changed to some verbs expressing the imperative mood (command, request, etc) such as ‘**ordered**’, ‘**requested**’, ‘**advised**’, ‘**asked**’, ‘**suggested**’, ‘**begged**’, ‘**warned**’, ‘**shouted at**’, ‘**urged**’, etc according to the sense.
2. Changing the imperative mood to the Infinitive with ‘to’.

**Exercise (268):**

Turn the following into **Indirect Speech**, using Reporting Verbs given in the brackets:

Example: (i) They said to him, “Come here.” (*ordered*)

Answer: They ordered him to come there.

Example: (ii) He said to her, “Don’t waste your money.” (*advised*)

Answer: He advised her not to waste her money.

Example: (iii) Allah, the Almighty, said to us, “As for the orphan, do not oppress.” (*order*)

Answer: Allah, the Almighty, ordered us, as for the orphan, not to oppress.

1. The mechanic said to the woman, “Bring your car to me.” (*told*)
2. The killer said to the judge, “Don’t execute me, please.” (*requested*)
3. The father said, “O Son! Don’t sit with bad fellows.” (*advised*)
4. The teacher said to the learner, “Revise your lessons at home.” (*told*)
5. The assassinated soldier said to his son, “Don’t harm anybody for this.” (*asked*)
6. He said to them, “Shut up, you fools.” (*shouted at*)
7. The Secretary said to the applicant, “Please, fill up this application form.” (*requested*)
8. He said, “Sister, sell your car and invest the money in my

- shop.”(*advised*)
9. The robber said to the travelers, “Give me all you have.”  
(*ordered*)
  10. The king said to the soldier, “Go and arrest the preacher.”  
(*ordered*)
  11. The ill traveler said to his companions, “Leave me here.”  
(*told*)
  12. The mother said, “Children, do the evening studies.”  
(*asked*)
  13. The colonialist said to his soldiers, “Catch and kill this  
freedom fighter.” (*ordered*)
  14. The customer said to the businessman, “Be watchful and don’t  
trust your shop-boy.” (*warned*)
  15. The old man said to the passer-by, “Please help me.”  
(*begged*)
  16. The doctor said to the patient, “Be quiet and try to sleep.”  
(*urged*)
  17. Allah, the Almighty, said to us, “As for the beggar, do not  
chide.” (*order*)

**Exercise (269):**

Turn the following into **Indirect Speech**:

1. The teacher said to the student, “Write clearly with an ink-pen.”
2. The girl said to her sister, “Please lend me your scarf.”
3. The doctor said to the patient, “Stop smoking and do physical exercises.”
4. The student said to his classmate, “Don’t scratch on my books.”
5. Mother said, “O Daughter, don’t go out without wearing Islamic uniform.”
6. The hungry man said to her, “Give me something to eat.”
7. The woman said to her money-lender sister, “Take care, else somebody may run away without paying his debts.”
8. The neighbors said, “Children, don’t disturb us.”
9. The old woman said to her son, “Walk slowly.”
10. The criminal said to the complaint, “Please forgive me.”

**Exercise (270):**

Turn the following into **Indirect Speech**:

Example: He said, “Brother, let’s feed this hungry cow.”

Answer: He suggested to his brother that they should feed that

hungry cow.

1. The boy said to his friend, "Let's visit the circus."
2. I said, "Let's go with her, father."
3. The thief said to the other thieves, "Let's leave the money near the police station."
4. The diver said, "Friend, let's dive deep into the sea to get pearls."
5. The child said to his sister, "Let's read this book."
6. He said to his office-mate, "Let's announce this good news."
7. She said to her sister, "Let's go to Tehran and learn Islamic wisdom and nuclear science."
8. The scientist said to his colleague, "Let's try this medicine on that mouse."
9. The good boy said to his brother, "Let's go to the mosque and pray first."
10. "Let's wait till Ali comes." Hamid said to Tariq.

**Exercise (271):**

Turn the following into **Indirect Speech**:

Example: (i) They said to their sister, "Let him drive our car."

Answer: They told their sister to let him drive their car.

Example: (ii) They said to him, "Let us sleep in your room tonight only."

Answer: They requested him to let them sleep in his room that night only.

1. The Principal said to the Rector, "Let them visit their parents this week."
2. She said, "Mother, let my brothers watch TV today."
3. I said to my friend, "Let me perform my prayers first."
4. The Farmer said to his son, "Let the old cows enter the fence."
5. The camp-cook said, "Soldiers, let the officers eat first."
6. The doctor said to the secretary, "Let the cancer patient wait till I come."
7. The officer said to the gate-keepers, "Let these soldiers go out tomorrow."
8. He said to the secretary, "Let my foreign-customers sleep in my hotel tonight."
9. He said to his brother, "Let the guests go to the dining room."
10. "Let her dress the Islamic uniform." the man said to his friend.

**Exercise (272):**

Turn the following into **Direct Speech**:

1. He said that he loved his mother.
2. She said that she was revising her lessons then.
3. They said that they liked stories.
4. We said that we were swimming in the river there.
5. I said that they had passed in exams that year.
6. He said that she had eaten the apple the previous day.
7. She told me that I had been doing my works regularly.
8. They said that they had done it.
9. I said that I would cook food that day.
10. He said that he would be sleeping at 5 o'clock.
11. She said that Islam is the best way of life.
12. He said that forty and forty make eighty.
13. They said that the Prophet Ibraheem (PBUH) is the father of Muslims.
14. Nadir will say that Ali is the scholar of the society.
15. Hasan says that Maha cooks delicious food.
16. He tells her that she has cooked food for him.
17. She will tell him that he is intelligent.
18. The scientist says that the earth is round.
19. Ali said that the Almighty Allah is merciful.
20. Hasan said that Husain goes to the mosque everyday.

**Exercise (273):**

Turn the following into **Direct Speech**:

1. He told me that I was feeding the cows.
2. I told you that you had performed well in the swimming competition.
3. The teacher told the students that they had to be ready for the annual exam.
4. She told me that I might get the highest marks in my school.
5. They told us that we could win the match if we played well.
6. We told her that she had drawn a beautiful picture.
7. I told them that they had to prepare themselves for the journey.
8. He told me that I would injure myself by walking on iron rods.
9. I told her that she had protected herself by avoiding bad girls.
10. The banker told us that we had helped ourselves by saving that money.

**Exercise (274):**

Turn the following into **Direct Speech**:

1. He requested his sister to make coffee for him.
2. The soldier ordered the prisoner to clean the officer's house.
3. The officer scornfully shouted at the retreating soldiers not to leave their positions.
4. The doctor advised the patient to avoid drinking coffee.
5. He suggested to his father that they should stay with the grandmother.
6. She told her brother to give her the pencil.
7. She asked her father to let Mona go with her.
8. Rami ordered her not to put salt in the food.
9. The man advised his younger brother not to sit in streets.
10. The accused begged the policeman to release him.
11. He urged her to be patient and treat her husband kindly.
12. We told them not to touch others' property.

## Direct and Indirect (Reported) Speech

### *Exclamatory Sentences*

**Read the following sentences:**

1. He said, "**Alas!** I am defeated."  
He **exclaimed with sorrow** that he was defeated.
2. They said, "**Hurrah!** We got the first prize."  
They **exclaimed with joy** that they had got the first prize.
3. The teacher said, "**Bravo!** You have stood first in the school exams."  
The teacher **applauded him saying** that he had stood first in school exams.
4. Ali said, "How intelligent I am!"  
Ali **exclaimed** that he was very intelligent.
5. She said, "What a beautiful picture it is!"  
She **exclaimed** that it was a very beautiful picture.
6. We said, "May our brother Hasan live long."  
We **prayed** that our brother Hasan might live long.
7. We said to our mother, "Good night."  
We **wished** our mother a good night.
8. The employee said to his manager, "Good morning, Sir."  
The employee **respectfully** bade his manger a good morning.
9. I said, "Farewell, my parents."  
I **respectfully** bade my parents farewell.

**Learn:**

1. In changing **Exclamatory** sentences from Direct to Indirect (Reported) Speech, the Reporting Verb (**said**) is changed to some verbs expressing exclamation or wish such as "**exclaimed with sorrow**", "**exclaimed with joy**", "**applauded**", "**prayed**", "**wished**", etc." according to the sense.
2. The Exclamatory sentence is changed to assertive sentence.
3. Words expressing exclamation such as '**Alas**', '**Hurrah**', '**Bravo**', are omitted.
4. The Exclamation Mark is omitted.

**Exercise (275):**

Turn the following into **Indirect Speech**:

1. He said, "Alas! My father is dead."
2. She said, "Bravo Hamza! You have done well."
3. The military officer said, "Hurrah! We defeated the enemy."

4. My mother said to me, "May Allah bless you with martyrdom."
5. Ali said, "What a nice reading of the Quran it is!"
6. The man said, "How liar and cunning Toney is!"
7. "May you lead a happy life, my son." the grandmother said.
8. The children said, "Hurrah! Our mother has come."
9. He said, "Farewell, my father."
10. "Good morning, Sir." the student said to his teacher.
11. He said, "Alas! I did not do well in exams."
12. They said, "Bravo Husain! You will remain in our hearts."
13. The wrestler said, "Hurrah! I won the wrestling."
14. Their father said to them, "May Allah help you."
15. She said, "How aggressive and cruel George is!"
16. "Good night, dear." the man said to his friend.
17. I said, "How wonderful the scene is!"
18. The rescue team said, "Hurrah! We saved the children."
19. The soldier said, "Farewell, the arms."
20. She said, "May my children be always successful."

**Exercise (276):**

Turn the following into **Direct Speech**:

1. They exclaimed with sorrow that they were going to fail in exams.
2. She exclaimed with joy that she had recited the whole Quran.
3. We applauded him saying that he was the best in the class.
4. She exclaimed that she was very religious.
5. I exclaimed that they were very brave fighters.
6. She prayed that Hamza might live long.
7. He wished his friend a good luck.
8. The servant respectfully bade his master a good night.
9. They respectfully bade their families farewell.
10. He exclaimed with sorrow that he would die soon.

## Used to

**Read the following sentences:**

1. I used to play chess last year.
2. Sami used to swim twice a week in those days.

In the above sentences, the word ‘used to’ is used to express habitual past. It refers to a discontinued past habit or state that contrasts with the present.

The formation of such a sentence depends on (Subject + used to + infinitive).

noun/pronoun	used to	infinitive
--------------	---------	------------

**Learn:**

‘**Used to**’ refers to habitual discontinued past or states that contrasts the present.

**Read the following sentences:**

1. I **am** used to **swimming** the strong current.
2. He **is** used to **lifting** heavy logs.
3. She **is** used to **working** in the hot kitchen.
4. They **are** used to **doing** hard work.
5. He **was** used to **living** in hot climate.
6. They **were** used to **running** long distances.
7. I will **get** used to **waking** up early morning.
8. He soon **got** used to **sleeping** early.
9. You will **get** used to the difficulties of the work.
10. He **becomes** used to **walking** without help.
11. They **became** used to **living** in streets.
12. We **are** used to hot wind.
13. I **am** used to it.

In the sentences ‘used to’ is preceded by *be/get* forms. The whole structure expresses a present, routine or pattern of life or behavior. The formation of such a sentence depends on (Subject + be/become/get+ used to) + (finite/ noun /pronoun /adjective).

Noun/pronoun	Be (am/is/are/was/were) Become/became Get/got	Used to	<u>Gerund</u> Noun/pronoun Adjective noun
--------------	--	------------	--

**Learn:**

'**Be (get) + used to**' is used for structuring a sentence that refers to a present or a past routine or pattern of life or behavior.

**Exercise (277):**

Rewrite the following sentences using “**used to**” as shown in the examples below:

Example: He narrated stories for us.

Answer: He **used to narrate** stories for us.

Example: She would wash the dishes first.

Answer: She would **get used to washing** the dishes first.

Example: I **was in the habit of working** hard when I was poor.

Answer: I **was used to working** hard when I was poor.

I used to **work** hard when I was poor.

- 1.They took their meal together at my house everyday.
- 2.We went out for walking every morning.
- 3.He came to that institute to learn English.
- 4.She kept her money with me when she was young.
- 5.Sami sang beautifully, especially the national songs.
- 6.Ali greeted everyone he passed by.
- 7.My friend guided me in the annual exams.
- 8.They had guests everyday.
- 9.Mona spoke Persian well when she was in Iran.
- 10.He stayed in the library at the time of exams.
- 11.He was in the habit of joking when he was in the village.
- 12.They would welcome the guests at their house.
- 13.She was in the habit of decorating her room every month.
- 14.Grandfather was in the habit of waking up early everyday.
- 15.They were in the habit of running along the bank of the Nile.
- 16.He would give me the exam-fees.
17. The dog was in the habit of hiding in the corn-field to catch foxes.
- 18.You would wait for the milkman till 12 pm everyday.
- 19.I was in the habit of consuming too much sugar everyday.
- 20.They were in the habit of collecting stamps from tourists.
21. She was in the habit of devoting some parts of her money for poor people.
22. Hamza fought the enemy circles.
23. The lazy boy had the habit of forgetting his lessons.
24. She hurt herself when she cut onions.
25. He was in the habit of leading his generation.
26. Satan misled many human beings.

27. They shut their door at 9 pm.
28. You were in the habit of singing the national songs.
29. Bad boys sat in streets.
30. Unfortunately, they smoked or spat in public places.
31. Bad people spoilt other people.
32. Courageous men undertook formidable tasks.
33. Weak men accepted humiliation.
34. We never clapped to corrupt rulers.
35. Some politicians cheated their people.
36. She composed poetry.

**Exercise (278):**

Choose the most suitable answer from a, b, or c and put a line under the correct answer:

1. Saleem is not used to..... in cold countries.  
(a) lives                      (b) living                      (c) live
2. Sami .....drive a lorry, but he doesn't any more.  
(a) is used to                      (b) used to                      (c) was used to
3. He is happy in the village as he got used to.....fresh air.  
(a) breathing                      (b) breath                      (c) breathed
4. I am used to .....in such crowded places.  
(a) work                      (b) works                      (c) working
5. He .....to play chess in the club, but is very busy now.  
(a) used to                      (b) was used                      (c) used
6. They soon got used to .....on the left.  
(a) drive                      (b) driving                      (c) drives
7. She will get used to .....the medicine.  
(a) taking                      (b) takes                      (c) take
8. They were used to .....long distances.  
(a) travel                      (b) travels                      (c) traveling
9. The Khalwa used to .....us and we have to rebuild it again.  
(a) educating                      (b) educate                      (c) educates
10. When I was a child, I .....sleep at 8 pm.  
(a) was used to                      (b) got used to                      (c) used to
11. When he became used to....., he got chest problems.  
(a) smoke                      (b) smoking                      (c) smoked
12. When holiday starts, she becomes used to.....short stories.  
(a) reading                      (b) reads                      (c) read

## Tag Question

### Read the following sentences:

1. He is sleeping, isn't he?
2. She sleeps, doesn't she?
3. They play, don't they?
4. He went to Kasala, didn't he?
5. We were studying, weren't we?
6. They have gone, haven't they?
7. I will meet you, won't I?
8. She had eaten, hadn't she?

1. In each of the above sentences, we find that there are two things. The first is a statement that ends with a comma. The second is a short question added to the end of the statement. The whole structure is turned into a question. The structure which is added at the end, is called a Tag Question. Tag Question is mostly used in spoken English and in some written form.
2. In each of the above Tag Questions, there is an auxiliary form or a form of 'be' or 'do'. It means that a Tag Question is formed by using an auxiliary verb or a form of 'be' or 'do'.

### Learn:

A **Tag Question** is a short question which is added to the end of a statement.

### Read the following sentences:

1. He is eating, isn't he?
2. He is not eating, is he?

In sentence 1, the statement 'He is eating' is a positive statement, therefore, a negative question 'isn't he?' is added.

In sentence 2, the statement 'He is not eating' is a negative statement, therefore, a positive question 'is he?' is added.

### Learn:

A **Tag Question** is **negative** when the statement is positive. A **Tag Question** is **positive** when the statement is negative. The negative form is usually contracted; e.g. (**n't**)

When we examine the sentences 1 to 8, we find that the structure of the Tag Question and its auxiliary verb depend on the tense of the statement. The statement 'He is sleeping' has the helping verb 'is', therefore, it got the Tag Question 'isn't he?' 'We were studying' has the helping verb 'were', therefore, it got the Tag

Question ‘weren’t they?’ ‘They have gone’ got ‘haven’t they?’. However, in positive present simple tense and past simple tense statements, it is important to remember the helping verbs (does, do and did) and add each accordingly to structure as in the Tag Questions in the sentence 2 , 3 and 4.

**Further examples:**

<p><b>1. Present Simple:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* He plays football, doesn’t he?</li> <li>* Ali eats apples, doesn’t he?</li> <li>* She does not cook, does she?</li> <li>*Mona does not sleep, does she?</li> <li>* They swim, don’t they?</li> <li>* We do not catch fish, do we?</li> </ul>	<p><b>2. Past Simple:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* It caught a mouse, didn’t it?</li> <li>* He used to do it, didn’t he?</li> <li>* Sami did not study, did he?</li> <li>* They did not come, did they?</li> <li>* We did not read, did we?</li> <li>* She cooked food, didn’t she?</li> </ul>
<p><b>3. Present Continuous Tense:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* I am not traveling, am I?</li> <li>* She is washing, isn’t she?</li> <li>* They are working, aren’t they?</li> <li>* He is not sleeping, is he?</li> <li>* We are not cleaning, are we?</li> </ul>	<p><b>4. Past Continuous Tense:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* I was writing, wasn’t I?</li> <li>* They were crying, weren’t they?</li> <li>* I was not sitting, was I?</li> <li>* She was not hitting, was she?</li> <li>* You were not here, were you?</li> </ul>
<p><b>5. Present Perfect:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* He has driven a car, hasn’t he?</li> <li>* I have dug well, haven’t I?</li> <li>* She has not sold it, has she?</li> <li>* We have not sung, have we?</li> </ul>	<p><b>6. Past Perfect:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* It had hidden there, hadn’t it?</li> <li>* I had got a pen, hadn’t I?</li> <li>* He had not eaten, had he?</li> <li>* We had not drunk, had we?</li> </ul>
<p><b>7. Future/Modals:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* He will come, won’t he?</li> <li>* He could buy, couldn’t he?</li> <li>* She must cook, mustn’t she?</li> <li>* It can not run, can it?</li> <li>* He shall not come, shall he?</li> <li>* It would go, wouldn’t it?</li> <li>* We should go, shouldn’t we?</li> </ul>	<p><b>8. Present/past forms:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>*He is used to it, isn’t he?</li> <li>* They are kings, aren’t they?</li> <li>* I was there, wasn’t I?</li> <li>* We were here, weren’t we?</li> <li>*I have a car, don’t I?</li> <li>*He has a lorry, doesn’t he?</li> <li>*She had a house, didn’t she?</li> </ul>

**Further Examples:**

(I am)	I am writing a letter, aren’t I?
(Let’s)	<i>Let’s read this book, shall we?</i>
(Imperative)	<i>Close that door, will you?</i> Do come here, won’t you? Shut up, can’t you?
(Negative Imperative)	Don’t smoke, will you?

(Let +noun/object Pron.)	<i>Let me drink water, will you?</i> <i>Let us go out, will you?</i>
(’d rather)	You’d rather go, wouldn’t you?
(’d like)	He’d like to go, wouldn’t he?
(’d better)	She’d better stay, hadn’t she?
(’s + verb + ing)	He’s eating, isn’t he?
(’s + Verb3)	She’s eaten, hasn’t she?
(has to/ have to/ had to)	He has to eat, doesn’t he? They have to sleep, don’t they? We had to try again, didn’t we?
(ought to)	He ought to work, oughtn’t he?
(that, this)	That is the watchman, isn’t it? This is the teacher, isn’t it?
(There)	There is something wrong, isn’t there? There is nobody in the room, is there? There is some more pens, aren’t there?
(daren’t/needn’t)	He dare not speak about him, <b>dare he?</b> They need not go there, <b>need they?</b>
(everything)	Everything is good, isn’t it?

Sentences which contain words such as: seldom, little, hardly (broad negative), never (negative adverb), nothing, are treated as negative statements, therefore, they are followed by an ordinary interrogative that ends with the subject pronoun; as:

(Never)	They never cheat people, do they?
(Nothing)	Nothing was found, was it?
(No/Not+noun/Adj.)	No sugar is added, is it? Not a very good food, was it? It is no good, is it?

(Hardly)	The shirt is hardly suitable for me, is it?
(Rarely)	It has hardly rained in autumn, has it? She rarely comes here, does she?
(Little)	There was little he could do about it, was there?
(Seldom)	It seldom appears at night, does it?

In sentences which contain words such as: neither, none, no one, nobody (negative pronoun), we use ‘they’ as a subject of the Tag and the statement is treated as negative; as:

(Neither)	Neither of the girls attended, did they?
(No one)	No one will come, will they?
(Nobody)	Nobody is in the room, are they?

Sentences which begin with words such as: (everybody, everyone, somebody, someone) we use the pronoun ‘they’ as a subject of the Tag; as:

(Everyone)	Everyone told me, didn't they? Everyone tells me, don't they?
(Everybody)	Everybody warned him, didn't they? Everybody warns him, don't they?
(Somebody)	Somebody wanted water, didn't they? Somebody wants water, don't they?

**Exercise (279):**

Choose and underline the most suitable answer from a, b, or c:

1. Saleem doesn't need help,.....?  
(a) does he?                      (b) did he?                      (c) doesn't he?
2. She walks two kilometers every morning,.....?  
(a) didn't she?                      (b) does she?                      (c) doesn't she?
3. Don't forget what he said,.....?  
(a) will you?                      (b) won't you?                      (c) don't you?
4. I have to leave now,.....?  
(a) didn't I?                      (b) mustn't I?                      (c) don't I?
5. A patient has to take medicine,.....?  
(a) has he?                      (b) doesn't he?                      (c) didn't he?
6. Not an excellent quality,.....?  
(a) wasn't it?                      (b) was it?                      (c) isn't it?
7. There is little we can do about it,.....?  
(a) isn't there?                      (b) is there?                      (c) is it?
8. Nothing will harm him,.....?  
(a) will it?                      (b) won't it?                      (c) would it?
9. No water is available,.....?  
(a) is there?                      (b) isn't it?                      (c) is it?
10. Nobody is above the law,.....?  
(a) is it?                      (b) isn't it?                      (c) are they?
11. Everyone blamed him,.....?  
(a) did they?                      (b) didn't they?                      (c) doesn't he?
12. There is someone hiding,.....?  
(a) is there?                      (b) isn't it?                      (c) isn't there?
13. Do make some tea,.....?  
(a) won't you?                      (b) will you?                      (c) don't you?
14. Stop that noise,.....?  
(a) do you?                      (b) don't you?                      (c) can't you?
15. It seldom makes noise,.....?  
(a) does it?                      (b) doesn't it?                      (c) is it?

16. That is the pilot,.....?  
 (a) is he?                      (b) isn't it?                      (c) is it?
17. Neither of the donkeys drank,.....?  
 (a) did they?                      (b) didn't they?                      (c) do they?
18. He hardly speaks French,.....?  
 (a) doesn't he?                      (b) did he?                      (c) does he?
19. She dare not touch it,.....?  
 (a) dare she?                      (b) doesn't she?                      (c) did she?
20. He used to visit us,.....?  
 (a) did he?                      (b) doesn't he?                      (c) didn't he?
21. I am used to drinking hot tea,.....?  
 (a) am I?                      (b) am not I?                      (c) aren't I?
22. I am not used to smoking,.....?  
 (a) aren't I?                      (b) am I?                      (c) did I?
23. She is used to wearing scarf,.....?  
 (a) doesn't she?                      (b) isn't she?                      (c) didn't she?
24. They are not used to swimming in the sea,.....?  
 (a) are they?                      (b) did they?                      (c) don't they?
25. He was used to doing it,.....?  
 (a) didn't he?                      (b) wasn't he?                      (c) did he?
26. They were not used to such works,.....?  
 (a) did they?                      (b) were they?                      (c) do they?
27. I have got a pen,.....?  
 (a) have I?                      (b) didn't I?                      (c) haven't I?
28. Let's go now,.....?  
 (a) will you?                      (b) will we?                      (c) shall we?
29. Let us keep quiet,.....?  
 (a) will you?                      (b) shall we?                      (c) won't you?
30. You get used to drinking coffee,.....?  
 (a) do you?                      (b) did you?                      (c) don't you?
31. They soon got used to eating hot food,.....?  
 (a) did they?                      (b) didn't they?                      (c) do they?
32. We need not keep it with them,.....?  
 (a) did we?                      (b) need we?                      (c) didn't we?
33. He's driven the car,.....?  
 (a) isn't he?                      (b) has he?                      (c) hasn't he?
34. She's writing a letter,.....?  
 (a) hasn't she?                      (b) is she?                      (c) isn't she?
35. They'd rather choose that one,.....?  
 (a) hadn't they?                      (b) wouldn't they?                      (c) didn't they?
36. I'd like to meet him,.....?  
 (a) didn't I?                      (b) would I?                      (c) wouldn't I?

37. He'd better stay,.....?  
(a) didn't he? (b) wouldn't he? (c) hadn't he?
38. Toney can't win the game,.....?  
(a) can he? (b) can't he? (c) could he?
39. They were not at home,.....?  
(a) were they? (b) did they? (c) weren't they?
40. She may not come,.....?  
(a) mayn't she? (b) might she? (c) may she?
41. He does not have to come here, .....?  
(a) does he? (b) haven't he? (c) hasn't he?
42. They don't have to go there, .....?  
(a) don't they? (b) haven't they? (c) do they?
43. We didn't have to sleep late, .....?  
(a) did we? (b) haven't we? (c) didn't we?
44. There is little I can do about it, .....?  
(a) isn't there? (b) isn't it? (c) is there?
45. There is some more pencils in the drawer,.....?  
(a) isn't it? (b) aren't there? (c) are there?
46. Everything is Okay,.....?  
(a) isn't it? (b) is it? (c) are they?
47. They dare not approach it,.....?  
(a) daren't they? (b) dare they? (c) are they?
48. We need not go to her,.....?  
(a) are we? (b) need we? (c) needn't we?

**Exercise (280):**

Add the necessary **Tag Question** to the following statements:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. You found her book,.....?           | 2. He can speak Persian,.....?            |
| 3. She'd rather go by plane,.....?     | 4. That pant is hardly good for me,.....? |
| 5. Sami drinks too much coffee, .....? | 6. We always work hard,.....?             |
| 7. He has a lot of money, .....?       | 8. I am not thin as you are,.....?        |
| 9. He plays oud well,.....?            | 10. It ran very fast, .....?              |
| 11. You'll have some more milk,.....?  | 12. You never used to sleep late,.....?   |
| 13. Let's visit him,.....?             | 14. Come and see him tomorrow, .....?     |
| 15. Rami used to play chess,.....?     | 16. Osama's coming, .....?                |
| 17. He will come to the                | 18. She won't come,.....?                 |

- meeting,.....?
19. I am too early today,.....?
21. Let me help him,.....?
23. We don't like salt,.....?
25. I am a doctor,.....?
27. She has been to Iran,.....?
29. Ali can speak English,.....?
31. He might eat,.....?
33. She ought to take food,.....?
35. He had to sleep early,.....?
37. He must not come here,.....?
39. I used to go there,.....?
41. Let's read the Quran,.....?
43. I'd rather leave now,.....?
45. He dare not disobey them,.....?
47. Stop that music,.....?
49. Do sleep early,.....?
51. There is somebody moving,.....?
53. Everyone visited him,.....?
55. No one will eat,.....?
57. Nobody is clever,.....?
59. Nothing will happen,.....?
61. There is a lot we can do about it,.....?
63. I am not traveling, .....?
65. There is little she can do about it, .....?
67. She dare not speak a word,.....?
69. It builds nests,.....?
71. He is coming,.....?
73. We can do it,.....?
75. He had finished,.....?
77. They do it,.....?
79. He has millions,.....?
20. Have another cup,.....?
22. It sang a song,.....?
24. It broke the door,.....?
26. They have a donkey,.....?
28. He doesn't go out,.....?
30. Everything was running smoothly,.....?
32. I have to hurry, .....?
34. Sami has to take food,.....?
36. We needn't borrow money,.....?
38. I have my dinner at 2 pm,.....?
40. He never used to smoke,...?
42. Let us go in,.....?
44. I'd better work hard,.....?
46. Don't come late,.....?
48. There is nobody in,.....?
50. Do go there,.....?
52. That is the actress,.....?
54. Neither of the cats appeared,.....?
56. It seldom comes here,.....?
58. No salt was added,.....?
60. There is no one here,.....?
62. Not a very interesting tale,.....?
64. Someone wanted food, .....?
66. There is some more tables in the room, .....?
68. He need not go there,.....?
70. I taught him,.....?
72. She was weeping,.....?
74. It has appeared,.....?
76. I never cheat,.....?
78. They did it,.....?
80. I have problems,.....?

## So do I / Neither do I (Parallel Addition)

**Read the following sentences:**

1. She can cook food. He also can cook food.	She can cook food <b>and so</b> can he.
2. They have visited Iran. She has visited Iran, too.	They have visited Iran <b>and so</b> has she.

The above sentences show that 'so' can be used to denote a meaning similar to that which is created by 'also' and 'too'. It adds to the meaning in a parallel way. Such structures use the same auxiliary verb or one of those of the same tense. It is based on:

(so + auxiliary verb + subject)
---------------------------------

**Read the following sentences:**

1. She can't cook food. He can't cook food.	She can't cook food <b>and neither</b> can he.
2. They haven't visited Israel. She hasn't visited Israel, either.	They haven't visited Israel <b>and nor</b> has she.

The above sentences show that 'neither' and 'nor' can be used to denote a meaning similar to that which is created by 'also not' and 'either'. It adds to the meaning in a parallel way. Such structures use the same auxiliary verb or one of those of the same tense. It is based on:

(neither + auxiliary verb + subject) (nor
---

Some more examples which give the same parallel meaning created by (**[and] so**), (**[and] neither**), (**[and] nor**):

We will not play. He will not play either.

She can't sleep. He can't sleep.

He doesn't smoke. They don't smoke.

I can't read. She can't read.

You are not clever. He is not clever.

Sudan is rich. Iran is rich, too.

We will not play, **neither** will he.

She can't sleep, nor can he.

He doesn't smoke, **nor** do they.

**Neither I nor** she can read.

You are not clever, **nor** is he.

**Both Sudan and** Iran are rich.

They don't play chess. I don't play chess.

They don't play chess, I **don't either**. or (**so don't I**).

**Exercise (281):**

Join the following sentences using '**and so**':

1. The labourers are eating. I am also eating.  
The labourers are eating and so .....
2. She works very hard. He works very hard, too.  
She works very hard and so.....
3. My mother will cook. Your mother will cook, too.  
My mother will cook food and so.....
4. Ali is a good swimmer. Hasan is also a good swimmer.  
Ali is a good swimmer and so.....
5. We are cleaning our room. She is cleaning her room, too.  
We are cleaning our room and so.....
6. They have sold their house. He has sold his house, too.  
They have sold their house and so.....
7. Tijani has a beautiful garden. Yahya has a beautiful garden, too.  
Tijani has a beautiful garden and so.....
8. Nabeel used to read stories. Kamal used to read stories, too.  
Nabeel used to read stories and so.....
9. Faisal got a prize. Aadil got a prize, too.  
Faisal got a prize and so.....
10. Nadir speaks English well. Sabir speaks English well, too.  
Nadir speaks English well and so.....

**Exercise (282):**

Join the following sentences using '**neither/ nor**':

1. Jabir will not come today. Mirgani will not come today, either.  
Jabir will not come today, nor.....
2. She is not a good girl. Her friend is not a good girl, either.  
She is not a good girl, neither.....
3. I don't sleep late. He doesn't sleep late, either.  
I don't sleep late, neither.....
4. He did not waste his time. We did not waste our time, either.  
He did not waste his time, nor.....
5. She doesn't go out without a scarf. Nada doesn't go out without a scarf, either.  
She doesn't go out without a scarf, neither.....
6. They haven't eaten food. I haven't eaten food, either.  
They haven't eaten food, nor.....
7. We can't blame him. They can't blame him, either.

- We can't blame him, neither.....
8. You may not pass in exam. She may not pass in exam, either.  
You may not pass in exam, nor.....
  9. He did not go to the cinema. I did not go to the cinema, either.  
He did not go to the cinema, nor.....
  10. I could not do it. He could not do it, either.  
I could not do it, neither.....

**Exercise (283):**

Choose the most suitable answer from 'a', 'b' or 'c':

1. Ali loves Iran and .....Husain.  
(a) neither is (b) so does (c) too is
2. Majid has gone to China and .....Sami.  
(a) neither has (b) either has (c) so has
3. They can't come today and.....she.  
(a) neither can (b) so can (c) either can
4. They got high marks in exams, I did.....  
(a) so (b) either (c) too
5. Sami never smokes cigarettes and .....Rami.  
(a) so does (b) neither does (c) too does
6. He is keen on helping others and .....  
(a) so is she (b) so she is (c) she is so
7. They are reading the book and .....  
(a) we are so (b) so we are (c) so are we
8. Hamid can't speak English, Jamal can't,.....  
(a) either (b) neither (c) so
9. Tariq is from Elgolid and .....Hayder.  
(a) neither is (b) so is (c) too is
10. I can't eat this type of food and .....my brother.  
(a) too can (b) nor can (c) so can

**Exercise (284):**

Rewrite the following using the words given in brackets:

1. My brother is a teacher. My sister is a teacher, too. (and so)
2. He had Weika for lunch. She had Weika for lunch, too. (and so)
3. Nemairi doesn't tell lie. Qurashi doesn't tell lie, either. (nor)
4. He enjoys reading books. She enjoys reading books, too. (and so)
5. I will not attend the class. They will not attend the class, either.  
(neither)
6. Isam doesn't have a house. Nadir doesn't have a house, either.  
(nor)
7. They have left the city. He has left the city, too. (and so)

8. He milked the cow. She also milked the cow. (and so)
9. I did not complete the work. You did not complete the work, either. (neither)
10. She is not going to the party. We are not going to the party, either. (nor)

**Exercise (285):**

Read the following statements and respond to them, using the subjects given in the brackets:

Example: (i) He can speak English, (we)

Answer:            so can we.

Example: (ii) They will go today, (he)

Answer:            so will he.

Example: (iii) I respect you very much, (he)

Answer:            so does he.

1. He arrived yesterday, (I )
2. Sami writes to you very often, (she)
3. She must cook today, (they)
4. Husain wrote many essays, (Waleed)
5. He shall attend the meeting, (we)
6. Horses eat grass, (donkeys)
7. Hani likes reading the Quran, (I )
8. The fish was delicious, (the meat)
9. Tariq could reach the lecture, (Rami)
10. Hasan is intellectual, (Isam)
11. Ali is fighting the enemy, (you)
12. They were feeding the poor, (Ali)
13. You are performing prayers, ( I )
14. I help the orphans, (she)
15. He drives cars, (they)
16. They have drunk tea, (he)
17. I am supporting Hasan, (they)
18. You clean the room, (she)
19. We defeat the Imperialist, (Iran)
20. She needs food, (we)

**Exercise (286):**

Read the following statements and respond to them, using the subjects given in the brackets:

Example: (i) They will visit you, (he)

Answer:            so will he.

Example: (ii) Ali doesn't like smoking, (his brother)

Answer:       neither does his brother.

1. She can't cook, (her sister)
2. Sami swims well, (Rami)
3. He did not meet you, (they)
4. I am not in hurry, (she)
5. Hala does not need to go there, (he)
6. He likes playing music, (we)
7. He must study hard, (I )
8. This man is very religious, (those men)
9. He is keen on learning everything, (I )
10. A dove flies, (eagles)
11. I don't waste time, (she)
12. A shark can't survive out of water, (a whale)
13. We could not reach him, (they)
14. He has completed the course, (you)
15. I should go now, (he)
16. The black donkey did not drink water, (the white donkey)
17. His house doesn't have a door, (my house)
18. They don't like cheating, (she)
19. He is not going there, (I )
20. They were not standing here, (he)
21. You daren't speak a word, (they)
22. I need not come today, (you)

## Adverb Clause of Time with (When, While, As)

شبه الجملة الظرفية الزمنية  
مع (عندما، بينما، اثناء)

### *Adverb Clause of Time with When:*

**Read the following sentences:**

1. He was sleeping when the thief came in.
2. When he entered the house, she was reading the Quran.
3. They were standing under the tree when the bomb exploded.

In sentence 1, 'he was sleeping' is the **Principal Clause**. We may agree that he was sleeping, but 'When?' It was 'when the thief came in'. The words 'when the thief came in' is the **Subordinate Clause**. 'when the thief came in' is an **Adverb Clause of Time**.

In sentence 2, 'when he entered the house' is the **Adverb Clause of Time**. The words 'she was reading the Quran' is the **Principal Clause**.

In sentence 3, 'when the bomb exploded' is the **Adverb Clause of Time**. 'they were standing under the tree' is the **Principal Clause**.

**Note:**

The **Adverb Clause of Time** that uses 'when' is based on the past simple tense. The **Principal Clause** is based on the past continuous tense.

<b>Subordinate Clause</b>	<b>Principal Clause</b>
When he entered the house	she was reading the Quran

- \* In some cases, the word 'as' can play the role of 'when' e.g.:
- As he saw the crocodile, he shot at it.

## ***Adverb Clause of Time with While/As:***

**Read the following sentences:**

1. I met my friend **while I was going to the market.**
2. Salim fell down **while he was playing football.**
3. She broke the glass **while she was cleaning it.**
4. He damaged the radio **as he was repairing it.**

In the above sentences, the word 'while' in the subordinate clause is a **conjunction**.

In sentence 1, 'I met my friend' is the **Principal Clause**. Then we may ask: When did I meet my friend? The answer is 'while I was going to the market'. Therefore, 'while I was going to the market' is the **Subordinate Clause**. Thus, an **Adverb Clause of Time** is formed.

In sentence 2, 'while he was playing football' is the **Subordinate Clause**.

In sentence 3, 'while she was cleaning it' is the **Subordinate Clause**.

In sentence 4, the word 'as' plays the role of '**while**'.

Such Subordinate Clauses act as **Adverb Clauses of Time**.

**Note:**

The **Adverb Clause of Time** that uses 'while' is based on the past continuous tense. The **Principal Clause** is based on the past simple tense.

**Principal Clause**

I met my friend

**Subordinate Clause**

while I was going to the market

## ***Adverb Clause of Time with While:***

**Read the following sentences:**

1. The girls were washing the dishes while the women were cooking food.

2. While he was writing a letter, she was reading a story.
3. The boys were praying while the girls were reading the Quran.

In the above sentences, the actions were going on simultaneously at the same time. Both the Principal Clause and the Subordinate Clause are based on the past continuous tense.

<b>Principal Clause</b>	<b>Subordinate Clause</b>
The girls were washing the dishes	while the women were cooking food

4. The conjunctions ‘**as, till, until, before, after, as soon as, since**’ create Adverb Clause of Time; as:
  1. As the king entered the palace, all the ministers stood up.
  2. As I was walking, I found a piece of gold.
  3. Don’t start the game till/until the captain comes.
  4. The student must finish his homework before he goes to school.
  5. After the medical treatment was completed, the patient died.
  6. As soon as he saw the cat, he cried loudly.
  7. It is just a month since we started our programs.

**Exercises (287):**

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate **tense-forms** of the verbs given in the brackets:

Example: She was preparing the files when he.....(come) into the office.

Ans.: *She was preparing the files when he came into the office.*

1. He was still sleeping when she.....(reach) the house.
2. Where was he standing when the thief ..... (enter) the shop?
3. The party was just starting when we..... (complete) the work.
4. The boys were singing when she.....(leave) for home.
5. The child was weeping when his mother..... (be) not at home.
6. When they.....(go) to her shop, she was selling vegetables.
7. When my boss.....(speak) to me, I was doing my duty.
8. I was eating food when my friend.....(call) to me.
9. I was watching a film when the servant.....

(knock) my door.

10. When he talked to me, my friend..... (try) to ask him a question.
11. Workers were sleeping when the managers.....  
.....(be) not in the company.

**Exercises (288):**

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate **tense-forms** of the verbs given in the brackets:

Example: While the teacher .....(teach), we entered the class.

Ans.: While the teacher was teaching, we entered the class.

1. While the soldier.....(march), his hat blew off.
2. While the peon.....(ring) the bell, the headmaster arrived.
3. The child's heart .....(throb) with joy when he saw his mother.
4. The thief .....(tremble) with fear when a policeman appeared.
5. While Ali.....(sleep), Tariq kept awake.
6. People.....(watch) while the actors.....(act).
7. While she.....(feed) the child, he suddenly fell down.
8. While they.....(walk), they found a piece of gold.
9. The machine.....(work) when I reached the factory.
10. The man jumped off the bus while it.....  
.....(move).
11. He .....(climb) the tree when it began to rain.

**Exercise (289):**

Combine the following sentences, using (**when**) or (**while**) as shown in the examples below:

Example: It was raining. He left the office.

Ans. *It was raining when he left the office.*

Example: The girls were reading. The boys were writing.

Ans. *The girls were reading while the boys were writing.*

1. I crossed the track. The train was approaching.

2. The cook was frying fish. The servant was washing dishes.
3. She met him. He was sitting in the park.
4. The bell rang. The students were entering the school.
5. Mother was cleaning a table. She saw the rat in the room.
6. I was going to the river. It began to rain.
7. Ali was planting flowers. Hasan was watering the trees.
8. The mechanic was repairing the car. Jabir was cleaning it.
9. Sameer was drawing a picture. Tariq received a call.
10. I injured my finger. I was cutting onions.

**Exercise (290):**

Combine the following sentences, using (**when**) or (**while**) as shown in the examples below:

Example: The party was over. Then the car came.

Ans. *When the party was over, the car came.*

Example: Amal was eating. During that time, Mona was sleeping.

Ans. *While Amal was eating, Mona was sleeping.*

1. He met his friend. Then he spoke to him.
2. They were working. During that time, Mona was cooking.
3. The man opened the door. The two thieves left the house.
4. The autumn came. Then my family went to India.
5. We came to the restaurant. At that time Salih was eating.
6. Sabir was ironing his shirt. Then he heard Ali's voice.
7. He was reading the Quran. Then she came in.
8. They were swimming. During that time, we were fishing.
9. Jabir was watching a film. Then Ahmed called for him.
10. You were speaking to Hasan. During that time, he came here.

**Exercises (291):**

Combine each of the following pairs of sentences using (**as**):

Example:(a) There was a loud noise. I was sleeping then.

Answer: *As I was sleeping, there was a loud noise.*

Example:(b) He saw the deer run away. He ran after it then.

Answer: *As he saw the deer run away, he ran after it.*

1. He was playing football. He broke his leg then.
2. The teacher entered the class. The students stood up then.
3. They were traveling by car. A thief attacked them then.
4. He was walking in the street. He met his friend then.
5. The players received the medals. The supporters applauded then.
6. A rabbit was jumping over the wood. It was injured then.
7. The baker was making bread. He burned his hand then.
8. The referee ended the match. The players stopped playing then.

9. I left the house. I remembered the money then.
10. The sun set. The heat disappeared then.

## Adverb Clause of Time with (After, Before, When)

شبه الجملة الظرفية الزمنية  
مع (بعد، قبل، عندما)

### *\* Adverb Clause of Time with (After, Before, When) (Present Perfect):*

**Read the following sentences:**

1. They will visit you **when you come** home.
2. I shall buy that car **before it becomes** expensive.  
‘They will visit you’ is the **Principal Clause**. ‘when you come home’ is the **Adverb Clause of Time**.

As it is mentioned in the previous lesson, the conjunctions ‘when’, ‘after’, ‘before’, ‘until’, ‘as soon as’ contribute to the formation of the **Adverb Clause of Time**. The above sentences are in the future tense and the present tense.

**The following are further exemplifications:**

1. She will not visit us until we visit her.
2. Ali will get his Bachelor Degree in English before he is twenty.
3. I will marry after I build a house.
4. When we complete this course, we will get a job.
5. I shall be well-prepared as soon as the enemies are here.

**Now read the following sentences:**

1. I will play with that team **after that coach has gone**.
2. He will visit you **when he has arrived in the city**.  
In sentence 1, ‘I will play with that team’ is the **Principal Clause** and ‘after that coach has gone’ is the Adverb Clause of Time. **The Adverb Clause of Time is in the Present Perfect**.  
In sentence 2, ‘He will visit you’ is the **Principal Clause** and ‘when he has arrived in the city’ is the **Adverb Clause of Time** which is also in the **Present Perfect**.

**The following are further exemplifications:**

1. He will contact you after you have signed the contract.
2. He will be at home before she has left it.
3. We will wait for him until he has completed the work.

4. She will not depart her office before she has finished her duty.
5. As soon as I have reached Dongola, I will come to your house.

**Exercises (292):**

Put the **verbs** given in the brackets into the correct tense form:

Example: We will not be happy until our father .....(reach) home.

Answer: **We will not be happy until our father has reached home.**

Example: The rain.....(spoil) all the dates before I have found a cartoon box.

Answer: **The rain will spoil the dates before I have found a cartoon box.**

1. She will join him when she.....(deliver) the child.
2. I will drive that car after my father.....(buy) it to me.
3. He will not forgive you until you .....(settle) the conflict.
4. They .....(go) as soon as they have completed the project.
5. Ali will not leave the garage before he .....(repair) his car.
6. We will visit our uncle after we .....(cook) our food.
7. I .....(have) a new car before this month has passed.
8. They will publish the book after the writer.....(write) it.
9. She.....(come) as soon as she has finished her office-duty.
10. I will not get a chance until I .....(waste) my time there.

**\* Adverb Clause of Time with(After, Before, When) (Past Perfect):**

**Read the following sentences:**

1. I had visited them **before they went to Iran.**
2. He did his homework **after he had washed his clothes.**
3. **When he had completed the work**, he departed the office.
4. **When we reached the hospital**, he had already died.

In sentence 1, 'I had visited them' is the **Principal Clause** and 'before they went to Iran' is the **Adverb Clause of Time**. The Adverb Clause of Time is in the Past Perfect.

In sentence 2, 'He did his homework' is the **Principal Clause** and 'after he had washed his clothes' is the **Adverb Clause of Time**. The Adverb Clause of Time is in the Past Perfect.

In sentence 3, 'he departed the office' is the **Principal Clause** and 'When he had completed the work' is the **Adverb Clause of Time**. The Adverb Clause of Time is in the Past Perfect.

In sentence 4, 'he had already died' is the **Principal Clause**

and 'When we reached the hospital' is the **Adverb Clause of Time**. The Adverb Clause of Time is in the Past Perfect.

The words 'when', 'after', 'before', 'as soon as' are conjunctions which contribute to the formation of the adverb Clause of Time.

**Exercises (293):**

Complete the following sentences, using the correct form of the **verbs** given in the brackets:

1. After he.....(type) the letter, he posted it.
2. When they.....(learn) English, they began to study medicine.
3. When she.....(has) her breakfast, she went to the college.
4. He went to bed as soon as he.....(finish) his homework.
5. Ali had consulted the engineer before he.....(buy) the new house.
6. The film.....(start) before they reached the cinema hall.
7. After she.....(explain) the lesson, she asked us some questions.
8. As soon as he.....(hear) Azan, he rushed to the mosque.
9. When Sami .....(draw) the picture, Mona hanged it in her room.
10. After he.....(perform) traveling prayer, he began his journey.
11. Before she came to Dongola, she .....(be) to several cities in Sudan.
12. He reached the station after the bus ..... (leave).
13. They had killed the lion before the forest-guards .....(arrest) them.
14. When we.....(have) our meal, they came to us.
15. And those who were given the Book did not become divided except after clear evidence .....(come) to them.
16. After they.....(dig) a well, they bought a water pump.
17. Before he .....(plant) the tree, he had

fertilized the soil.

18. She had heated the water before she .....  
(put) the eggs into it.
19. We.....(cut) fruits into small pieces before  
we added sugar to the mixture.
20. After I .....(see) the quarrel, I  
contacted the police.

**Exercises (294):**

Rewrite the following sentences, using (**before**) as shown in the example given below:

Example: When she went out, the bus had not yet reached the station.

Answer: **She had gone out before the bus reached the station.**

Example: When they were caught, they had not yet crossed the border.

Answer: **They had been caught before they crossed the border.**

1. When they came to him, he had not yet departed the house.
2. When he reached the office, the secretary had not yet arrived.
3. When she went to Iran, she had not yet learned Persian.
4. When I left the police station, the case had not yet been registered.
5. When he was employed, he had not yet got any training.
6. When Ali got to the airport, the plane had not yet taken off.
7. When I bought the book, I had not yet known the author's name.
8. When he reached the theater, he had not yet purchased the ticket.
9. When I went to the playground, they had not yet arrived there.
10. When he found a good car, he had not yet prepared the money.

**Exercises (295):**

Rewrite the following sentences, using (**after**) as shown in the example given below:

Example: When the bell rang, they had already reached the school.

Answer: **The bell rang after they had reached the school.**

1. When I reached the airport, the plane had already taken off.
2. When he entered the cinema hall, the show had already begun.
3. When the thief was caught, he had already sold the stolen items.
4. When she met Ali, he had already heard the news.
5. When I reached the station, the train had already left.
6. When my brother came home, we had already had our supper.
7. When the police arrived, the thief had already escaped.

8. When she got to the shopping center, it had already been raided by a gang.
9. When Azan was raised, we had already finished the ablution.
10. When he sold the old car, he had already bought a new one.

## Adverb Clause of Reason with (Because, As, Since)

شبه الجملة الظرفية السببية  
مع (بسبب، لأن، نظراً)

### \* Adverb Clause of Reason with (because):

**Read this sentence:**

1. I want to sleep because I am tired.

In the above sentence 'I want to sleep' is the **Principal Clause** and 'because I am tired' is the **Subordinate Clause** or the **Adverb Clause**. Why do I want to sleep? It is 'because I am tired'. The **Subordinate Clause** 'because I am tired' modifies the verb 'sleep' in the **Principal Clause**, and hence plays the role of an Adverb in relation to a word in the **Principal Clause** and creates an **Adverb of Reason**.

**The following sentences would give further explanation:**

1. He was dismissed from company because he violated its rules.
2. I missed the bus because I woke up very late.
3. Mona passed the test because she studied thoroughly.

**Exercises (296):**

Combine each of the following pairs of sentences using (**because**) as shown in the examples below:

Example: He was sad. He failed in exams.

Answer: He was sad **because** he failed in exams.

Example: Fatima prayed, so she was happy.

Answer: Fatima was happy **because** she prayed.

Example: The criminals attacked Rami, so he shot at them.

Answer: Rami shot at the criminals **because** they attacked him.

1. He was wearing a coat. It was very cold.
2. The shirt looked very dirty, so she decided to wash it.
3. The employer refused to pay them, so the employees were angry.
4. I am smiling. I am very happy.
5. The fire broke out, so the firemen were called.

6. She did not work hard, so she failed.
7. The agricultural crops failed this year. There were no rains.
8. I am very happy. My brother won the first prize.
9. He could not build a house. He lost the money.
10. He failed to attend morning classes today. He did not sleep last night.
11. We were exhausted, so we went to bed early.
12. They violated traffic rules, so they paid a fine.
13. New colonialism stole our natural resources, so Ali took the weapon against it.

### **\* Adverb Clause of Reason with (as/since):**

**Read the following sentences:**

1. Ali was very happy as he got the highest mark in the class.
2. Since he couldn't cook, he remained without food all the day.  
 In sentence 1, the **Principal Clause** is 'Ali was very happy'. Was happy-Why? The reason is the **Subordinate Clause** 'as he got the highest mark in the class'. The word '**as**' plays the role of 'because'.

In sentence 2, the **Principal Clause** is 'he remained without food all the day'. Remained without food-Why? The reason is the **Subordinate Clause** 'Since he couldn't cook'. The word '**since**' plays the role of the word 'because'.

Therefore, '**as**' and '**since**' modify a word in the **Principal Clause**. They play a role in relation to a word in the **Principal Clause** and create **Adverbs of Reason**.

Both '**as**' and '**since**' may appear after or before the Principal Clause; e.g.:

1. He went to the bank as he wanted to withdraw some money.
2. As he wanted to withdraw some money, he went to the bank.

**Exercise (297):**

Join each of the following pairs of sentences. First use (**as**) and then use (**since**) as shown in the example below:

Example: This machine has troubled me very much. I am going to buy another machine.

Answer: (a) **As** this machine has troubled me very much, I am going to buy another machine.

(b) **Since** this machine has troubled me very much, I am going to buy another machine.

1. Salih found many gifts on his bed. He was surprised.

2. Randa was a careless student. She didn't get high marks.
3. Sameer was operating a loud music. He did not hear his father's call.
4. You have left such a good job. Never will you have rest in your life.
5. They were worried. They could not sleep all the night.
6. He is unable to continue in his job. He is going to leave the company.
7. We are very poor. We can't rent a house.
8. She has a gas-stove. She can cook very quickly.
9. We don't have sufficient money for renting a taxi. We have to go on foot.
10. I did not work very hard. I could not pass the entrance exam.
11. He painted the finest picture. He is going to get the first prize.
12. Traders increased the prices. People protested against them.
13. She was suffering from fever. She could not go to school.
14. The car fell into the mud. It became very dirty.
15. She committed adultery. She lost her virginity.
16. He started drinking wine. His face became gloomy.

**Exercise (298):**

Join each of the following pairs of sentences. First use (**because**) and then use (**because of**) as shown in the example below:

Example: They did not go out. It was dark.

- Answer: (a) They did not go out **because** it was dark.  
 (b) They did not go out **because of** darkness.

Example: She dressed Niqab. She is beautiful.

- (a) She dressed Niqab **because** she is beautiful.  
 (b) She dressed Niqab **because of** her beauty.

Example: He has a bad temper. People avoid him.

- (a) **Because** he has a bad temper, people avoid him.  
 (b) **Because of** his bad temper, people avoid him.

1. He did come to school. He was ill.
2. They did not go to the forest. It was dangerous.
3. We have a dog. They do not visit us.
4. She faces many problems. She is free.
5. He contracted AIDS. He is adulterous.
6. They can't confront the enemy. They are weak.

## Clause of Purpose (الغرض) with (to/in order to/so as to)

**Read the following sentences:**

1. Many tourists visit Sudan **to see the historical sites in the North.**
2. She cooked a delicious food **in order to make you happy.**
3. They worked very hard **so as to get admission in the medical college.**

In sentence 1, 'Many tourists visit Sudan' is the **Principal Clause**. Then we may ask 'Many tourists visit Sudan'-With what purpose? The answer is '**to see the historical sites in the North**'. It is the **Subordinate Clause of Purpose**.

In sentence 2, 'She cooked a delicious food' is the **Principal Clause**. Then we may ask 'She cooked a delicious food' -With what purpose? The answer is '**in order to make you happy**'. It is the **Subordinate Clause of Purpose**.

In sentence 3, 'They worked very hard' is the **Principal Clause**. Then we may ask 'They worked very hard' -With what purpose? The answer is '**so as to get admission in the medical college**'. It is the **Subordinate Clause of Purpose**.

**Formula:**

to/in order to/so as to+ **Infinitive**

## Adverb Clause of Purpose with (so that/in order that)

**Read the following sentences:**

1. The students *studied* hard so that they *could* pass the exams.
2. Traders *go* to the market in order that they *may* sell their goods.

In sentence 1, 'The students *studied* hard' is the **Principal Clause**. We may ask 'The students *studied* hard' -with what purpose? The answer is 'so that they *could* pass the exams'. It is the **Subordinate Clause of Purpose**. It is the **Adverb Clause of Purpose**.

In sentence 2, 'Traders *go* to the market' is the **Principal Clause**. We may ask 'Traders *go* to the market' -with what

purpose? The answer is ‘in order that they *may* sell their goods’. It is the **Subordinate Clause of Purpose**. It is the **Adverb Clause of Purpose**.

**Further examples:**

1. She sleeps early **so that she may wake up early**.
2. The firemen reached in time **so that they could extinguish the fire**.
3. I wrote the letter **in order that he might get some information**.

**Formula:**

Noun/Pronoun+ present forms+ so that/in order that/lest that +  
Noun/pronoun+ **can/may/will/shall**+ Infinitive

**Formula:**

Noun/Pronoun + past forms +so that/in order that/lest that +  
Noun/pronoun + **Could/might/would/should** + Infinitive

**Exercises (299):**

Join the two sentences without changing the meaning as shown in the examples below:

Example: Rami is studying hard to pass with flying-colors.

Answer: Rami is studying hard so as to pass with flying-colors.

Rami is studying hard in order to pass with flying- colors.

Rami is studying hard so that he can pass with flying-colors.

Rami is studying hard in order that he can pass with flying-colors.

Example: He helped the old woman to seek the consent of Allah.

Answer: He helped the old woman so as to seek the consent of Allah.

He helped the old woman in order to seek the consent of Allah.

He helped the old woman so that he could seek the consent of Allah.

He helped the old woman in order that he could seek the consent of Allah.

Example: A strong reaction will be taken to stop the anarchy.

Answer: A strong reaction will be taken so as to stop the anarchy.

A strong reaction will be taken in order to stop the anarchy.

A strong reaction will be taken so that the anarchy can be stopped.

A strong reaction will be taken in order that the anarchy

can be stopped.

1. We are collecting money to establish a Quranic school in our area.  
We are collecting money so as to.....  
We are collecting money in order to.....  
We are collecting money so that.....  
We are collecting money in order that.....
  
2. Sami went to the market to buy some books.  
Sami went to the market so as to.....  
Sami went to the market in order to.....  
Sami went to the market so that .....  
Sami went to the market in order that.....
  
3. He prays in mosque regularly to increase his faith in Allah.  
He prays in the mosque regularly so as to.....  
He prays in the mosque regularly in order .....  
He prays in the mosque regularly so that.....  
He prays in the mosque regularly in order that.....
  
4. He has joined the medical college to study medicine.  
She has joined the medical college so as to.....  
She has joined the medical college in order to.....  
She has joined the medical college so that.....  
She has joined the medical college in order that.....
  
5. It is hiding under the wood to catch the mouse.  
It is hiding under the wood so as to.....  
It is hiding under the wood in order to.....  
It is hiding under the wood so that.....  
It is hiding under the wood in order that.....
  
6. People go to Mecca to perform Haj.  
People go to Mecca so as to.....  
People go to Mecca in order to.....  
People go to Mecca so that.....  
People go to Mecca in order that.....
  
7. The good government enforces law to maintain peace in the society.  
The good government enforces law so as to.....  
The good government enforces law in order to.....

The good government enforces law so that.....  
The good government enforces law in order that.....

8. True Muslims worked hard to elevate the spiritual level of the society.

True Muslims worked hard so as to.....  
True Muslims worked hard in order to.....  
True Muslims worked hard so that.....  
True Muslims worked hard in order that.....

9. Efforts are being exerted to strengthen the Sudanese economy.

Efforts are being exerted by us so as.....  
Efforts are being exerted by us in order.....  
Efforts are being exerted by us so that.....  
Efforts are being exerted by us in order that.....

10. I slept early to wake up early.

I slept early so as to.....  
I slept early in order to.....  
I slept early so that.....  
I slept early in order that.....

11. Egyptian mercenaries joined the invaders to loot the natural resources of Sudan.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

12. We must be ready to confront the enemies.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**Exercises (300):**

Join each of the following pairs of sentences using **so that** as shown in the examples below:

Example: He **wants** to be a soldier. He may defend his country.

Answer: He wants to be a soldier *so that* he **may** defend his country.

1. He takes regular exercises. He may keep good health.

2. She decided to go to the hospital. She might see her grandfather.
3. He went to India. He might get better education.
4. They started reading books. They might get information about Sudan.
5. He shaved his beard. The police might not recognize him.
6. The players got better training. They could win the match.
7. Tourists go to the North of Sudan. They can see the pyramids.
8. They trained the army. No enemy should invade Sudan.
9. I take these tablets. I may get relieved from headache.
10. Stand there. The bus driver may see you.
11. We go to mosque regularly. We may remain good citizens.
12. We eat. We may live.

**Exercise (301):**

Rewrite the following sentences so as to make an **Adverb Clause of Purpose** in each of them.

Example:      Farmers **sow** seeds to get crops.

Answer:      Farmers sow seeds so that they **may** get crops.

Example:      He **put** up a fence in order to protect the cattle.

Answer:      He put up a fence in order that he **might** protect the cattle.

1. They went to the river in order to swim.
2. He left early so as to avoid traffic jam.
3. He drew out his pistol to defend himself.
4. Sit there in order so as to receive the first prize.
5. I go to a good school to get good education.
6. Tourists go to the South of Sudan to enjoy greenery.
7. We swim regularly to win the swimming contests.
8. She met you in order in order to say goodbye.
9. The fox hid the dead hen so as no other fox should eat it.
10. He worked day and night to become rich.
11. Almahadi fought the enemies in order to liberate his country.
12. They impose heavy taxes to exploit the common-man.
13. Salaries are being increased to eradicate poverty.

## (1) Adverb Clause of Result (نتيجة) with (so.....that), (too.....to), (such .....that)

### \* Adverb Clause of Result with (so.....that):

**Read these sentences:**

1. The tea was so *hot* **that I could not drink it.**
2. The dog ran so *quickly* **that I could not catch it.**

In sentence 1, 'The tea was so hot' is the **Principal Clause**. 'that I could not drink it' is the **Subordinate Clause of Result**. The word '**hot**' is an *Adjective*.

In sentence 2, 'The dog ran so quickly' is the **Principal Clause**. 'that I could not catch it' is the **Subordinate Clause of Result**. The word '**quickly**' is an *Adverb*.

Thus, the **Adverb Clause of Result** is formulated by:

am/is/are/ present simple	Adjective so.....that Adverb	can't/may not	Infinitive
------------------------------	------------------------------------	---------------	------------

was/were/ past simple/ perfect tense	Adjective so.....that Adverb	couldn't mightn't	Infinitive
--	------------------------------------	----------------------	------------

**Further explanation:**

1. Her writing **is** so bad that I **can't** read it.
2. He **is** so rude that people **avoid** him.
3. It **was** so hot that he **couldn't** drink it.
4. He **was** so ill that I **had to** postpone the meeting.
5. She **has changed** so much that I **could** not recognize her.
6. He **performed** so well that everybody **praised** him.
7. His health **is** so serious that he **may** not survive.
8. The thieves **were** so fast that he **might** not reach them.

### \* Adverb Clause of Result with (....too.....to):

'too.....to' expresses a kind of negative sense. 'too' comes before the Adjective.

**Read the following sentences:**

1. She is too busy to answer your inquiries.
2. The tea is too hot for him to drink.

Sentence 1, is developed as follows:

- \* She is very busy. She can't answer the inquiries.
- \* She is so busy that she can't answer the inquiries.
- \* She is too busy to answer the inquiries.

In the above sentences the Subject 'She' is described as 'busy', consequently, 'she is unable to answer the inquiries.

Sentence 2, is developed as follows:

- **The tea** is very hot. He can't drink **it**.
  - **The tea** is so hot that he can't drink **it**.
  - **The tea is too hot for him to drink.**
- or
- **The tea is too hot to be drunk by him.** (*Passive Form*)

In the above sentences, the Subject 'The tea' is described as 'hot', consequently, the subject 'he' is unable to drink it.

The difference between the two groups of sentences is that in the first group the subject described as 'busy' and the subject described as 'unable to answer' *are the same*. Therefore, there is no need to repeat the subject after the adjective 'busy' in 'too....to' sentence. The sentence is developed as follows:

She is too busy to answer the inquiries.

Thus, the formula is as follows:

She.....very..... She .....
She .....so.....that she.....
She .....too.....to + verb

Whereas in the second group of sentences the subject 'The tea' is described as 'hot' and the subject described as 'unable to drink' is 'He', *are not the same* therefore, the preposition 'for' and the object pronoun 'him' is added in 'too....to' sentence. If the subject described as unable to drink was 'They' we would get the Object Pronoun 'them' in 'too....to' sentence. It can be written in two ways; e. g.

- **The tea** is very hot. He can't drink **it**.
  - **The tea** is so hot that he can't drink **it**.
  - **The tea** is too hot for him to drink.
- or
- **The tea** is too hot to be drunk by him. (*Passive Form*)

The formula is as follows:

The tea.....very..... He.....  
 The tea .....so.....that he.....  
 The tea.....too.....**for** (Obj. Pro) to.....  
 or  
 The tea.....too.....to **be** (Ver3) by Obj. Pro

**\* Adverb Clause of Result with (Such/Such a/ Such an):**

**Read the following sentences:**

1. **It** was such a hot tea that I could not drink **it**.
2. He was such an ugly man that I could not look at his face.

In the above sentences, ‘**such**’ plays the role of ‘**so**’ and it is followed by either ‘**a**’ or ‘**an**’ on the basis of the vowel by which the adjective begins and the number of the noun that comes after the adjective. ‘that I could not drink it’ and ‘that I could not look at his face’ are **Subordinate Clauses of Result**. The adjective ‘hot’ begins with a consonant letter whereas the adjective ‘ugly’ begins with a vowel letter. Both the adjectives are followed by a singular noun. Therefore, they are preceded by either ‘**a**’ or ‘**an**’.

Thus, the **Adverb Clause of Result** with (**such....that**) is also formulated by the following formula when the noun is singular, but begins by any of the vowels (**a, o, e, u, i**, and silent ‘**h**’ in case of **such an**) and the other consonants in case of (**such a**):

A  
 .....such + adjective + **noun**(singular) + that.....  
 an

And also by the following formula when the noun is plural:

.....such + adjective + **noun**(plural) + that.....

**Further explanation:**

1. He is such an angry man that nobody can deal with him.
2. I was such a free woman that he could not trust me.
3. They are such bad people that you can’t deal with them.
4. It was such a quick running (by the thief) that I could not match it.

**Exercise (302):**

Join the two sentences without changing the meaning as shown in the examples below:

Ex.: The car is very old. I can't drive it.

Ans.: The car is so old that I can't drive it.

The car is too old for me to drive.

It is such an old car that I can't drive it.

Ex.: He is very weak. He can't lift the load.

Ans.: He is so weak that he can't lift the load.

He is too weak to lift the load.

He is such a weak man that he can't lift the load.

Ex.: The change was very gradual. No one observed it.

Ans.: The change was so gradual that no one could observe it.

The change was too gradual for anyone to observe.

It was such a gradual change that no one could observe it.

1. The journey was very tiring. I could not continue it.

The journey was so.....

The journey was too.....

It was such a .....

2. She is very ill. She can't walk.

She is so .....

She is too.....

She is such an .....

3. This man was very short. He couldn't touch the roof.

This man was so.....

This man was too.....

He was such .....

4. These stones were very heavy. I couldn't carry them.

These stones were so.....

These stones were too.....

They were such.....

5. These words are very difficult. We can't understand them.

These words are so.....

These words are too.....

They are such .....

6. The rock is very huge. They can't move it.

The rock is so.....

The rock is too.....

It is such .....

7. The river is very wide. I can't cross it.  
The river is so.....  
The river is too.....  
It is such .....
8. Toney is very foolish. He can't answer the questions.  
Toney is so.....  
Toney is too.....  
Toney is such .....
9. The novel is very boring. I can't finish it.  
The novel is so.....  
The novel is too.....  
It is such.....
10. The attack was very surprising. Nobody could resist it.  
The attack was so.....  
The attack was too.....  
It was such .....
11. The letter is very informal. I can't depend on it.  
The letter.....  
.....  
.....
12. The businessman is very intelligent. They can't cheat him.  
The businessman.....  
.....  
.....
13. He fought very bravely. They couldn't confront him.  
.....  
.....  
.....

**Exercise (303):**

Rewrite the following sentences using “**too.....to**” followed by “**such.....that**”:

1. This exercise is so difficult that we can't solve it.
2. Their mistake was so grave that I couldn't forgive it.
3. We were so ambiguous that she could not understand us.
4. Mona was so shy that she couldn't speak a word.

5. The lion is so far that they can't shoot it.
6. He is so weak that he can't resist any disease.
7. Rami is so short that he can't touch the ceiling.
8. Kamal is so fat that he can't run quickly.
9. The coffee was so hot that I couldn't drink it.
10. The street was so crowded that the cars couldn't move.
11. The roof is so high that he can't climb on it.
12. Blair was so stupid that he could not face difficulties.
13. Imperialists were so sad that they couldn't bear the defeat.

**Exercise (304):**

Combine each of the following pairs of sentences using **so.....that** and then **such.....that** as shown in the examples below:

Ex.: He played very *nicely*. He won the contest.

Ans.: He played so *nicely* that he won the contest.

It was such a *nice play* (*by him*) that he won the contest.

Ex.: She writes very fast. I can't match her.

Ans.: She writes so fast that I can't match her.

It is such a fast *writing* (*by her*) that I can't match her.

Ex.: He had hidden very quietly. I couldn't find him.

Ans.: He had hidden so quietly that I couldn't find him.

It had been such a *quiet hiding* (*by him*) that I couldn't find him.

Ex.: I will speak very wisely. He can't defeat me.

Ans.: I will speak so wisely that he can't defeat me.

It will be such a *wise speaking* (*by me*) that he can't defeat me.

1. The waves were very high. Tony couldn't reach the coast.
2. She is very enthusiastic. No difficulties can stop her.
3. The weather was very rainy. We had to delay our journey.
4. She was a very good cook. They could not match her.
5. He was a very informal. I became his friend.
6. They are very popular actors. Everyone likes them.
7. The exam was very difficult. Few students could pass it.
8. Tony is a very curious. He poked his nose into others affairs.
9. It is a very easy question. It poses no challenge to them.
10. We are very brave fighters. Nobody can defeat us.
11. He speaks clearly. We can understand him.
12. They will depart secretly. He can't observe them.
13. The calligraphist wrote beautifully. I couldn't imitate him.
14. It had dived deeply. We could not catch it.

**Exercise (305):**

Combine the following pairs of sentences using **so....that** and then **such.....that** as shown in the example below:

Ex.: The policeman was very cruel. He killed the prisoner.

Ans.: The policeman was so cruel that he killed the prisoner.

He was such a cruel policeman that he killed the prisoner.

1. Ali was very kind. Everybody liked him.
2. The old woman is very weak. She can't walk.
3. It rained very heavily. We could not go to school.
4. The doctor was very busy. He could not see her.
5. These cars are very expensive. Few people can buy them.
6. This lesson is very difficult. They do not understand it.
7. The book was very useful. I bought it immediately.
8. They were very ambiguous. I couldn't understand them.
9. He is very poor. He has no money to buy bread.
10. The man was very sad. He could not control his tears.
11. The boy will swim quickly. They can't defeat him.
12. The train had stopped suddenly. We couldn't start it.

## (2) Adverb Clause of Result (نتيجة) with (enough to)

‘Enough to’ is a kind of positive.

**Read the following sentences:**

1. He is so clever that he can solve difficult sums.

He is clever enough to solve difficult sums.

2. She speaks so loudly that they can hear her.

She speaks loudly enough for them to hear her.

or

She speaks loudly enough to be heard by them.

In sentence 1, ‘He is so clever’ is the **Principal Clause**. ‘that he can solve difficult sums’ is the **Subordinate Clause of Result**. The word ‘clever’ is an *Adjective*.

When ‘**enough to**’ is used, the adjective ‘clever’ came before ‘enough to’ and the infinitive with ‘**to**’ is added.

In sentence 2, ‘She speaks so loudly’ is **Principal Clause**. ‘that they can hear her’ is the **Subordinate Clause of Result**. The word ‘loudly’ is an *Adverb*.

Similarly, when ‘**enough to**’ is used, the adverb ‘loudly’ came before ‘enough to’ and the infinitive with ‘**to**’ is added.

Thus, the **Adverb Clause of Result** with ‘**enough to**’ is formulated by:

Adjective/Adverb	+	enough to	+	Infinitive
or				
Adjective/Adverb + enough for(object pronoun) to + Infinitive				
or				
Adjective/Adverb + enough to be(Verb3)by + Object Pronoun				

**Exercise (306):**

Join the two sentences without changing the meaning as shown in the examples below:

Example: The child is very old. He can travel alone.

The child is so old that he can travel alone.

The child is old enough to travel alone.

Example: Ali was very brave. He could scare the enemy.

Ali was so brave that he could scare the enemy.

Ali was brave enough to scare the enemy.



7. She is too bad to make friendship with. (good)
8. This fellow is not good enough to be accompanied. (bad)
9. This man is too weak to stand on his legs. (strong)
10. We are not rich enough to buy this car. (poor)
11. I am too obedient to go against them. (rebellious)
12. He is not responsible enough to be in charge of it.  
(irresponsible)

## Some Irregular Verbs

المعنى	Present Simple & infinitive المضارع والمصدر	Past Simple الماضي	Past Participle اسم المفعول
ينهض	Arise	Arose	Arisen
يستيقظ/يقظ	Awake	Awoke	Awaken
يكون	Be(am, is, are)	Was/were	Been
يلد/يحمل	Bear(give birth)	Bore	Born
يحمل/حمل	Bear (carry)	Bore	Borne
يضرب	Beat	Beat	Beaten
يصبح	Become	Became	Become
يبدأ	Begin	Began	Begun
يحنى	Bend	Bent	bent
يربط	Bind	Bound	Bound
يعض	Bite	Bit	Bitten
يدمي	Bleed	Bled	Bled
ينفخ/ يهب	Blow	Blew	Blown
يكسر	Break	Broke	Broken
يجلب	Bring	Brought	brought
يذيع	Broadcast	Broadcast	broadcast
يبني	Build	Built	built
يحرق	Burn	Burnt	burnt
يشترى	Buy	Bought	bought
يستطيع	Can	Could	-
يقبض/ يمسك	Catch	Caught	caught
يختار	Choose	Chose	Chosen
يتعلق/ يتمسك	Cling	Clung	Clung
يجي/ يأتي/ يحضر	Come	Came	Come
يكلف	Cost	Cost	cost
يزحف	Creep	Crept	Crept
يقطع	cut	Cut	cut
يتعامل	Deal	Dealt	dealt
يحفر	Dig	Dug	Dug
يفعل/ يعمل	Do/does	Did	Done
يرسم	Draw	Drew	Drawn
يحلم	Dream	Dreamt/dreamed	Dreamt/dreamed

يشرب	Drink	Drank	Drunk
يقود/ يسوق	Drive	Drove	Driven
يسكن / يمكث	Dwell	Dwelt	dwelt
يأكل	Eat	Ate	Eaten
يسقط	Fall	Fell	Fallen
يطعم	Feed	Fed	fed
يشعر	Feel	Felt	felt
يقاتل	Fight	Fought	Fought
يجد	Find	Found	found
يفر/ يهرب	Flee	Fled	Fled
يرفس/ يقذف	Fling	Flung	flung
يطير	Fly	Flew	Flown
يمنع	Forbid	Forbade	Forbidden
ينسى	Forget	Forgot	Forgotten
يغفر	Forgive	Forgave	forgiven
يجمد	Freeze	Froze	Frozen
يحصل	Get	Got	Got
يعطي	Give	Gave	given
يطحن	Grind	Ground	ground
يذهب	Go	Went	Gone
يزرع/ ينمو	Grow	Grew	Grown
يعلق/ يشنق	Hang	Hung	Hung
يملك	Have/has	Had	had
يسمع	Hear	Heard	heard
يخفي/ يخبئ	Hide	Hid	Hidden
يضرب	Hit	Hit	Hit
يرفع	Hold	Held	Held
يجرح	Hurt	Hurt	hurt
يحفظ	Keep	Kept	kept
يركع	Kneel	Knelt	Knelt
يعقد/ يربط	Knit	Knit / knitted	Knit / knitted
يعلم	Know	Knew	Known
تضع (البيض)	Lay	Laid	Laid
يقود	Lead	Led	led
يتكى/ يستند	Lean	Lent	lent

يقفز	Leap	Leapt	Leapt
يتعلم	Learn	Learnt	Learnt
يترك/ يغادر	Leave	Left	Left
يترك/ يدع	Let	Let	Let
يستلقي/ يرقد	Lie	Lay	Lain
ينير	Light	Lit/lighted	Lit/lighted
يفقد/ يضيع	Lose	Lost	lost
يصنع	Make	Made	Made
يمكن	May	Might	-
يعني	Mean	Meant	Meant
يلتقي/ يقابل	Meet	Met	Met
يضلل	Mislead	Misled	Misled
يجب	Must	-	-
ينبغي	Ought	-	-
يتغلب	Overcome	Overcame	Overcome
يدفع	Pay	Paid	paid
يضع	Put	Put	put
يترك	Quit	Quit/ quitted	Quit/ quitted
يقرأ	Read	Read	read
يركب	Ride	Rode	Ridden
يقرع	Ring	Rang	Rung
يشرق/ ينهض	Rise	Rose	Risen
يجري/ يركض	Run	Ran	Run
يقول	Say	Said	said
يرى	See	Saw	Seen
يبتغي/ يبحث	Seek	Sought	Sought
يبيع	Sell	Sold	Sold
يرسل	Send	Sent	sent
يضع	Set	Set	set
يهز	Shake	Shook	Shaken
سوف	Shall	Should	-
يزرف/ يسفك	Shed	Shed	Shed
يلمع	Shine	Shone	Shone
يصوب/ يضرب	Shoot	Shot	Shot
يعرض/ يظهر	Show	Showed	Shown
يتقلص	Shrink	Shrank	Shrunk

يغلق	Shut	Shut	Shut
يغني	Sing	Sang	Sung
يغرق	Sink	Sank	Sunk
يجلس	Sit	Sat	Sat
يذبح	Slay	Slew	Slain
ينام	Sleep	Slept	Slept
ينزلق	Slide	Slid	Slid
يشم	Smell	Smelt/smelled	Smelt/smelled
يبيذ	Sow	Sowed	sown
يتحدث/ يتكلم	Speak	Spoke	Spoken
يتهاجأ	Spell	Spelt/spelled	Spelt/spelled
يصرف/ يقضى	Spend	Spent	Spent
يريق/ يسكب	Spill	Spilt/ spilled	Spilt/ spilled
يعزل	Spin	Spun	Spun
يبصق	Spit	Spat	Spat
يشق	Split	Split	Split
يفسد/ يئلف	Spoil	Spoilt/spoiled	Spoilt/spoiled
ينشر	Spread	Spread	spread
يقفز	Spring	Sprang	Sprung
يقف	Stand	Stood	Stood
يسرق	Steal	Stole	Stolen
يلصق	Stick	Stuck	Stuck
يلدغ/ يلسع	Sting	Stung	Stung
يضرب	Strike	Struck	Struck
يكافح	Strive	Strove	Striven
يحلف	Swear	Swore	Sworn
يتورم	Swell	Swelled	Swollen
يكنس/ يمسح	Sweep	Swept	Swept
يسبح	Swim	Swam	Swum
يتأرجح	Swing	Swung	swung
يأخذ	Take	Took	Taken
يعلم/ يدرس	Teach	Taught	taught
يمزق	Tear	Tore	Torn
يخبر	Tell	Told	Told
يفكر	Think	Thought	Thought
يزدهر	Thrive	Thrived/throve	Thrived/throve
يرمي/ يقذف	Throw	Threw	Thrown
يغرز/ يطعن	Thrust	Thrust	Thrust
يدوس	Tread	Trod	Trod/ trodden

يفهم	Understand	Understood	understood
يتعهد / يتكفل	Undertake	Undertook	Undertaken
يؤيد	Uphold	Upheld	Upheld
قلق / يقلب	Upset	Upset	Upset
يصحو	Wake	Woke/waked	Woken/waked
يلبس / يحوك	Wear	Wore	worn
ينسج	Weave	Wove	Woven
يبكي	Weep	Wept	wept
يتزوج	Wed	wed/wedded	wed/wedded
يرطب	Wet	Wet/wetted	Wet/wetted
سوف	Will	Would	-
يكسب	Win	Won	Won
يلف	Wind	Winded/wound	Winded/wound
ينسحب	Withdraw	Withdrew	Withdrawn
يمتنع عن	Withhold	Withheld	Withheld
ينزع	Wring	Wrung	Wrung
يكتب	Write	Wrote	Written

## Some Regular Verbs

المعنى	1	2	3
يهجر/يقطع عن	Abandon	Abandoned	Abandoned
يتقيد/يلتزم	Abide	Abided	abided
يقبل/يرضى	Accept	Accepted	Accepted
يحرز/ يبلغ هدفا	Achieve	Achieved	achieved
يمثل على المسرح/يفعل	Act	Acted	acted
يضيف	Add	Added	Added
يعجب	Admire	Admired	Admired
ينصح	Advise	Advised	Advised
يوافق على/يتفق مع	Agree	Agreed	Agreed
يذهل/ يدهش	Amaze	Amazed	Amazed
يجيب/يرد على	Answer	Answered	Answered
يعلن	Announce	Announced	Announced
يزعج	Annoy	Annoyed	Annoyed
يجادل	Argue	Argued	Argued
يرتب/ ينظم	Arrange	arranged	Arranged
يصل	Arrive	Arrived	Arrived
يظهر	Appear	Appeared	Appeared
يوظف/ يعين/يحدد	Appoint	Appointed	Appointed
يدهش/يذهل	Astonish	Astonished	Astonished
يهاجم	Attack	Attacked	Attacked
يكافئ/ يمنح	Award	Awarded	Awarded
يؤمن/يعتقد	Believe	Believed	Believed
يلوم	Blame	Blamed	Blamed
يستلف	Borrow	Borrowed	Borrowed
يركع/ينحني	Bow	Bowed	Bowed
يدفن	Bury	Buried	Buried
يتبادل أطراف الحديث	Chat	Chatted	Chatted
يصفق	Clap	Clapped	Clapped
يطارد	Chase	Chased	Chased
يعش	Cheat	Cheated	Cheated
يتحدى	Challenge	Challenged	Challenged
يجمع	Collect	Collected	Collected
يريح/يواسي	Comfort	Comforted	Comforted
يرتكب	Commit	Committed	Committed
يشتكى	Complain	Complained	Complained
يكمل	Complete	Completed	Completed
يشكل/ يكون/يولف	Compose	Composed	Composed
يهنئ	Congratulate	Congratulated	Congratulated

يختتم / يستنتج	Conclude	Concluded	Concluded
يربك	Confuse	Confused	Confused
يوصل / يربط	Connect	Connected	Connected
يستمر	Continue	Continued	Continued
يساهم	Contribute	Contributed	Contributed
يتعاون	Co-operate	Co-operated	Co-operated
يتحدث	Converse	Conversed	Conversed
يصحح	Correct	Corrected	Corrected
يخلق	Create	Created	Created
يحرث / يفلح	Cultivate	Cultivated	Cultivated
يعلن	Declare	Declared	Declared
يقرر	Decide	decided	Decided
يزين	Decorate	Decorated	Decorated
يصف	Describe	Described	Described
يرغب	Desire	Desired	Desired
ينازع	Dispute	Disputed	Disputed
يكشف	Detect	Detected	Detected
يصر	Determine	Determined	Determined
ينمو / يطور	Develop	Developed	Developed
يكرس	Devote	Devoted	Devoted
يموت	Die	Died	Died
يوجه	Direct	Directed	Directed
يخيّب / يحبط	Disappoint	Disappointed	disappointed
يختفي	Disappear	Disappeared	Disappeared
يكشف	Discover	Discovered	Discovered
يناقش	Discuss	Discussed	Discussed
يكره	Dislike	Disliked	Disliked
يوزع	Distribute	Distributed	Distributed
يزعج	Disturb	Disturbed	Disturbed
يتبرع	Donate	Donated	Donated
يعلم	Educate	Educated	Educated
يتمتع	Enjoy	Enjoyed	Enjoyed
يهرب	Escape	Escaped	Escaped
يتفحص / يمتحن	Examine	Examined	Examined
يدهش	Excite	Excited	Excited
يستعلم	Exclaim	Exclaimed	Exclaimed
يعرض	Exhibit	Exhibited	Exhibited
يعيش	Exist	Existed	Existed
يوضح	Explain	Explained	Explained
يدهر	Fascinate	Fascinated	fascinated
يسهل	Facilitate	Facilitated	Facilitated

يبحث	Fetch	Fetches	Fetches
يتنبأ	Forecast	Forecasted	Forecasted
يغش	Fool	Fooled	Fooled
يخيف	Frighten	Frightened	Frightened
يوفي	Fulfill	Fulfilled	Fulfilled
يحكم	Govern	Governed	Governed
يحيي	Greet	Greeted	Greeted
يرشد/يقود	Guide	Guided	Guided
يحرس	Guard	Guarded	Guarded
يؤذي	Harm	Harmed	Harmed
يساعد	Help	Helped	Helped
يتردد	Hesitate	Hesitated	Hesitated
يرتفع	Hike	Hiked	Hiked
يكرم	Honour	Honoured	Honoured
يعانق	Hug	Hugged	Hugged
يحكم/يصدر حكماً	Judge	Judged	Judged
يحسن	Improve	Improved	Improved
يحاكي	Imitate	Imitated	Imitated
يطبق	Implement	Implemented	implemented
يؤثر	Influence	Influenced	Influenced
يخبر	Inform	Informed	Informed
يسئ	Insult	Insulted	Insulted
يأمر	Instruct	Instructed	Instructed
ينوي	Intend	Intended	Intended
يقدم	Introduce	Introduced	introduced
يقابل	Interview	Interviewed	Interviewed
يقاطع	Interrupt	Interrupted	Interrupted
يخترع	Invent	Invented	Invented
يستثمر	Invest	Invested	Invested
يدعو	Invite	Invited	Invited
يخطف	Kidnap	Kidnapped	Kidnapped
يكذب	Lie	Lied	Lied
يرخي	Loosen	Loosened	Loosened
يحب	Love	Loved	Loved
يدير	Manage	Managed	Managed
يتزوج	Marry	Married	married
يتأمل	Meditate	Meditated	Meditated
يحرك	Move	Moved	Moved
يقود طائرة أو سفينة	Navigate	Navigated	Navigated
يومي	Nod	Nodded	Nodded
يلاحظ	Observe	Observed	Observed

يحدث	Occur	Occurred	occurred
يحتل	Occupy	Occupied	Occupied
يغادر/يفارق	Part	Parted	Parted
نقرة إيقاعية خفيفة	Pat	Patted	Patted
يهدئ	Pause	Paused	Paused
يتقن	Perfect	Perfected	Perfected
يؤدي	Perform	Performed	Performed
يسمح	Permit	Permitted	Permitted
يمتلك	Possess	Possessed	Possessed
يجهز	Prepare	prepared	Prepared
يتظاهر	Pretend	Pretended	Pretended
يمنع	Prevent	Prevented	Prevented
ينتج	Produce	Produced	Produced
يطور	Promote	Promoted	Promoted
يعد	Promise	Promised	Promised
يقترح	Propose	Proposed	Proposed
يحمي	Protect	Protected	Protected
يبرهن	Prove	Proved	Proved
يوفر	Provide	Provided	Provided
ينشر	Publish	Published	Published
يعاقب	Punish	Punished	Punished
يصفى	Purify	Purified	Purified
يدهش	Puzzle	Puzzled	Puzzled
يتنازع	Quarrel	Quarreled	quarreled
يدرك	Realize	Realized	Realized
يتذكر	Recall	Recalled	recalled
يتعرف	Recognize	Recognized	Recognized
يصالح	Reconcile	Reconciled	Reconciled
يستعيد	Recover	Recovered	Recovered
يعكس	Reflect	Reflected	Reflected
يرفض	Reject	Rejected	Rejected
يتذكر	Remember	Remembered	Remembered
يكرر	Repeat	Repeated	Repeated
يرد	Reply	Replied	Replied
يلتمس	Request	Requested	Requested
يحجز/احتياط	Reserve	Reserved	Reserved
يكافئ	Reward	Rewarded	Rewarded
ينهب	Rob	Robbed	Robbed
يلف	Roll	Rolled	Rolled
يمسح	Rub	Rubbed	Rubbed
يحي	Salute	Saluted	saluted

يشتت	Scatter	Scattered	Scattered
يخيف	Scare	Scared	Scared
يصرخ	Scream	Screamed	Screamed
يستقر	Settle	Settled	Settled
يفاجئ	Startle	Startled	Startled
يتنهد	Sigh	Sighed	Sighed
يجوع	Starve	Starved	Starved
يقيم	Stay	Stayed	Stayed
يحرك	Stir	Stirred	Stirred
يقف	Stop	Stopped	Stopped
يمد	Stretch	Stretched	Stretched
يتجول متمعنا	Stroll	Strolled	Strolled
ينجح	Succeed	Succeeded	Succeeded
يقترح	Suggest	Suggested	Suggested
يدعم	Support	Supported	Supported
يفاجئ/مفاجأة	Surprise	Surprised	surprised
يشك	Suspect	Suspected	Suspected
يتعثّر	Stumble	Stumbled	Stumbled
يحيط	Surround	Surrounded	Surrounded
يتذوق	Taste	Tasted	Tasted
يربط	Tie	Tied	Tied
يجلد	Thrash	Thrashed	Thrashed
يلمس	Touch	Touched	Touched
يسافر	Travel	Traveled	Traveled
يعامل	Treat	Treated	Treated
يهدد	Threaten	Threatened	Threatened
يحاول	Try	Tried	Tried
يزور	Visit	Visited	Visited
يستقرغ	Vomit	Vomited	Vomited
يتأرجح	Wag	Wagged	Wagged
عويل	Wail	Wailed	Wailed
ينتظر	Wait	Waited	Waited
يراقب	Watch	Watched	Watched
يزن	Weigh	Weighed	Weighed
يرحب	Welcome	Welcomed	Welcomed
يجلد	Whip	Whipped	Whipped
يهمس	Whisper	Whispered	Whispered
يغربل	Winnow	Winnowed	Winnowed
يتعجب	Wonder	Wondered	Wondered
يعمل	Work	Worked	Worked
يتخوف	Worry	Worried	Worried

## Some Nouns, Adjectives and Adverbs Forms

Noun	Adjective	Adverb
Ambition	Ambitious	Ambitiously
Anger	Angry	Angrily
Beauty	Beautiful	Beautifully
Bravery	Brave	Bravely
Care	Careful	Carefully
Certainty	Certain	Certainly
Collection	Collective	Collectively
Completion	Complete	Completely
Comfort	Comfortable	Comfortably
Confidence	Confident	Confidently
Courage	Courageous	Courageously
Curiosity	Curious	Curiously
Danger	Dangerous	Dangerously
Day	Daily	Daily
Distance	Distant	Distantly
Ease	Easy	Easily
Fame	Famous	-
Favour	Favourable	Favourably
Fortune	Fortunate	Fortunately
Freedom	Free	Freely
Generosity	Generous	Generously
Glory	Glorious	Gloriously
Happiness	Happy	Happily
Health	Healthy	-
Honour	Honest	Honestly
Joy	Joyful	Joyfully
Luck	Lucky	Luckily
Peace	Peaceful	Peacefully
Permanence	Permanent	Permanently
Sadness	Sad	Sadly
Safety	Safe	Safely
Secrecy	Secret	Secretly
Silence	Silent	Silently
Suspicion	Suspicious	Suspiciously
Victory	Victorious	Victoriously
Weakness	Weak	Weakly
Wealth	Wealthy	-
Wisdom	Wise	Wisely

## Some Verbs Used as Nouns

Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
Answer	Answer	Love	Love
Attack	Attack	Pause	Pause
Award	Award	Promise	Promise
Blame	Blame	Quarrel	Quarrel
Challenge	Challenge	Recall	Recall
Comfort	Comfort	Reply	Reply
Complain	Complain	Request	Request
Contain	Content	Reward	Reward
Design	design	Roll	Roll
Desire	Desire	Scream	Scream
Dispute	Dispute	Sleep	sleep
Dislike	Dislike	Smile	smile
Escape	Escape	Support	Support
Forecast	Forecast	Surprise	Surprise
Guard	Guard	Taste	Taste
Harm	Harm	Tie	Tie
Help	Help	Touch	Touch
Hike	Hiked	Visit	Visit
Honour	Honour	Watch	Watch
Influence	Influence	Welcome	Welcome
Insult	Insult	Wonder	Wonder
Interview	Interview	Work	Work

### Some Nouns ending in -tion

Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
Absorb	Absorption	Excavate	excavation
Act	Action	Exclaim	Exclamation
Add	Addition	Exhibit	Exhibition
Admire	Admiration	Execute	execution
Attract	Attraction	Explain	Explanation
Civilize	Civilization	Extinct	extinction
Collect	Collection	Exultant	exultation
Complete	Completion	Fascinate	Fascination
Compose	Composition	Facilitate	Facilitation
Conceive	Conception	Hesitate	Hesitation
Confront	Confrontation	Imitate	Imitation
Connect	Connection	Implement	Implementation
Construct	Construction	Inform	Information
Continue	Continuation	Instruct	Instruction
Contribute	Contribution	Intend	Intention
Co-operate	Co-operation	Introduce	Introduction
Converse	Conversation	Interrupt	Interruption
Correct	Correction	Invent	Invention
Create	Creation	Invite	Invitation
Correct	Correction	Meditate	Meditation
Cultivate	Cultivation	Navigate	Navigation
Declare	Declaration	Observe	Observation
Decorate	Decoration	Occupy	Occupation
Dedicate	Dedication	Part	Partition
Describe	Description	Perfect	Perfection
Desert	Desertion	Prepare	preparation
Desolate	Desolation	Prevent	Prevention
Detect	Detection	Produce	Production
Determine	Determination	Promote	Promotion
Devote	Devotion	Protect	Protection
Direct	Direction	Realize	Realization
Distribute	Distribution	Recognize	Recognition
Disrupt	Disruption	Reflect	Reflection
Donate	Donation	Reject	Rejection
Educate	Education	Reserve	Reservation
Erupt	Eruption	Starve	Starvation
Examine	Examination	Suggest	Suggestion

## Some Nouns Ending in –ment

المعنى	verb	Noun	المعنى
يهجر/يترك	Abandon	Abandonment	هجر/ترك
يكتسب/يحرز	Achieve	Achievement	كسب/ احراز
يوافق/يتفق مع	Agree	Agreement	موافقة/ اتفاق
يذهل/يدهش	Amaze	Amazement	ذهول/دهشة
يسلى/يلهى	Amuse	Amusement	تسلية/ الهاء
يعلن	Announce	Announcement	اعلان
يجادل	Argue	Argument	مجادلة
يرتب/ينظم	Arrange	Arrangement	ترتيب/ تنظيم
يعين/يوظف/يحدد	Appoint	Appointment	تعيين/ تحديد
يدهش/ يزهل	Astonish	Astonishment	دهشة/ ذهول
يرتكب/يلتزم	Commit	Commitment	ارتكاب/ التزام
يقنع	Convince	Conviction	اقتناع
يخدع/ يعش	Deceive	Deception	خدعة/ عش
ينمو/ يطور	Develop	Development	نمو/ تطور
يخيّب/ يحبط	Disappoint	Disappointment	خيبة/ احباط
يعوق/ يربك	Embarrass	Embarrassment	اعاقة/ ارباك
يوظف	Employ	Employment	توظيف
يخيّم / يعسكر	Encamp	Encampment	تخييم/ عسكرة
يتمتع	Enjoy	Enjoyment	متعة
يسلي	Entertain	Entertainment	تسلية
يدهش	Excite	Excitement	دهشة
يفي/ ينفذ	Fulfill	Fulfillment	ايفاء/ تنفيذ
يحكم	Govern	Government	حكومة
يحسّن	Improve	Improvement	تحسين
يستثمر	Invest	Investment	استثمار
يدير	Manage	Management	ادارة
يحرك/ ينتقل	Move	Movement	حركة/ انتقال
يعاقب	Punish	Punishment	عقاب
يحل/يستقر	Settle	Settlement	تسوية/حل/استقرار
يعامل/ يعالج	Treat	Treatment	معاملة/ معالجة

## Some Nouns Ending Irregularly

1	2	1	2
Able	Ability	Forecast	Forecast
Absurd	Absurdity	Guide	Guidance
Accept	Acceptance	Guard	Guard
Accurate	Accuracy	Harm	Harm
Acquaint	Acquaintance	Help	Help
Admit	Admission	Hike	Hike
Advise	Advice	Honour	Honour
Analyze	Analysis	Influence	Influence
Annoy	Annoyance	Insult	Insult
Apologize	Apology	Interview	Interview
Appear	Appearance	Loosen	Loss
Arouse	Arousal	Love	Love
Arrive	Arrival	Marry	Marriage
Assemble	Assembly	Occur	Occurrence
Attend	Attendance	Pause	Pause
Authorize	Authority/authorization	Perform	Performance
Believe	Belief	Permit	Permission
Bury	Burial	Possess	Possession
Carry	Carriage	Pretend	Pretence
Cease	Cessation	Promise	Promise
Choose	Choice	Propose	Proposal
Conclude	Conclusion	Prosper	Prosperity
Confuse	Confusion	Prove	Proof
Conspire	Conspiracy	Publish	Publication
Convert	Conversion	Purify	Purification
Criticize	Criticism	Quarrel	Quarrel
Decide	Decision	Recall	Recall
Deep	Depth	Recover	Recover
Depart	Departure	Remember	Remembrance
Die	Death	Reply	Reply
Differ/different	Difference	Request	Request
Disappear	Disappearance	Reward	Reward
Disclose	Disclosure	Scream	Scream
Discover	Discovery	Succeed	Success
Discuss	Discussion	Support	Support
Dislike	Dislike	Surprise	Surprise
Disturb	Disturbance	Suspect	Suspicion
Diverse	Diversity	Taste	Taste
Dull	Dullness	Tie	Tie
Dutiful	Duty	Think	Thought

Dynamic	Dynamism	Touch	Touch
Effective	Effectiveness/ effect	Threaten	Threat
Err	Error	Try	Trial
Exist	Existence	Visit	Visit
Excellent	Excellence	Work	Work
Extravagant	Extravagance		

### **A Suggestion for Ordering the Learning of Some Grammar Lessons for Advanced Learners**

1	Present simple
2	Formation of the plurals
3	Articles
4	Present continuous
5	Active-passive (present simple)
6	Past simple
7	Past continuous
8	Adverb clause of time with (while/when-as)
9	Active-passive (past simple)
10	Future-modals
11	Present perfect
12	If 1
13	Past perfect
14	Adverb clause of time with Past P.(after/before-when)
15	(Present/past) perfect continuous
16	Sine/for/ago
17	Verb - subject agreement
18	Gerund
19	Active-passive (present/past) continuous
20	Unless
21	Comparative
22	Superlative
23	Parallel comparison
24	Future continuous
25	Adverb clause of time with Present P. (after/before-when)
26	To/in order to/ so as to- so that/in order that
27	If 2
28	Present Participle
29	Active-passive –future/modals
30	Direct-Indirect (1 <sup>st</sup> . person pronouns)
31	Not only, but also
32	Past Participle
33	If 3
34	Used to
35	Active-passive (present/past) perfect
36	So.....that/too....to/ such.....that
37	Direct-Indirect (2 <sup>nd</sup> . person pronoun)
38	So do I / neither do I
39	Question tag
40	Relative Pronouns
41	Direct-Indirect (3 <sup>rd</sup> . person pronoun)

42	Although-though/ in spite of- despite
43	Enough to
44	Direct-Indirect (helping verbs questions)
45	Active-passive – two objects / so-because- as- since
46	Direct-Indirect (wh-how questions)
47	Direct-Indirect (imperatives)

If the advanced learners understand the lessons according to the order presented in the above list and know the close relations between many of them, it means that they have an excellent control over the majority of the functional grammar lessons and later-on it would be easier for them to deal with the rest of the analytical grammar lessons.

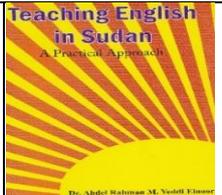
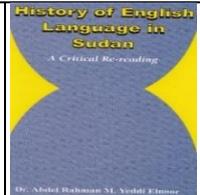
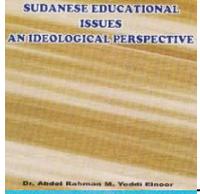
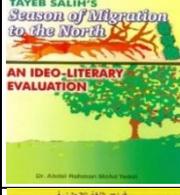
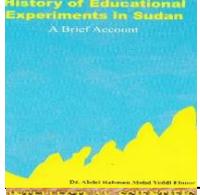
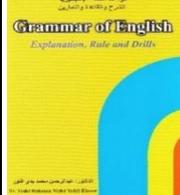
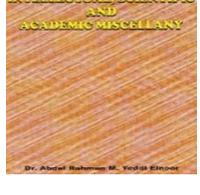
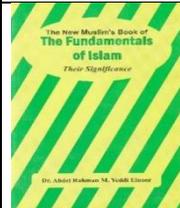
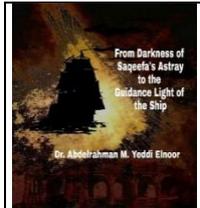


### **About the Author**

Dr. Abdelrahman Mohammed Yeddi Elnoor, was born in Elgolid District; North of Sudan in 1964. He received his early education in Khalwa; (a form of religious school) then, the Primary and General Secondary education in Elgolid and then he joined Secondary education in Khartoum. Then, he went to India to study English Language and literature. He completed B. A. and M. A. (English) from Poona University, 1987-1993. He achieved Ph.D. (English) from BAM University, Aurangabad, 1997.

Please send your feedback and correspondences to the author through the E-mail: [dryeddi12@gmail.com](mailto:dryeddi12@gmail.com)

Books and articles by the same author

 <p>قصص قيمة</p>	 <p>Teaching English in Sudan A Practical Approach</p>	 <p>Language Teaching</p>	 <p>History of English Language in Sudan A Critical Reconsidering</p>
 <p>موسم الهجرة إلى الشمال</p>	 <p>سيرة حياة محمد بن عبد الله</p>	 <p>سيرة حياة محمد بن عبد الله</p>	 <p>SUDANESE EDUCATIONAL ISSUES AN IDEOLOGICAL PERSPECTIVE</p>
 <p>TAYEB SALIM'S Season of Migration to the North AN IDEO-LITERARY EVALUATION</p>	 <p>سيرة حياة محمد بن عبد الله</p>	 <p>سيرة حياة محمد بن عبد الله</p>	 <p>History of Educational Experiments in Sudan A Brief Account</p>
 <p>Grammar of English Explanation, Rule and Drills</p>	<p>PDF copies of the books are available for free at: <a href="http://yeddibooks.com">yeddibooks.com</a></p> <p>New editions can be obtained through contacting: <a href="mailto:dryeddi12@gmail.com">dryeddi12@gmail.com</a></p>		 <p>INTELLECTUAL, SCIENTIFIC AND ACADEMIC MISCELLANY</p>
 <p>The New Muslim's Book of The Fundamentals of Islam Their Significance</p>	 <p>هبة لاجراءات الأبطال</p>	 <p>من ظلم ضلال المسقط</p>	 <p>From Darkness of Saqen's Astry to the Guidance Light of the Ship</p>